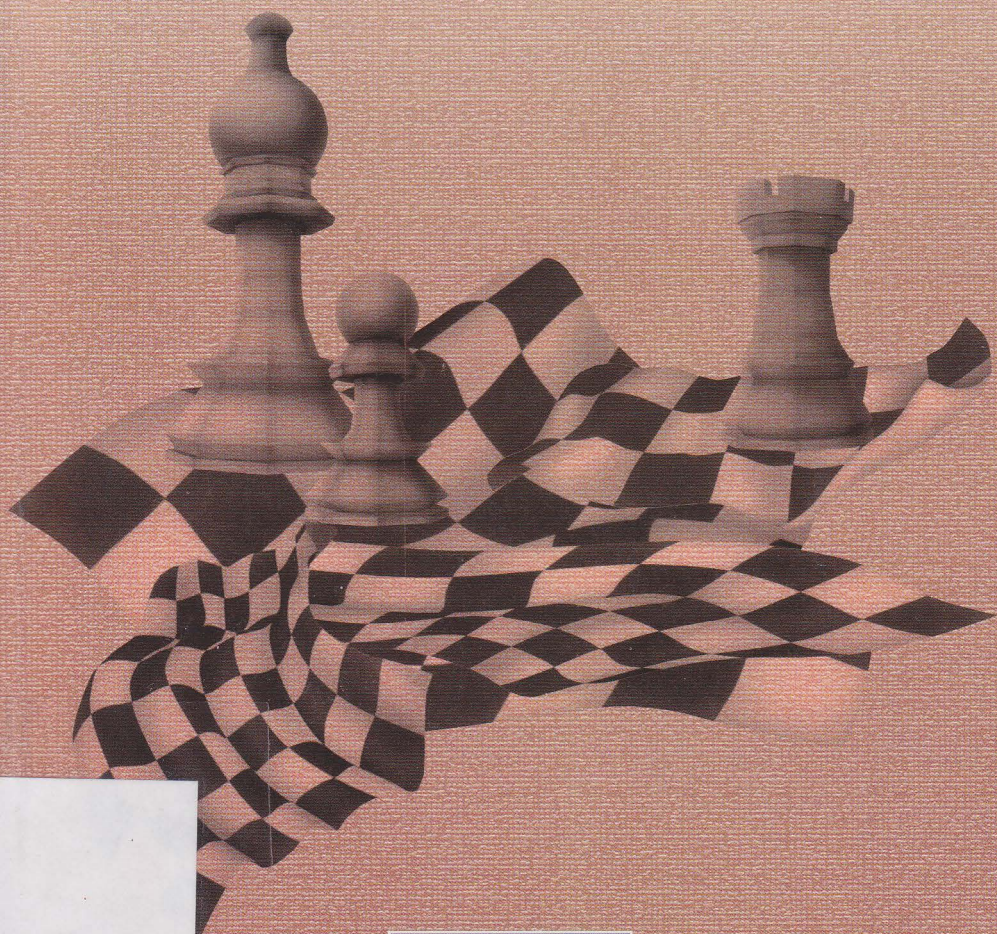


LÁSZLÓ KRIZSÁNY – SÁNDOR VIDÉKI

ALEKHINE DEFENCE



CAISSA CHESS BOOKS

László Krizsány * Sándor Vidéki

ALEKHINE DEFENCE

CAISSA CHESS BOOKS

László Krizsány * Sándor Vidéki

ALEKHINE DEFENCE

CAISSA CHESS BOOKS

Cover: **Zoltán Vámos**

© **László Krizsány * Sándor Vidéki / Caissa Kft 1999**

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of Caissa Kft.

This book is sold subject to the condition that it shall not, by way of trade or otherwise, be lent, re-sold, hired out, or otherwise circulated without the publisher's prior consent in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published and without a similar condition including this condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser.

Translated and edited by **István Pongó**

CAISSA KFT

Kecskemét

Gyenes tér 18

H—6000

Hungary

Tel/Fax: **0036 76 481685**

E-mail: **caissa@mail.matav.hu**

Printed in Hungary

PRINT 2000 Kft

Kecskemét

Foreword

The advancing of the knight on the f6 square was already applied in the last century as an answer to the opening beginning with the move 1. e4. But this defence is indebted to Alekhine for its name and popularity, who played it first in 1921. Since that time this defence was played several times by many chess players, who tried to search for new ways, improve some of its main lines with more or less success. It has also a good reputation nowadays. The experts of this opening are Bagirov, Alburt, Baburin, Komarov, Blatny, P. Shabalov, but some of the super grandmasters (Timman, Adams, Ivanchuk, Yusupov, Miles Vaganian, Svidler) choose the system to play in great tournaments.

The basic idea of this opening is modern. Black provoking White's pawns lures them forward where they can be attacked easily. White has a considerable space advantage at the beginning of the game and tries to keep and strengthen it. Black has to do its best to counter-balance this drawback, i.e. having less space in the middle game it has to mobilize its forces to attack White's centre. Resulting from the character of the defence weaknesses come into being in White's position, so Black has better chances in the endgame. The other important feature of the opening is that it has got very few lines leading to a draw, in which most pieces disappear from the board, thus the sides has no chance to fight for a win. Who, leading the black pieces, wants to win against his opponent striving just for a draw in the age of ChessBase and computers that knows how important it is.

Of course it is just the reader who can make a decision on that what opening repertory will be suitable for him, which lines go well his style of play. What can we recommend yet? Playing White, it is obvious, that the most demanding is the system with 4. ♖f3 which

promises a slight positional advantage in its most lines. Its only drawback is that it has an enormous material, so you need much time to work it out in great detail. Who has less time those can pick out one of the several smaller variations. But we do not offer you the four pawns system that needs working much and it does not give you any advantages. Leading the black pieces you have to prepare best for the system with 4. ♘f3 since it can be expected in the majority of the games. It is useful to have two different systems working out against it. They are not necessary the most popular ones, it is more important that the middle game positions arising from them should be appropriate for you. In the further lines it is advisable to follow the moves recommended by our main line. We hope that our book will help you to know the Alekhine Defence better.

The authors

Notations

$+ -$	White has a decisive advantage
\pm	White stands better
\pm	White stands slightly better
$- +$	Black has a decisive advantage
\mp	Black stands better
\mp	Black stands slightly better
$=$	even
∞	unclear
\equiv	with compensation
\triangleleft	better is
\square	only move
\triangle	with idea
\uparrow	with initiative
\rightarrow	with attack
\leftrightarrow	with couterplay
N	novelty

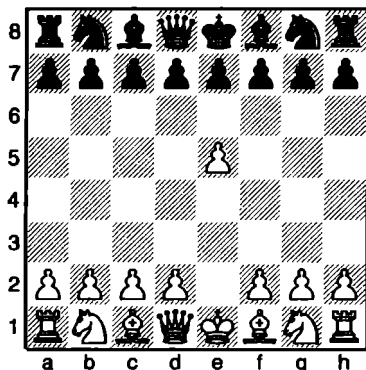
Chapter 1

1. e4 ♘f6

In this part of the current chapter those subvariations will be mentioned which occur quite seldom in the tournament practice. Their theoretical values are rather trifling but their appearances can be explained by force of the surprise.

1.1 — 2. e5 ♘g8

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘g8



The basic idea of this move is the same as the principles of the main lines of Alekhine defence, namely to provoke a weak white pawn chain which can be attacked later. But Black usually cannot achieve its aim moving 2. — ♘g8, since it will not get enough compensation for falling behind in the advance, by the pres-

ent state of the opening theory, if White builds up its position properly.

3. d4

3. ♘f3 d6 4. d4 ♘g4 5. ♘e2

5. h3 ♘h5

5. — ♘f5 6. ♘d3 ♘d7 7. exd6 exd6 8. ♘xf5 ♘xf5 9. 0-0 ♘e7 10. ♘e1± Black cannot develop its pieces for the white major pieces are controlling the e-file and preventing the black king from castling in this way.

6. g4

6. e6!? was better.

6. — ♘g6 7. ♘c3 e6 8. ♘f4 d5 9. ♘d3 c5 10. ♘xg6 hxg6 11. ♘d2 ♘c6 12. ♘e2 ♘b6 13. c3 cxd4 14. ♘exd4 ♘c5 15. ♘b3 ♘ge7 16. ♘xc5 ♘xc5 17. 0-0-0 a5 18. ♘b1 a4 19. h4 Ernst — Welling 1988;

5. — e6 6. 0-0 d5 7. c3 ♘e7 8. ♘a3 ♘bc6 9. ♘c2 ♘f5 10. ♘e3 ♘xe3 11. ♘xe3 ♘e7 12. ♘e1 ♘xe2 13. ♘xe2 0-0 14. ♘d3 ♘d7 15. ♘f4?!

It is unnecessary to start manoeuvring again by the knight.

15. — f6 16. exf6 ♘xf6 17. ♘d3 ♘d6 18. f4 ♘af8 19. ♘e5 ♘xe5 20.

dx e5 ♖f7=

Mason — Martin Ch Great Britain 1994

3. — d6

3. — d5 4. c4

White being aware of its advantage in the development opens the position, but it takes a risk at the same time undertaking the worse pawn structure.

4. ♔d3 c5 5. c3?!

5. dxc5!? e6 6. ♘f3 ♙xc5 7. 0-0 ♘e7 8. ♘bd2±

5. — ♘c6 6. ♘e2 ♙g4 7. f3 ♙h5

8. ♘f4 ♙g6 9. ♙xg6 hxg6 10. e6± Santo Roman — Dada Novi Sad ol. 1990;

4. — dxc4 5. ♙xc4 e6 6. ♘f3 ♘e7 7. 0-0

The move 7. ♙g5 would perhaps have been more energetic.

7. — ♘d5 8. ♘bd2 ♙e7 9. ♘e4 h6 10. ♔d2 ♔d7 11. ♘g3 ♙c6 12. ♙cl ♘d7 13. ♔d3 ♘7b6 14. a3 ♙d7 15. ♙e2 a6∞

Rogic — Loncar Croatia ch 1995

4. exd6

4. f4 h5

4. — c5 5. dxc5 dxc5 6. ♙xd8† ♘xd8 7. ♙e3 b6 8. ♘f3 ♙b7 9. ♘g5 ♘h6 10. ♘c3 e6 11. 0-0-0† ♘c8 12. f5 exf5 13. ♙c4 ♙e7 14. ♘xf7 ♘xf7 15. ♙xf7 ♙c6 16. ♘d5 ♔d8 17. ♙hf1 g6 18. ♙h6±

Kuklin — Dede 1994

5. ♘f3 ♘h6 6. ♙e2 d5 7. ♙e3 ♙g4 8. ♘bd2 ♘f5 9. ♙f2 e6 10. g3 h4 11. ♘xh4 ♙xe2 12. ♙xe2 ♘xh4 13. gxf4 g6

Black is trying to stop White's attack by occupying the light squares on the king side and to start a counterplay by making the move c5. The enormous difference between the white and black bishops is favourable for Black in all lines of the endgame.

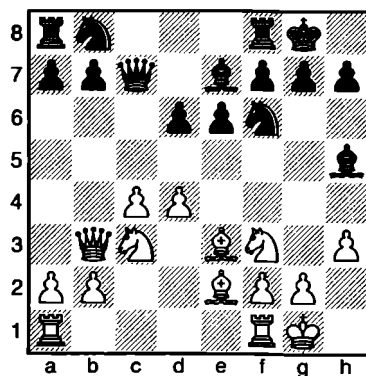
14. ♙b5† ♘d7 15. 0-0-0 ♙c8 16. ♘b1±

Vrenegoor — Grooten ch The Netherlands 1991

4. — cxd6

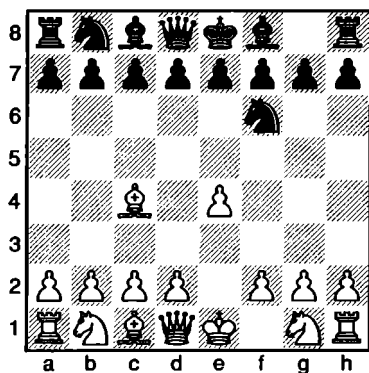
The line 4. — ♙xd6 5. ♘c3 leads to the Scandinavian Defence.

5. ♘f3 ♘f6 6. ♙e2 ♙g4 7. 0-0 e6 8. c4 ♙e7 9. h3 ♙h5 10. ♘c3 0-0 11. ♙b3 ♙c7 12. ♙e3±



1.2 — 2. ♖c4

1. e4 ♖f6 2. ♖c4



It is the introducing move of a gambit which has the following idea: White offers its e4 pawn in return for the f7 pawn and for the tearing up Black's king position at the beginning of the game making the king leave its shelter at the same time. But White's optimism is too early, since its queen has to move at least four times in the early stage of the opening and Black can finish the advance during this period without problems putting its king in a safe place in some moves but just in time.

2. — ♖xe4

2. — b5

Black avoids its opponent's gambit variation and tries to take the bishop putting into action early out of its intended way.

3. ♖b3 ♖b7

3. — c5 4. e5 c4 5. exf6 gxf6 6. ♖f3 ♖c6 7. ♖e2 ♖b7 8. ♖g3 ♖a5 9. ♖xc4 bxc4 10. ♖a3 ♖d5 11. ♖c3 ♖e6† 12. ♖d1 ♖e5 13. ♖e1 h5 14. f4 h4 15. ♖e3 ♖h6 16. ♖e2 ♖f5 17. ♖xc4 ♖xf4 18. ♖f2 ♖g4 19. d3 ♖xh2 20. ♖e3 ♖g3 Glavan — Dobren 1990

4. d3 c5 5. ♖f3 e6

5. — c4?! 6. dxc4 ♖xe4 7. cxb5 ♖a5† 8. ♖bd2 ♖xb5 9. c4±

6. e5

6. 0-0 d5=

6. — ♖g8 7. 0-0 ♖c6 8. c4 b4 9. ♖f4 ♖ge7 10. d4 cxd4 11. ♖bd2 ♖g6 12. ♖g3 ♖e7 13. ♖e4 0-0

13. — ♖cxe5 14. ♖xe5 ♖xe4 15. ♖xd4±

14. ♖c2 a5 15. ♖e1 ♖a6 16. b3 f5 17. exf6 gxf6 18. h4 f5 19. ♖eg5 ♖b7 20. ♖d2 a4∞

Ivanovic — Kovacevic, V Sarayevo 1983

3. ♖xf7† ♖xf7 4. ♖h5† ♖g8

A) 4. — g6 5. ♖d5† e6 6. ♖xe4 ♖g7 7. ♖f3

7. ♖f4† ♖f6 8. ♖c3 d5 9. ♖f3 ♖f8 10. d4 ♖g8 11. ♖g3 ♖c6=

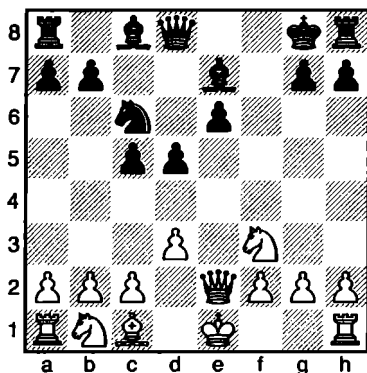
7. — ♖f8 8. d4 ♖g8 9. ♖g5 ♖e8 10. ♖bd2 ♖c6 11. c3 b6 12. h4 ♖b7 13. h5 gxh5 14. g4 ♖a5 15. ♖d3 ♖g6 16. ♖e3 ♖c4+

Schmitz — Leistenschneider 1990;
B) 4. — ♘f6?

It is a blunder making the rescue of
the knight impossible.

5. ♖f3† ♘e5 6. d4†—

5. ♖d5† e6 6. ♖xe4 d5 7. ♖e2 c5 8.
♙f3 ♘c6 9. d3 ♙e7



Here Black has two main choices as they follow: by moving 2. — e5 it can go across to the pleasant and comfortable field of the open systems, or carrying on the fight without any delay for the e4 point by making the move 2. — d5.

2. — d5

A) 2. — e5

In some cases, as it will be shown by the games, Black keeps putting the move 2. — d5 off only in order that it can make it in the most suitable moment. These positions are very similar to those which are formed by the move 2. — d5, since it often is just a change of moves.

3. f4?!

This move cannot be recommended with a clear conscience, for, despite the slight similarity of the forming position to the setup of the suitable line of the King's Gambit in principle, the f1 bishop, which must be placed on c4, will get stuck.

a) 3. ♖f3 ♗c6 4. g3

4. ♕e2 d5

4. — g6?!

5. ♗bd2 g6 6. 0-0 ♕g7 7. c3 a5 8. a4 0-0 9. ♖e1 ♖e8 10. ♕f1 b6 11. exd5 ♗xd5 12. ♖b3 ♗f4 13. ♗e4 ♕e6 14. ♖c2 ♗d5 15. g3 h6= Todorcevic—Tal Marseille 1989;

4. — d5 5. ♗bd2 ♕g4?! 6. h3 ♕h5 7. ♕g2 ♕c5 8. 0-0 0-0 9. c3 dxe4 10. dxe4 ♖d3 11. ♖e1 ♖ad8 12. ♕f1 ♖d7 13. ♖e2 ♖e6 14. b4± Taruffi — Tomaszewski Graz 1978;

b) 3. g3?! This move order is of rather doubtful value. 3. — d5! It is the best move, since the d5 pawn cannot be attacked because of the weakened long diagonal and the knight arrives late on d2.

4. ♗d2 dxe4 5. dxe4 ♕c5! 6. h3

b1) 6. ♕g2? ♗g4 7. ♗h3 ♕xf2† 8. ♗xf2 ♗e3 9. ♖f3 ♗xc2† 10. ♗d1 ♗xa1+;

b2) 6. ♖e2?! ♗c6 7. c3 0-0 8. ♕g2 a5 9. ♗g3 b6 10. 0-0 ♕a6+

6. — 0-0 7. ♗g3 ♖e7 8. ♕g2 ♖d8 9. ♗h4?! ♕e6 10. 0-0 ♖d7 11. g4 ♗c6 12. c3 a5 13. ♖e1 ♖d3 14. ♗f5

14. ♖f1? ♖g3+

14. — g6 15. ♕f1 ♖d7 16. ♗g3 h5!± Lukin — Panchenko 1991;

3. — ♗c6 4. ♗f3 d5 5. ♗xe5 ♗xe5?!

5. — dxe4!?

6. fxe5 ♗g4 7. d4 dxe4 8. ♕c4 ♖h4† 9. g3 ♖h3 10. ♕f1 ♖h5 11. ♕g2 ♖g6± Bhend — Sutter Switzerland 1992

B) 2. — d6 3. f4

3. g3 g6 4. ♠g2 c5 5. ♠e2 ♠c6 6. ♠d2 ♠g7 7. ♠c4 0-0 8. 0-0 ♠e6 9. ♠e3 ♣c8 10. ♠f4 ♠d7∞ Prokopenko — Petrov 1996)

3. — c5 4. ♠f3 ♠c6 5. g3 g6 6. ♠g2 ♠g7 7. 0-0 0-0 8. h3 ♣b8 9. g4 ♠e8 10. f5 e6=

Radulov — Popov Sofia 1985;

C) 2. — c5?! 3. g3 ♠c6 4. ♠g2 d5 5. exd5 ♠xd5 6. ♠f3 e6 7. 0-0 ♠e7 8. c3 0-0 9. a3 b6 10. c4 ♠c7 11. ♠e3 e5

Kothsur — Fedorov Moscow 1994

3. ♠d2

3. e5

You can deviate from the theory, that even is very effective several times, but in this case it just seems to be losing a tempo, as White already made a move with its pawns and it will presumably move them again later.

3. — ♠fd7

3. — ♠g8 4. d4 c5 It goes over to the line 3. — c5 of the Caro-Kan Defence. 5. c3 ♠c6 6. ♠f3 ♠g4 7. ♠e2 e6 8. 0-0 ♣b6?!

8. — ♠xf3 9. ♠xf3 cxd4 10. cxd4 ♣b6

9. dxc5 ♠xc5 10. b4 ♠f8?! 11. b5 ♠xf3 12. bxc6 ♠xe2 13. cxb7 ♣xb7 14. ♣xe2 ♣c8 The inferior White's pawn structure is compensated by its advantage in the

advance. 15. ♠a3± Emodi — Krizsány Sárospatak 1995;

4. f4

4. d4 It goes similarly to the French Defence. 4. — c5 5. c3 ♠c6

5. — e6 6. f4 ♣b6 7. ♠f3 ♠c6 8. ♠e2 ♠e7 9. 0-0 f6!

6. f4 cxd4 7. cxd4 ♠b6!? 8. ♠c3 ♠f5 9. ♠f3 e6 10. ♠d3 ♠g4= Lutikov — Kupreichik 1968;

4. — ♠b6

4. — c5 5. ♠f3 e6 6. g3

6. c3 ♠c6 7. ♠a3 a6 8. ♠c2=

6. — ♠c6 7. ♠g2 ♠e7 8. 0-0 0-0 9. c4 ♠b6=;

5. c3 c5 6. ♠f3 ♠g4 7. ♠e2 e6 8. ♠a3 ♠e7 9. 0-0 0-0 10. ♠c2 ♠c6= Lazarevic — Maric 1990

3. — e5

It is the most natural move, which controls the important centre squares and gives the minor pieces places to develop.

A) 3. — e6

It is an undemanding move which is not too fashionable nowadays.

4. g3

4. ♠g3 ♠c6 5. c3 a5 6. ♣c2 g6 7. d4 ♠g7 8. ♠b5 0-0 9. ♠xc6 bxc6 10. 0-0 c5 11. e5 ♠d7 12. b3 ♠a6= Kupreichik — Lputian Riga 1985

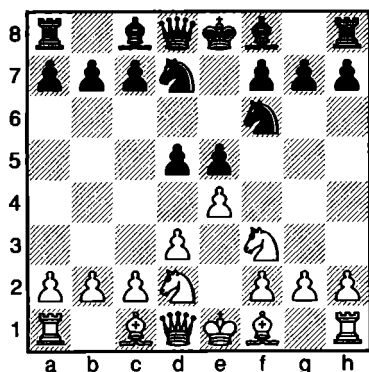
4. — c5 5. ♖g2 ♜c6 6. ♞e2 ♙e7 7. 0-0 0-0 8. c3 ♜c7 9. ♚e1 b6 10. exd5 ♞xd5 11. ♞c4 ♚d8 12. ♞f4 ♞f6 13. ♜e2 ♙b7 14. a4 ♚ac8= Ottstadt—Berend Luxemburg 1985; B) 3. — c5 4. ♞g3 ♞c6 5. g3 e5 6. ♙g2 ♙e7

It is the King's Indian Defence playing with changed colours.

7. 0-0 0-0 8. exd5 ♞xd5 9. ♞c4 ♞f6 10. a4 ♞db4=

Timofeev — Chekhov USSR 1980

4. ♞g3 ♞bd7



4. — ♞c6

This is the most natural place for the knight, as it can control the important squares (e5, d4) in the centre, but it is in the c-pawn's way, which can be needed later in some cases to insure the centre.

5. g3

5. ♙e2 ♙c5 6. 0-0 0-0 7. c3 a5=

5. — ♙c5 6. ♙g2 dxe4 7. dxe4 0-0 8. 0-0 a5 9. a4 ♜e7 10. c3 ♚d8 11. ♞h4 g6 12. h3 b6 13. ♚e1 ♚d3 14. ♞hf3 ♙xf2† 15. ♞xf2 ♜c5†—Todorovic — Kovacevic Ljubljana 1989 0-1

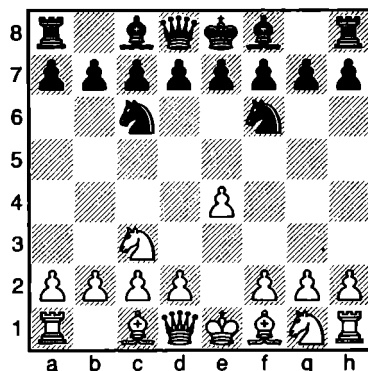
5. exd5 ♞xd5 6. g3 g6 7. ♙g2 ♙g7 8. 0-0 0-0 9. ♚e1 h6 10. ♞c4 ♚e8= Rogers — Shabalov Moscow 1989

1.4 — 2. ♞c3

1. e4 ♞f6 2. ♞c3

Here Black can pass over to Vienna game by moving 2. — e5 or can choose the most frequent move 2. — d5 which will be discussed in one of the subsequent chapters.

2. — ♞c6



The sense of this move is to form an entirely unusual structure having the intention of diverting White from playing any of the thoroughly ana-

lyzed lines.

3. d4

A) 3. ♖b5 e5 4. f4 d6 5. ♘f3 ♙g4 6. fxe5 dxe5 7. ♙xc6† bxc6 8. h3 ♙xf3 9. ♖xf3

This pawn configuration is not too advantageous for Black in the forming endgame lines.

9. — ♘d7 10. d3 ♙c5 11. ♙e3 0-0 12. 0-0 ♙xe3† 13. ♖xe3 ♖e7 14. ♘b1!? ♖b4 15. b3 ♖b6 16. ♖f2 ♖xf2† 17. ♙xf2 ♘c5 18. ♘d2 ♘e6± Romero — Rogers Spanish Ch. 1994;

B) 3. g3 e6 4. ♖e2 ♘d4 5. ♖d3 c5 6. ♘f3 ♘c6 7. ♖e2 ♙e7 8. ♙g2 d5 9. d3 dxe4 10. ♘xe4 ♘d5 11. 0-0 0-0 12. c3 b6 13. ♘ed2 ♙b7 14. a4 ♖c7

Black equalized the game without problems. Its pieces are placed perfectly and after occupying the d-file it can attack the weakened d3 square.

15. ♘c4 ♙fe8?!

15. — a6!?

16. a5 ♙ab8∞

Rodrigues,V — Hoang Thong Moscow 1994

3. — d5 4. e5 ♘d7 5. ♙g5!?N

a) 5. ♘xd5?! ♘db8! 6. ♘c3 ♖xd4†;

b) 5. f4 ♘b6±;

c) 5. ♘f3 ♘b6 6. h3 h6 7. ♙d3 ♘b4

8. 0-0 ♘xd3 9. ♖xd3 e6 10. ♘e2 ♙d7 11. ♘f4 a6 12. ♙e1 ♙b5

Black can find a solution of placing its weak bishop well and taking over the initiative.

13. ♖d1 a5 14. c3 a4†

Bonet — Panchenko Berga 1996

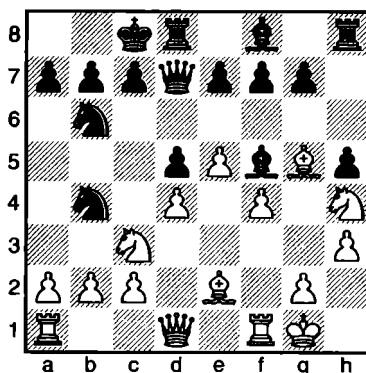
5. — ♘b6 6. f4 h5!

6. — ♙f5?! 7. g4±

7. ♙e2 ♙f5 8. ♘f3

8. ♙xh5?! ♘b4 9. ♙c1 ♘xc2† 10. ♙xc2 ♙xc2 11. ♙xf7† ♘xf7 12. ♖xc2 c6† Rogers,I

8. — ♖d7 9. h3! 0-0-0 10. 0-0 ♘b4?! 11. ♘h4!!



11. — ♙xc2

11. — f6 12. ♘xf5 ♖xf5 13. ♙h4 ♖xc2 14. f5± Rogers,I

12. ♖d2 f6 13. a3 ♘c6! 14. f5!

14. ♖xc2!? fxg5 15. ♜g6 ♜xd4 16. ♖d3 ♜xe2† 17. ♖xe2 e6 18. ♜xh8 ♙c5† 19. ♜h1 ♖xh8 20. fxg5±
Rogers,I

14. — fxg5? 15. e6!

15. ♜g6 ♙xf5 16. ♜xh8±

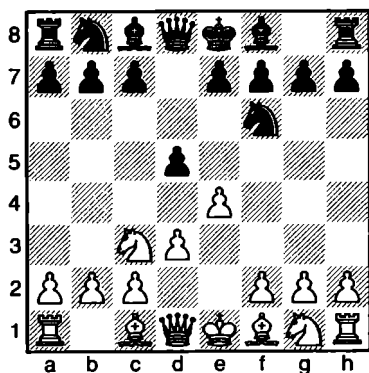
15. — ♖e8 16. ♜g6 ♙xf5 17. ♜xh8 g6! 18. ♜f7 ♙g7 19. ♙b5?

Fernandes — Rogers Strasbourg 1994

19. ♙xh5! ♜xd4 20. ♖xf5! ♜xf5 21. ♙xg6+— Rogers,I

1.5.1 — 2. ♜c3 d5 3. d3

1. e4 ♜f6 2. ♜c3 d5 3. d3?!



By this move White gives Black the opportunity to take over the initiative.

3. — dxe4

It is the most forceful continuation presumably. This move forces

White to make a decision if it exchanges the queens or sacrifices a pawn for the sake of the attack.

3. — ♜c6?! 4. ♜f3

4. ♙g5 dxe4 5. ♙xf6 exf6!? 6. ♜xe4 f5 7. ♜g3 ♖f6 8. c3 ♙d6 9. ♜f3 0-0 10. ♙e2 ♖e8 11. ♖d2 ♙e6 12. 0-0 ♙d5∞ Munoz —
Sichilima Novi Sad 1990

4. — dxe4 5. dxe4 ♖xd1† 6. ♜xd1 ♙g4 7. ♙e2 0-0-0† 8. ♙d2 e5 9. h3 ♙xf3 10. ♙xf3 ♙c5 11. ♖f1±
Hopewell — Dawson 1993

4. dxe4?!

4. ♙g5 ♙g4 5. ♖d2 exd3 6. ♙xd3 ♜bd7 7. f3 ♙h5 8. 0-0-0

White has an advantage in the development in return for the pawn but it does not seem to be simple to exploit, for there are no weaknesses in Black's position.

8. — c6 9. ♜ge2 ♖a5 10. ♜d4 0-0-0 11. ♜b3 ♖c7 12. ♖e3 ♖b6

12. — ♜b8!? 13. g4

13. ♙f5 e5∞

13. — ♙g6 14. ♙xg6 hxg6 15. ♙f4 e5 16. ♙xe5 ♜xe5 17. ♖xd8† ♖xd8 18. ♖xe5† ♙d6±;

13. ♖e2 ♖c7 14. ♖e3 ♖b6 15. ♖e2 ½-½

Grabert — Neckar Werfen 1992

4. — ♖xd1† 5. ♜xd1 e5 6. ♜f3?!

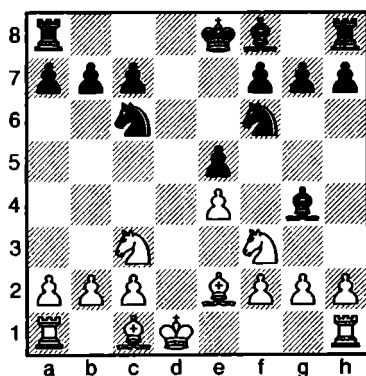
6. ♖c4!? ♖b4

6. — ♖c5

7. ♘ge2 ♘g4 8. ♗e1 ♖c5 9. ♘d1=

With further f3 and ♖e3

6. — ♖g4 7. ♖e2?! ♘c6



The black pieces get placed to the best positions in a very short time not giving White the chance to find a way out of its awkward situation.

8. h3 0-0-0† 9. ♖d3 ♖h5 10. g4??

This position was hopeless, anyway, but now it is over at once.

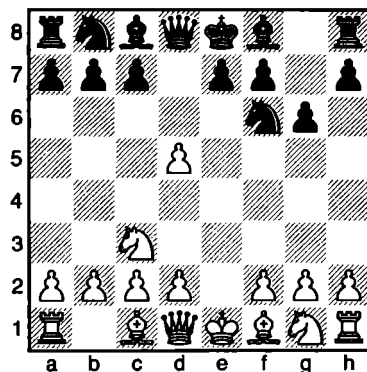
10. — ♘xg4+

Abu Mialah — Simonenko Manila 1992

1.5.2 — 2. ♘c3 d5 3. exd5 g6

1. e4 ♘f6 2. ♘c3 d5 3. exd5 g6

The move 3. — ♘d5 is more precise since Black has the opportunity to develop its bishop on g7 after recapturing the pawn too. So it will have some problems in the advance in the case of White's accurate play.



4. ♖c4

4. ♘f3?!

It is better to protect the d5 pawn at once.

4. — ♖g7 5. ♖c4 ♘bd7 6. 0-0 0-0

6. — ♘b6 7. ♖b5† ♖d7=

7. d3 a6

Black still should have chosen the move ♘b6.

8. ♗e1 b5 9. ♖b3 ♖b7 10. ♘e5! b4

10. — ♘xd5?? 11. ♘xf7! ♘xc3

11. — ♗xf7 12. ♘xd5+

12. ♘xd8†+

11. ♘c6!

In the position formed by the in-

evitable exchanges Black has nothing that could be equivalent with White's bishop pair.

11. — ♖xc6 12. dxc6 bxc3 13. cxd7 ♖xd7 14. ♚b1

14. d4?! cxb2 15. ♖xb2 c5=

14. — e6 15. d4 cxb2 16. ♖xb2 ♜h4

16. — c5?! 17. d5±

17. ♜f3±

Christensen — Werner 1995

4. — ♖g7

4. — ♖bd7 5. d3 ♖b6 6. ♜f3!? ♖g7

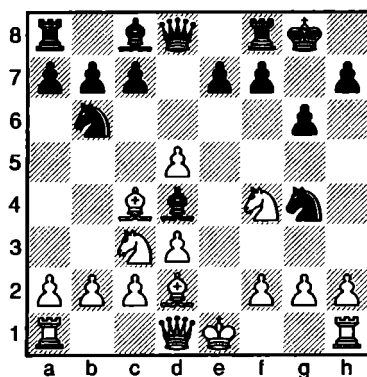
6. — ♖xc4 7. dxc4±

7. ♖g5±

5. d3 0-0 6. ♖ge2 ♖bd7 7. ♖e3 ♖b6 8. ♖f4

White's pieces get to the required squares in good time one after another.

8. — ♖g4 9. ♖d2 ♖d4?!



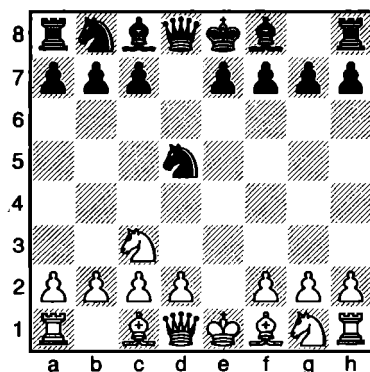
It is a useless move, since Black makes White do what it wanted to, i. e. to castle its king, without having any threat.

9. — ♖e5 10. ♜e2 g5 11. ♖h3 ♖g4 12. f3 ♖xh3 13. gxh3±

10. 0-0 a6 11. h3 ♖f6 12. ♜f3+—
Oliveira Filho — De Miranda Leao 1997

1.5.3 — 2. ♖c3 d5 3. exd5 ♖xd5
4. ♖xd5

1. e4 ♖f6 2. ♖c3 d5 3. exd5 ♖xd5



In this part of the current chapter we are dealing with the moves which have already occurred apart from the most frequent 4. ♖c4 that can be regarded the main line of this variation. None of these moves have considerable theoretical background but it would be a fault to underestimate them. According to the statis-

tics White cannot usually force advantage from these openings but it does not risk much, so the positions come into existence seem as though they were draw approximate-ly.

4. ♘d5

A) 4. ♖f3

The meaning of this move is to start an attack against the f7 point including ♔c4, but the queen stands sometimes clumsy on the f3 square. The move 4. — ♘xc3 would be followed by 5. ♔c4 with White's slight advantage that will be discussed in the following part. But Black has some other more promising chances as well. Let us see some of them.

4. — ♘b4

4. — ♘b6 5. ♖g3 ♘c6 6. ♘f3 a6 7. d3 ♘b4 8. ♘d1 g6 9. ♖h4 ♘c6 10. ♔f4 f6 11. ♔h6 e5 12. ♔xf8 ♘xf8 13. ♖h6† ♘f7 14. ♔e2= Basagic — Baburin Hartberg 1991

5. ♔c4 e6 6. ♔b3 ♘8c6 7. ♘ge2 ♘a5 8. 0-0?

8. ♔a4† ♔d7 9. a3 ♘d5 10. ♔xd7† ♖xd7 11. 0-0 ♔e7 12. d3 ♘xc3 13. ♘xc3 0-0 14. ♔e1 c5 15. ♔f4 ♘c6 16. ♔ac1 ♘d4 17. ♖g3 f6 18. ♘e2 e5 19. ♔d2= Kornasiewicz — Komarov Huy 1992

8. — ♘xb3 9. cxb3 ♖d3†;

B) 4. g3

It is not a good idea, for it makes the long diagonal weak.

4. — ♘xc3

4. — c6 5. ♔g2 g6 6. ♘ge2 ♔g7 7. ♘d5 cxd5 8. d4 ♘c6 9. c3 0-0 10. ♘f4 e6 11. 0-0 ♔d7 12. ♘d3 b6 13. ♔f4 ♔c8 14. ♔e1± Black is trying to manage to find a better place for its weak d7 bishop while White can start an attack on the king side (by means of ♖d2, ♔h6, h4) exploiting the weakened dark squares. Kiefhaber — Kengis Baden Baden 1990

5. bxc3 ♖d5 6. ♘f3

6. ♖f3 ♖xf3 7. ♘xf3 ♔d7

7. — b6 8. ♔g2 ♔b7 9. 0-0 ♘d7 10. ♔e1 e6 11. a4 a6 12. c4 ♔b4 13. ♔b1 a5= Franzoni — Urdy Novi Sad 1990

8. ♘e5 f6 9. ♘xd7 ♘xd7 10. ♔b1 0-0-0 11. ♔h3±

6. — ♖e4† 7. ♔e2 ♔h3 8. ♔g1 ♔g4 9. d3 ♖c6 10. c4 e6= Benko — Martz USA 1972;

C) 4. ♘ge2 e6 5. g3 ♘xc3 6. ♘xc3 ♔d7 7. ♔c4 c5 8. 0-0 ♘c6=;

D) 4. ♘e4?! ♘d7 5. ♘f3 ♘f6=;

E) 4. d4

It is a position similar to the Scandinavian Defence.

4.— ♖xc3

Black makes White form a pawn chain which can be attacked.

5. bxc3 g6 6. ♖f3 ♕g7 7. ♕c4 0–0 8. 0–0 c5 9. ♕a3 ♖c7 10. ♕e2 cxd4 11. cxd4 ♕f5 12. c4 ♖c6

Puchkov — Krivonogov Minsk 1996;

F) 4. ♖f3?!

This move does not try to prevent Black from equalizing the position in the least, so Black can develop its pieces without difficulties.

4. — ♕g4 5. ♖xd5

5. d4 e6 6. ♖xd5 ♖xd5 7. ♕e2 ♖c6 8. h3 ♕h5 9. 0–0 0–0–0 10. ♕e3 ♕e7 11. c4 ♖a5 12. a3 ♕xf3? 13. ♕xf3 ♕f6 14. b4 ♖f5 15. ♕xc6 bxc6 16. ♖a4± Kristensen — Vaganian Saint John 1988

5. — ♖xd5 6. ♕e2 ♖c6 7. 0–0 e6 8. d4 ♕d8 9. ♕e3 ♕e7 10. h3 ♕h5 11. c3 0–0 12. ♖b3=

Sterco — Krizsany Sárospatak 1996

4. — ♖xd5 5. d4

5. ♖f3

White's efforts are aimed at getting a draw without doubt.

5. — ♖c5 6. c3 e5 7. ♖e3

7. d3 ♖c6 8. ♖h3 This move proves how misplaced the white queen is. 8. — h6 9. ♕e2 ♕e6 10.

♕e3 ♖d6 11. 0–0 0–0–0 12. d4 exd4 13. ♖fd1 ♖d5 14. ♖xd5 ♕xd5 15. cxd4 g5± Boguslavsky — Varga Hungary 1991

7. — ♖xe3† 8. dxe3 e4

Black's hair's breadth advantage is given by having slightly more space and the weakness of the d3 square.

9. ♕c4 ♖d7 10. ♖e2 c6 11. ♖g3 ♖e5 12. ♕e2 f5 13. ♕d2 ♕e6 14. c4 ♖xc4 15. ♕xc4 ♕xc4 16. ♖xf5 g6 17. ♕c3 ♖g8 18. ♖g3 ♕d3 19. f3 exf3 20. gxf3 ♕c5 21. ♖f2 0–0–0± Valenta — Baburin Liehtenshtein 1995

5. — ♖c6 6. ♖f3

6. ♕e3?!

At this moment the bishop is rather wrongly placed on the e3 square.

6. — e5! 7. dxe5 ♖xe5 8. c3 ♕c5 9. ♖f3 ♖e7 10. ♖c1 0–0±

Mihályfi — Fokin 1992

6. — e5

6. — ♕g4 7. ♕e2 0–0–0 8. c3 e5 9. 0–0 exd4 10. cxd4 ♕d6

10. — ♖xd4?! It is early a little to hunt for the pawns yet. 11. ♖xd4 ♕xe2 12. ♖xe2 ♖xd4 13. ♕g5±

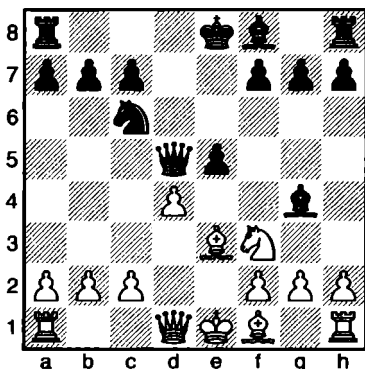
11. ♕e3 ♖b8 12. h3 ♕d7 13. ♖c2 f6 14. a3 ♖de8 15. ♖fd1 ♖e7 16. ♖c4 ♕c6±

Alburt — Vasiukov USSR 1967

7. ♕e3

7. dxe5 ♙xd1† 8. ♖xd1 ♙g4 9. ♙f4
♙c5= Burgess

7. — ♙g4



Black pieces are arriving at their places just in time.

7. — exd4 8. ♘xd4 ♙c5=

8. dxe5 ♙xf3 9. ♙xf3 ♙xf3 10.
gxf3 ♘xe5 11. 0-0-0 ♙d6 12.
♙b5† ♖f8 13. ♙e2=

Salazar — Alburt Santiago 1981

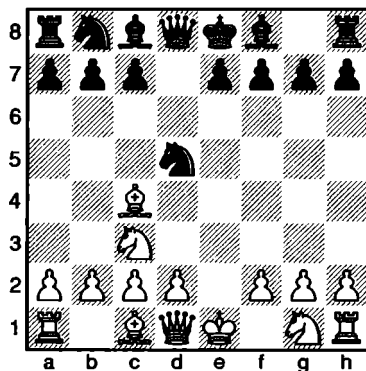
1.5.4 — 2. ♘c3 d5 3. exd5 ♘xd5

4. ♙c4 e6

1. e4 ♘f6 2. ♘c3 d5 3. exd5 ♘xd5
4. ♙c4

By this move we have arrived at the main line, where first we are dealing with the moves which are different from the most frequent 4. — ♘b6. In this old variation Black endeavours to develop as soon as possible

and to increase the pressure on the d5 square.



4. — e6

A) 4. — ♙e6

It is a rather unusual move with the purpose of exchanging the bishops moving on the light squares.

5. ♙f3 c6 6. ♘ge2 ♘c7 7. ♙xe6

7. ♙b3 ♘d7 8. d4 g6=

7. — ♘xe6 8. d3 g6

8. — ♘d4 9. ♘xd4 ♙xd4 10.
♙e3±

9. h4=

Gundersson — Hlousek 1972;

B) 4. — c6

Black is keeping its knight in the centre and in contrast to the move 4. — e6 it is maintaining the opportunity for the c8 bishop to get to the suitable place if it is allowed by other conditions.

5. ♖f3

5. d4 ♙f5 6. ♘f3 e6 7. 0-0 ♙e7 8. ♚e1 0-0 9. ♘e4 ♘d7 10. c3 ♜c7 11. ♘g3 ♙g6 12. ♘e5 ♘xe5 13. dxe5 ♘b6 14. ♙b3 c5 ♘ Apicella — Maaha Oostende 1991)

5. — ♘f6

By all means it is the strongest continuation, for the knight found its way back to its original foothold strengthening the king side and giving the c8 bishop the chance to get into play fast.

5. — e6 This move provides a point of support for the knight, although it seems as if the bishop got stuck a little on the c8 square.

6. ♘ge2 ♘d7 7. d4 ♜f6 8. ♜xf6

8. ♘xd5 exd5 9. ♜xf6 ♘xf6 10. ♙d3 ♙d6=

8. — ♘7xf6 9. a3 ♙d7 10. 0-0 ♘b6 11. ♙d3 c5 12. dxc5 ♙xc5 13. ♘e4 ♘xe4 14. ♙xe4 ♙b5 15. ♚e1 0-0-0 16. ♙f4 ♙d6 17. ♙xd6 ♚xd6 18. ♘c3 ♙c6= Schmaltz — Kengis 1993

6. h3 ♘bd7 7. ♜e2 ♘b6

7. — g6 8. ♘f3 ♙g7? 9. ♙xf7†+

8. ♙b3 g6 9. ♘f3 ♙g7 10. d3

10. 0-0 0-0 11. d3?!

11. d4∞

11. — ♘bd5 12. ♙d2 a5 13. a3 ♙e6!= 14. ♘d4?!

14. ♘e4 ♘xe4 15. dxe4 ♘c7= Yermolinsky,A

14. — ♘xc3 15. ♙xc3 ♙d5! ♘ Rozentalis — Yermolinsky Moscow 1994;

10. — 0-0 11. ♙f4 ♘fd5 12. ♘xd5 ♘xd5 13. ♙e5 ♙xe5 14. ♘xe5 ♜a5† 15. ♜d2 ♜xd2† 16. ♘xd2± Ivanov,V1 — Ivannikov 1996;

C) 4. — ♘xc3

This move is regarded as a disadvantageous one for Black and, in spite of this opinion, it sometimes occurs in the tournament practice.

5. ♜f3

It points out at once that the f7 point is unprotected because of the missing knight.

5. — e6 6. ♜xc3?!

6. dxc3!? White would rather have made this move. It opens the way in front of the c1 bishop and in the case of castling to the queen side occasionally the rook can attack the centre without delay. 6. — ♘d7 7. ♙f4 ♙d6 8. ♙xd6 cxd6 9. ♜g3 ♘f6 10. 0-0-0 d5 11. ♜xg7 ♙g8 12. ♜h6 ♙xg2 13. ♘h3± Bohnisch — Teske 1989

6. — d7

a) 6. — d6! It hinders White from moving d4. 7. d2

7. d3 f6! 8. xf6 gxf6 9. d4 g8 with further d7 and 0-0-0

7. — f6 8. xf6 gxf6 9. d4 d7 10. e3 d7 11. g3 c6 12. h5 0-0-0 13. g1 f5 14. c3 dxe3 15. fe3 f5 16. e2 h6 17. f2= Maliutin — Zoltek 1991

b) 6. — g5?! 7. f1 d6 8. d3 h5

8. — f6! 9. xf6 gxf6 10. d4 g8±

9. d4 d6 10. d2∞

7. d3 d6 8. 0-0 e7 9. d4 0-0 10. d5 c5 11. e3 c7 12. ad1 b6 13. dxc5 bxc5 14. f4 h5 15. c1 d6 16. f3 xe5 17. xh5 b7 18. fe1 f6=

Akopian — Yermolinsky Glendale 1994

5. d3

The replies 5. — d4 and 5. — d6 to the possible 5. f3 were discussed in the previous part of the present chapter.

5. d5!?

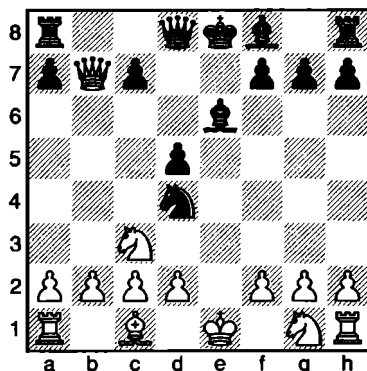
It is a witty move in the opening

which often sets a trap for the opponent fighting by routine moves.

5. — exd5 6. e2† e6?!

6. — e7!? 7. e5 0-0 8. xd5 d6 9. d3 d4 10. xd8 xd8 11. d1 g4∞

7. b5† d6 8. xb7 d4



9. d5! e8

9. — dxc2† 10. d1 dxa1 11. dxc7† e7 12. dxa8†±

10. xa8 dxc2† 11. d1 dxa1 12. c6†+—

5. — e7

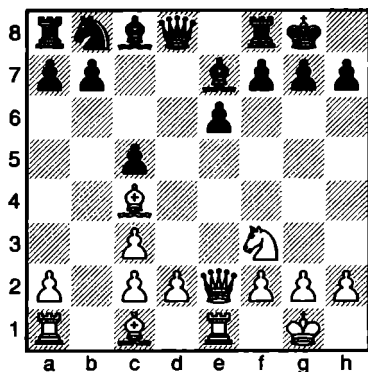
5. — c5 6. 0-0 d6 7. b5† d7 8. d7† d8xd7 9. d4 d6 10. g5 cxd4 11. dxd4 e7 12. d3 h6 13. h4 0-0=

Yandemirov — Smagin Elista 1995

6. 0-0 0-0 7. e1

7. d4 ♖xc3 8. bxc3 ♜d7=

7. — ♖xc3 8. bxc3 c5 9. ♔e2!?



It prepares an attack against the black king which has not got enough defensive pieces.

9. d4 ♜c6 10. ♙e3 ♙f6 11. ♔e2 ♔a5=

9. — ♜c6?! 10. ♔e4 ♙f6 11. h4!↑ ♙e8

11. — ♔c7 12. d4 cxd4 13. ♙g5!

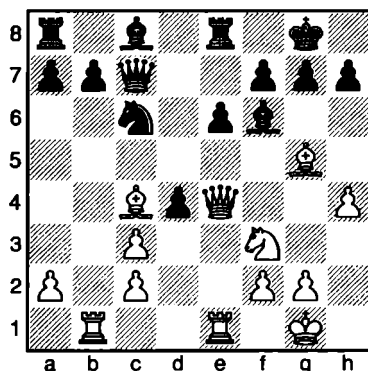
With the plan of further ♙d3+—

13. — ♜e5! 14. ♜xe5 ♙xe5 15. ♙d3 ♙h2↑ 16. ♜h1 f5 17. ♔xd4 ♙d6 18. ♙c4↑ Ivanov,V. I

12. ♜b1 ♔c7 13. d4! cxd4 14. ♙g5!→

It is an excellent move putting another piece into action and joining

the rooks.



14. cxd4? ♜xd4+

14. — ♙xg5?

14. — ♜e5! 15. ♙b5! ♜f8 16. ♙xf6 gxf6 17. ♜xe5 fxe5 18. cxd4±

15. ♜xg5±

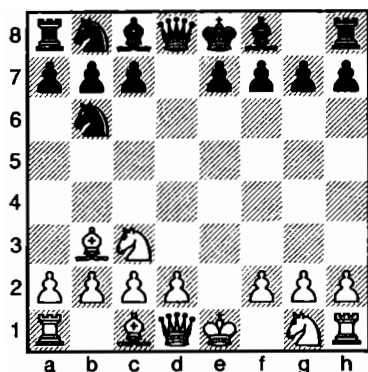
Ivanov,VI — Sivokho Russia 1992

1.5.5 — 2. ♜c3 d5 3. exd5 ♜xd5
4. ♙c4 ♜b6

1. e4 ♜f6 2. ♜c3 d5 3. exd5 ♜xd5
4. ♙c4 ♜b6 5. ♙b3

Black instead of maintaining the tension in the centre by moving the pawns tries to insist on playing with its pieces not pledging itself to an immediate centre fight. Black is given poor opportunities by the main line introduced with 5. —

\mathcal{Q} c6, but it even has a solid position without weaknesses.



5. — \mathcal{Q} c6!?

A) 5. — c5 6. \mathcal{W} h5! e6

6. — c4 7. \mathcal{L} xc4 \mathcal{Q} xc4 8. \mathcal{W} b5†—

7. d3 \mathcal{Q} c6

7. — \mathcal{Q} 8d7 8. \mathcal{L} g5 \mathcal{Q} f6 9. \mathcal{W} e2 h6 10. \mathcal{L} h4 \mathcal{L} e7 11. \mathcal{Q} f3 \mathcal{Q} fd5 12. \mathcal{L} xe7 \mathcal{W} xe7 13. \mathcal{W} e5 f6 14. \mathcal{W} h5† \mathcal{Q} f8± Kotan—Varga 1996

8. \mathcal{L} g5!

8. \mathcal{Q} f3 With the plan of further \mathcal{Q} g5 8. — g6±

8. — \mathcal{L} e7 9. \mathcal{L} xe7!

9. \mathcal{Q} f3 0-0 10. 0-0 \mathcal{Q} d7 11. \mathcal{Q} e4 b6 12. \mathcal{W} fe1 \mathcal{Q} f6 13. \mathcal{W} h4 \mathcal{Q} xe4= Pavlenko — Bagirov Baku 1967

9. — \mathcal{W} xe7 10. \mathcal{Q} e4 \mathcal{Q} d7

10. — \mathcal{Q} d5 11. \mathcal{Q} e2 g6?! 12. \mathcal{W} h6

\mathcal{L} d7 13. \mathcal{W} g7! \mathcal{W} f8 14. \mathcal{L} xd5+ Balashov — Mikenas Riga 1970

11. \mathcal{L} a4!

This move tries to exploit the opportunities given by the misplaced black pieces.

11. \mathcal{Q} f3 b6 12. 0-0-0 \mathcal{L} b7 13. \mathcal{W} he1 0-0 14. \mathcal{Q} eg5 Yurkov — Suteev Moscow 1964

11. — 0-0

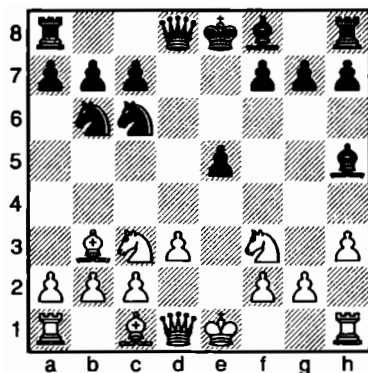
11. — \mathcal{Q} d4 12. c3 \mathcal{Q} f5 13. g4 g6 14. \mathcal{W} h3 \mathcal{Q} h4 15. g5±

12. \mathcal{L} xc6 bxc6± Maliutin — Simonenko 1991;

B) 5. — e5?

It gives White more chances.

6. d3 \mathcal{Q} c6 7. \mathcal{Q} f3 \mathcal{L} g4 8. h3 \mathcal{L} h5?



Black does not feel danger.

9. \mathcal{Q} xe5!!

It is an excellent tactical blow!

9. — ♖xd1 10. ♖xf7† ♜e7 11. ♖g5† ♜d6 12. ♜e4† ♜xe5 13. f4† ♜d4 14. ♖xd1 ♜b4 15. c3†! ♜e3 16. 0-0! ♜xd3 17. ♜g3!+— Rosentalis — Mikenas Vilnius 1981;

C) 5. — ♖f5 6. ♖f3 ♖c8 7. ♖xf7† ♜xf7 8. g4 ♜c6 9. gxf4 ♜d4± Széll,L — Molnár,B Miskolc 1996

6. ♜f3

A) 6. ♖f3

White makes hatch simple plans. First it wants to develop its pieces but Black not being threatened by its opponent's attacking moves makes the game equal without troubles.

6. — e6 7. ♜ge2 ♖e7 8. 0-0
8. d3 0-0 9. ♖f4 e5 10. ♖d2 ♜a5
11. ♜d5 ♜xb3 12. ♜xe7† ♖xe7
13. axb3 c6 14. h4 f5 15. ♖g5
♖d6 16. h5 h6† Bartos — Kri-
zsany 1994

8. — 0-0 9. d4 ♜xd4 10. ♜xd4
♖xd4 11. ♖f4 ♖d6 12. ♖xd6 ♖xd6
13. ♖ad1 ♖e7 14. a4 a5 15. ♖fel
♖a6 16. ♜b5 h6 17. c3 ♖c5 18.
♖g3 c6 19. ♖e5 ♖e7 20. ♜d4 ♖f6
21. ♖e4 ♜d5†

Castro — Shabalov Manila 1992;

B) 6. ♖h5?!

It is extraordinary but useless.

6. — g6 7. ♖f3 ♜e5 8. ♖f4 ♖g7 9.
d4 ♜ec4†

6. — ♖f5

The move 6. — ♖g4 is not possible because of the usual 7. ♖xf7†!

A) 6. — g6

By advancing the bishop to the wing Black wants to put pressure on the d4 square.

7. d3 ♖g7 8. ♖e3 0-0 9. ♖d2 ♖g4
10. ♜g5 ♜d4 11. ♜ce4 ♜xb3†
Vidéki — Palkovi 1996;

B) 6. — ♜a5

This manoeuvre makes the position simpler capturing the dangerous bishop and taking the opportunity of having a bishop pair off White at the same time.

7. d4 ♜xb3 8. axb3 ♖g4 9. h3 ♖f5
10. ♖e2 c6 11. ♖g5 h6 12. ♖h4
♜d5 13. 0-0 ♜f6 14. ♖fd1 g5 15.
♖g3 ♖g7 16. d5 ♜xd5 17. ♜xd5
cxd5 18. c4 0-0 19. ♖xd5 ♖c8 20.
♖xe7=

Larsson — Smagin Naestved 1988

7. 0-0

A) 7. d4 e6 8. ♖f4

8. h3 ♜a5 9. ♖e2 ♜xb3 10. axb3
♖d6 11. 0-0 c6 12. ♜e4 ♖xe4 13.
♖xe4 ♜d7 14. c3 h6= Apicella
— Palatnik Belgrade 1988

8. — ♖d6 9. ♖d2 0-0 10. ♖g3 ♖g4
11. 0-0-0 ♜a5 12. ♖de1 ♜xb3††
Lein — Alburtt New York 1980;

B) 7. a4 ♜a5 8. ♖a2 e6 9. 0-0 ♖e7
10. ♖el 0-0 11. ♜e4 c5!? 12. ♜g3

♙g6 13. d3 ♘c6 14. ♙b3 c4

This move starts the attack to liquidate White's queen side.

15. dxc4 ♙xd1 16. ♚xd1 ♘a5+
I'pishin — Horvath Leningrad 1989

7. — e6 8. d4

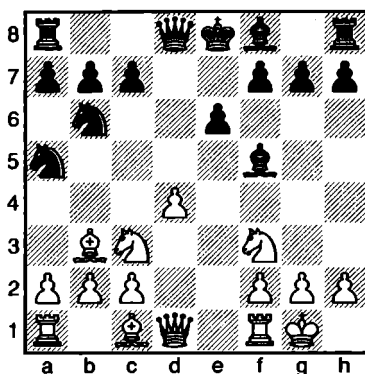
A) 8. a4 ♙b4 9. d3 ♙g4 10. h3 ♙h5
11. g4 ♙g6 12. ♙g5 ♙e7 13. ♙xe7
♘xe7 14. ♘e5 ♘d7 15. ♙e2 0-0 16.
♘xd7 ♙xd7=

Lupu — Hauchard Torcy 1991;

B) 8. ♚e1 ♙e7 9. ♘e4 ♙g4 10. h3
♙xf3 11. ♙xf3 ♘d4 12. ♙g3 0-0
13. d3 ♘d5 14. c3 ♘xb3 15. ♙h6 g6
16. axb3 ♙e8 17. c4 ♘b4 18. ♙e5 f6
19. ♙xe6† ♘h8 20. ♙f7 ♙g8 21.
♘g5+—

Balashov — Leutwyler Lenk 1991

8. — ♘a5



It is Black's typical move, as it can be shown by some of the previous

lines, which exchanges the dangerous b3 bishop making White forget the breakthrough by moving d5 forever.

8. — ♙e7 9. ♚e1

9. d5 exd5 10. ♘xd5 ♘xd5 11.
♙xd5= ♘b4!? 12. ♙xb7 ♙xd1
13. ♙xd1 ♙b8 14. ♘d4!∞

9. — ♘a5 10. d5?†

It is a sacrifice of doubtful value.

10. — ♘xb3 11. axb3 ♘xd5 12.
♘xd5 ♙xd5 13. ♙xd5 exd5 14.
♘d4 ♙e4 15. c4 ♙b4+—

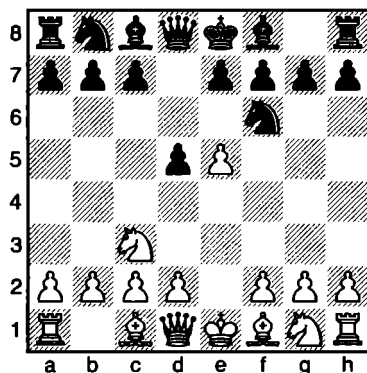
Ivanov — Albur 1978

9. ♙f4 ♙d6 10. ♙xd6 ♙xd6 11.
♙e2 0-0 12. h3 a6 13. ♘e4=

Lendwai — Krizsany 1991

1.6.1 — 2. ♘c3 d5 3. e5 d4

1. e4 ♘f6 2. ♘c3 d5 3. e5



It is more demanding than capturing

the d5 pawn.

3. — d4 4. exf6

This is the more frequent move of the two opportunities.

4. ♖ce2

Mikhail Tal's move

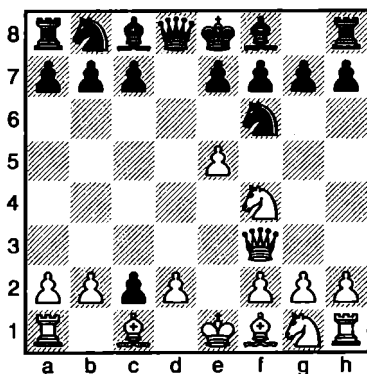
4. — ♖g4

For the line 4. — ♖e4 see the variation 3. — ♖e4. Other possibilities are the following.

A) 4. — d3 5. exf6

5. ♖f4 dxc2 6. ♖xc2

6. ♖f3



6. — g5! It was unexpected. Sergeev

a) 6. — ♖g4 7. e6 f5∞:

b) 6. — ♖g8? 7. ♖b5† c6 8. ♖c4∞

7. exf6 gxf4 8. ♖xf4 ♖c6∞

6. — ♖d5 7. e6 f6 8. ♖gh3

8. ♖g6∞

8. — ♖xf4 9. ♖xf4 ♖d6! 10. ♖a4† ♖c6 11. ♖e2 ♖d4!† Ya-kovich — Sergeev Cappelle la Grande 1996 Sergeev;

5. — dxe2 6. ♖xe2 gxf6 7. d4 ♖f5 8. ♖f3 c6 9. ♖e2 ♖d7 10. ♖g3 ♖g6 11. h4±;

B) 4. — ♖fd7? 5. e6±;

5. f4 h5!

It is a good plan to block the light squares on the king side.

A) 5. — ♖c6 6. ♖f3 f6?! 7. h3 ♖h6 8. c3!±;

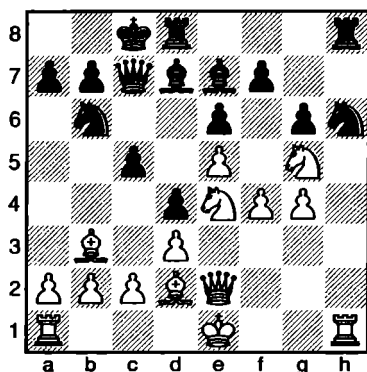
B) 5. — c5 6. ♖g3 ♖c6 7. e6!±

6. ♖f3

A) 6. h3?! ♖h6 7. ♖f3 ♖f5 8. d3 c5 9. g3 ♖c6 10. a3 e6 11. ♖g2 ♖ce7! 12. 0-0 ♖d5† Mestrovic — Borgo Aosta 1990;

B) 6. ♖g3 g6 7. ♖c4 e6 8. d3 c5 9. ♖f3 ♖d7 10. ♖e4 ♖e7 11. h3 ♖h6 12. g4 ♖b6 13. ♖b3 ♖d7 14. ♖fg5 ♖c7 15. ♖e2 0-0-0 16.

♙d2? hxg4 17. hxg4



17. — ♘xg4! It is not done to refuse a present. 18. 0-0-0 ♘h6
Mitkov — Santo Roman Nice 1994

6. c5 7. ♘g3 g6 8. ♙c4 e6 9. ♘e4
♙e7 10. ♙e2

10. b4 cxb4 11. a3 ♙a5 12. h3
♘h6 13. ♘xd4 ♙d7 14. ♙b2 bxa3
15. ♙c3 ♙d8 16. 0-0= Vavra —
Khromov Pardubice 1996

10. — ♘c6 11. a3 a6 12. d3 b5 13.
♙a2 ♙b7 14. ♙d2 ♘h6 15. 0-0
♙b6 16. ♘h1 0-0-0 17. ♙ab1 ♘b8
18. ♙fc1±

Mitkov — Baburin Cappelle la
Grande 1993

4. — dxc3 5. fxg7

5. bxc3 exf6 6. ♘f3 ♙d6 7. ♙e2 0-0
8. 0-0 c5 9. d4 ♘c6=

5. — cxd2† 6. ♙xd2

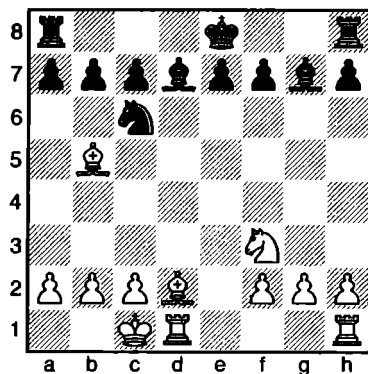
6. ♙xd2

This move is offered for those only who like the endgames. In the case of making the proper moves Black can equalize the game without problems. It is true that it cannot expect more either.

6. — ♙xd2† 7. ♙xd2 ♙xg7 8.
0-0-0 ♘c6

8. — ♙g4 9. ♙e2 ♙xe2 10. ♘xe2
♘c6=

9. ♙b5 ♙d7 10. ♘f3



10. ♘e2 a6 11. ♙c4 ♘e5 12.
♙d5 e6 13. ♙xb7 ♙b8 14. ♙xa6
♙b6 15. ♙c3 ♙xa6 16. f4 ♙xa2
17. ♘b1 ♙a4 18. fxe5± ½-½
Schlindwein — Rausis Cappelle
la Grande 1994

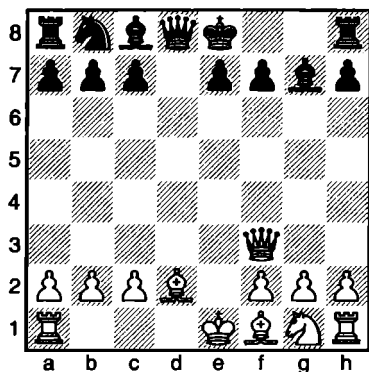
10. — h6!

It is not a smart move but useful, for it saves the opponent's only threat, the move ♘g5.

11. ♖he1 e6 12. ♕f4 0-0-0 13. ♜e5
 ♜xe5 14. ♕xe5 ♖hg8 15. ♕xd7†
 ♖xd7 16. g3 h5 17. ♖xd7 ♜xd7 18.
 ♖d1† ♜c6 19. ♕xg7 ♖xg7 ½-½

The position is really a draw. De La
 Villa Garcia — Magem Badals
 Pamplona 1996

6. — ♕xg7 7. ♖f3!?



7. — ♕xb2!

Black has to accept the sacrifice.
 White can play actively in the cases
 of other moves too without any
 material drawback.

A) 7. — ♜c6?!

It is interesting that in this sharp
 position both white moves lead to
 the same type of endgame.

8. 0-0-0

8. ♕b5 ♖d6 9. ♕c3 0-0 10. ♕xc6
 ♕xc6† 11. ♖xc3 bxc6 12. ♜e2

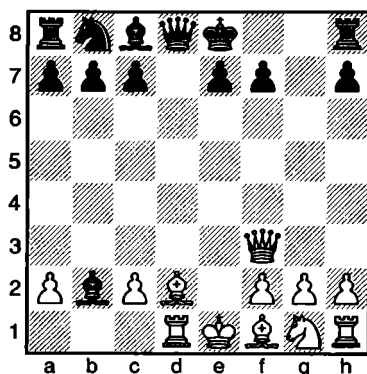
♕a6 13. ♖d1 ♖e6 14. ♖e3 ♖xe3
 15. fxe3 ♖fd8 16. ♖xd8† ♖xd8
 17. ♖f1± Hector — Kengis Ha-
 ninge 1992

8. — ♖d6 9. ♕c3 ♖h6† 10. ♜b1
 ♖g8 11. ♕c4 ♖g6 12. ♜e2 ♕xc3
 13. ♖xc3 ♕d7 14. ♜f4 ♖g7 15.
 ♖e3 0-0-0 16. ♕b5 e5 17. ♜d5 f6
 18. ♖c5 ♖f8 19. ♖xf8 ♖xf8 20.
 ♕xc6±

The endgame can just be gained by
 White. Petronic — Vujadinovic Nis
 1994;

B) 7. — ♖d4?! 8. ♕c3 ♖g4 9.
 ♕xg7→ Hector — Blee

8. ♖d1



This is the critical position of the
 variation. If this line can be played
 by White or Black, that depends on
 it. The question is a well-known
 one. What is worth more: having an
 extra pawn or the advantage in the
 development?

8. — \mathcal{W} d4

A) 8. — \mathcal{W} d6? 9. \mathcal{L} c4 \mathcal{W} e5† 10. \mathcal{Q} e2 \mathcal{W} f6 11. \mathcal{W} b3 \mathcal{L} e5 12. f4 \mathcal{L} d6 13. \mathcal{L} c3† Reefschlaeger — Frosch Velden 1995;

B) 8. — \mathcal{Q} d7!? 9. \mathcal{L} c3 \mathcal{L} xc3† 10. \mathcal{W} xc3 \mathcal{K} g8 11. \mathcal{Q} f3

11. \mathcal{L} d3

11. — e6 12. \mathcal{L} d3 \mathcal{K} xg2 13. \mathcal{W} h8† \mathcal{G} e7†

No compensation can be seen.

9. \mathcal{Q} e2 \mathcal{W} g4 10. \mathcal{W} b3 \mathcal{L} f6

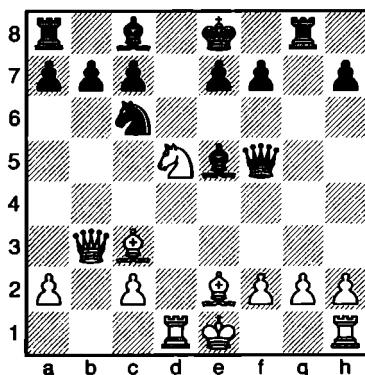
A) 10. — \mathcal{L} e5? 11. \mathcal{L} c3 \mathcal{L} xc3† 12. \mathcal{W} xc3 0-0 13. \mathcal{L} d3!;

B) 10. — \mathcal{L} g7!? 11. \mathcal{Q} f4

11. \mathcal{L} c3?! \mathcal{Q} c6 12. \mathcal{L} d3 \mathcal{L} xc3†
13. \mathcal{W} xc3 \mathcal{W} b4†

11. — \mathcal{Q} c6 12. \mathcal{L} e2 \mathcal{W} f5 13. \mathcal{Q} d5 0-0 14. \mathcal{L} c3 \mathcal{L} e5 15. \mathcal{L} d3

11. \mathcal{Q} f4 \mathcal{Q} c6 12. \mathcal{L} e2 \mathcal{W} f5 13. \mathcal{Q} d5 \mathcal{L} e5 14. \mathcal{L} c3 \mathcal{K} g8

15. f4! \mathcal{L} d6!?

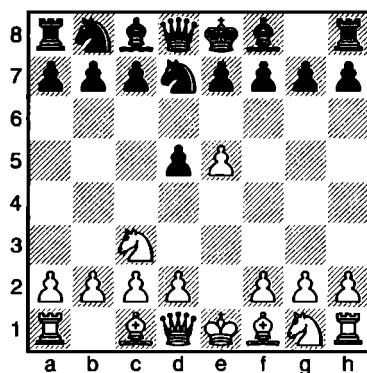
15. — e6?! 16. 0-0! exd5 17. fxe5 \mathcal{W} e4 18. \mathcal{W} f2

Balashov — Alburt USSR 1974

16. 0-0 \mathcal{L} d7

1.6.2.1 — 2. \mathcal{Q} c3 d5 3. e5 \mathcal{Q} fd7 4. f4

1. e4 \mathcal{Q} f6 2. \mathcal{Q} c3 d5 3. e5 \mathcal{Q} fd7



Now White can choose four different variations. The right choices probably are the moves 4. f4 and 4. d4 accepting the French Defence. 4. \mathcal{Q} xd5 is too plain while 4. e6 which will be discussed in the following part seems to be rather risky.

4. f4

A) 4. \mathcal{Q} xd5

You can make the position equal by

such moves but cannot get any advantage.

4. — Qxe5 5. Qe3 c5 6. b3

A) 6. b4?! Qec6 ! It does not let White move d4. 7. bxc5 e5 8. Qb2 Qxc5 † van Geet — Marovic Amsterdam 1972;

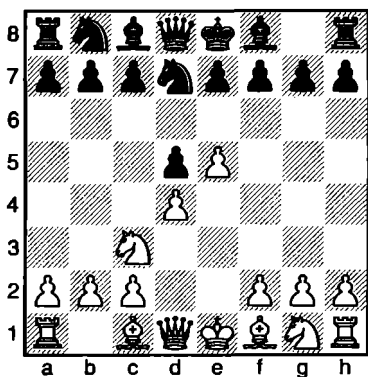
B) 6. f4 Qec6 7. Qf3 Qc7 8. g3 e6=

6. — Qbc6

6. — Qg6 7. Qb2 e5 8. h4 Qc6 9. Qb5 Qd7 10. h5 Qf4 11. h6 Qd4 12. hxg7 Qxg7 13. Qxd7 † Qxd7 14. g3 Qg6 15. Qh5 ∞ Ginsburg — Bagirov Berlin 1994

7. Qb2 e6 8. f4 Qg6 9. f5 exf5 10. Qb5 Qd7 !†;

B) 4. d4



4. — c5

Black starts an attack against the white centre at once exploiting that White cannot capture the pawn on d5. For the line 4. — e6 5. f4 c5 6. Qf3 see C 11.

5. dxc5

A) 5. f4 cxd4 For the line 5. — e6 see C 11. 6. Qb5

6. Qce2 Qc6 7. Qf3 Qa5 †=

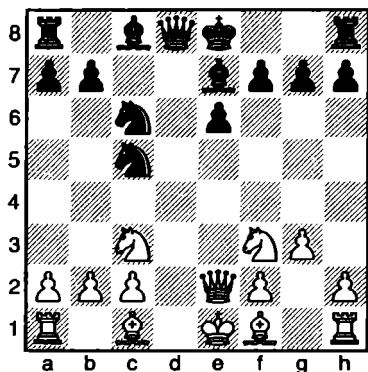
6. — Qc6 7. Qxd4

7. Qf3 Qdb8 !? Black takes the advantage of the fact that it has not made the move e6 yet, so it can exchange the c8 bishop which is traditionally bad in the positions of French Defence. 8. Qbxd4 Qg4 9. h3 Qxf3 10. Qxf3 e6 11. Qe3 Qd7 12. Qd3 Qc5 ½–½ Romero — Van der Werf Wijk aan Zee 1995

7. — Qb6 8. Qgf3 Qdb8 9. c3 Qxd4 10. Qxd4 Qc6 11. Qb5 a6 12. Qa4 e6 13. 0–0 Qc5 14. Qf2 Qd7 15. Qe3 Qxd4 16. Qxd4 Qxd4 = Kiik — Varga Debrecen 1992;

B) 5. Qxd5 ? It gives up the centre without any compensation and, in addition, it puts the queen into action too early. The punishment does not fail to come

about. 5. — cxd4 6. ♖xd4 ♘c6 7. ♖e4 ♘c5 8. ♖c4 e6 9. ♘c3 ♘xe5 10. ♖e2 ♘c6 11. ♘f3 ♙e7 12. g3



12. — b5! 13. ♙g2

A) 13. ♖xb5 ♙b8;

B) 13. ♘xb5 ♙a6;

13. — b4 14. ♘e5 ♘d4 15. ♖d1 ♙a6 16. ♙e3 bxc3 17. ♙xd4 cxb2 18. ♙c6† ♘f8 19. ♙b1 ♖a5† 20. c3 ♙d8 21. ♖f3 ♘d3†! 22. ♘xd3 ♙xd4 23. ♘f4 ♖xa2 24. ♙e4 ♙b7 25. cxd4 ♖xb1† 26. ♙xb1 ♙xf3 27. ♙g1 ♙b4† 0-1 Huber — Shabalov Winnipeg 1997;

5. — e6 6. ♘f3

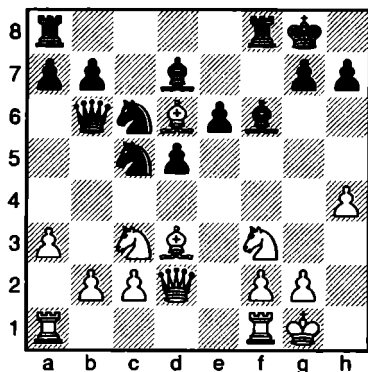
6. ♙b5 ♘c6 7. ♘f3 ♙xc5

7. — ♘xc5 8. ♘d4 ♙d7 9. ♙xc6 bxc6 10. 0-0 ♙b8 11. f4 ♙e7

Avdic — Baburin Schaan 1996

8. 0-0 0-0 9. ♙g5 f6 10. exf6 ♘xf6 11. ♘a4 ♙d6 12. c4 ♘e5 13. cxd5 ♘xf3† 14. ♖xf3 ♖a5 15. ♖d3?! a6! 16. dxe6 axb5 17. ♖xd6 ♙a6 18. ♖d3 bxa4 19. ♙xf6 gxf6 20. e7 ♙e8† Bellini — Varga, Z Montecatini Terme 1997;

6. — ♘c6 7. ♙f4 ♘xc5 8. ♙d3 ♙e7 9. h4 ♖b6 10. 0-0 ♙d7 11. a3 0-0 12. ♖d2 f5 13. exf6 ♙xf6 14. ♙d6

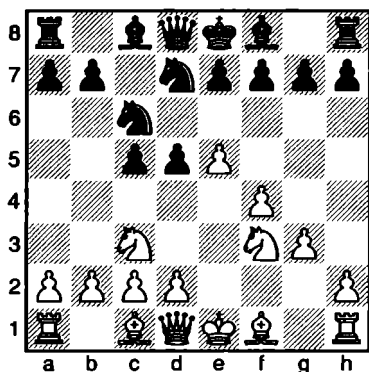


14. — ♘d4!

This game also proves the fact that if you can take the control over the squares d4 and e5, you will get close to the win.

15. ♙xf8 ♘xf3† 16. gxf3 ♙xf8† Kamber — Neckar Bern 1991

4. — c5 5. ♖f3 ♘c6 6. g3



It is also difficult to draw a border line between the different openings, i. e. where does the King's Indian Attack begin and where does the Alekhine Defence finish. The types of positions are very similar to each other. If you would like to play this line, then it is worth knowing the King's Indian Attack in a certain extent.

A) 6. d4 cxd4 7. ♖b5 ♖db8

a) 7. — e6 8. ♖bxd4 ♖xd4 9. ♖xd4 ♗b6 10. c3 ♖b8 11. ♕e3 ♖c6 12. ♕d3 ♖xd4 13. cxd4 ♕d7 14. 0-0 g6 15. ♗e2 ♕e7 16. ♖h1 0-0-0?! 17. b4 ♖b8 18. a4 ♗xb4 19. ♗fb1 ♗a5 20. ♕d2 Nunn — Howell London 1993;

b) 7. — ♗a5†!?

8. ♖bxd4

8. ♖fxd4 a6 9. ♖c3 ♖xd4 10. ♗xd4 e6 11. ♕e3 ♖c6 12. ♗b6 ♗xb6 13. ♕xb6 g5† Relange — Hauchard France 1991

8. — ♕g4 9. h3

9. e6 fxe6 10. ♕e2 ♕xf3 11. ♖xf3 ♗d6 12. 0-0 Kiss, L — Varga, Z Hungary 1995

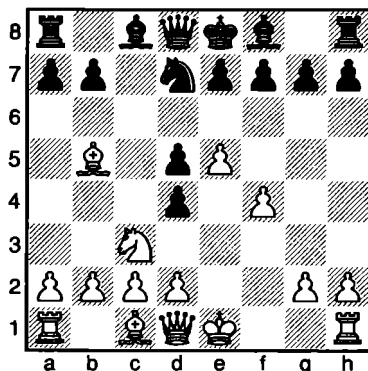
9. — ♕xf3 10. ♖xf3 e6 11. ♕e3 ♖d7 12. ♕d3 ♕c5=

It is an equal position. Romero — van der Werf Wijk aan Zee 1995;

B) 6. ♕b5 ♖d4?

6. — e6=

7. ♖xd4 cxd4



8. e6! dxc3 9. ♗h5! g6 10. exd7† ♕xd7 11. ♗xd5 cxb2 12. ♕xb2+ Kraut — Varga Altensteig 1993

6. — e6 7. ♕g2

7. d3 ♙e7 8. h4 h5 9. ♙g2 a6 10. a4 b6 11. ♘g5 ♘d4 12. ♙e3 ♘f5 13. ♙f2 ♘b8 14. ♘e2 ♘c6 15. c4 f6 16. exf6 gxf6 17. cxd5 exd5 18. ♘f3 ♙e6 19. 0-0 ♖d7 20. ♚el ♜f7∞
Arapovic — Kovacevic Sarayevu 1982

7. — ♙e7

7. — a6!? 8. a4 ♖a5!? 9. 0-0 b5∞

8. 0-0

8. d3 b5

8. — 0-0 9. 0-0 f6?! The move 9. — ♚b8 is better. 10. exf6 ♘xf6 11. ♖e2± Balashov — Schmidt, Wl Halle 1976;

9. ♙d2 ♚b8 10. 0-0 0-0 11. ♖e2 ♖b6 12. h4 h6 13. ♜h2 b4 14. ♘d1 c4 15. d4 c3⌘ Kochetov — Grebennikov Moscow 1996

8. — 0-0

A) 8. — a6 9. a4 ♖a5

9. — ♖c7 10. d3 g6?!

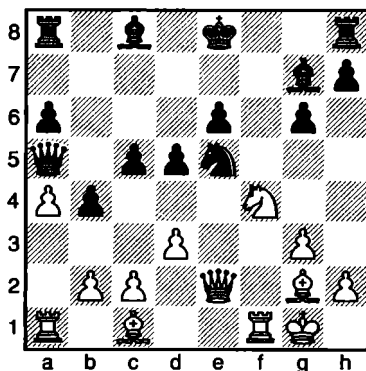
10. — b6 11. ♘e2 ♙b7 12. c3 0-0-0 13. ♙d2 *With the plan of the further moves ♚b1 and b4±*

11. ♘e2!? b6 12. c4!

12. d4!?± Pavasovic, D — Marzi, L Ljuljana 1994

12. — d4 13. g4! h5 14. gxh5 gxh5 15. ♘g3±

10. d3 b5 11. f5 b4 12. fxe6 fxe6 13. ♘e2 ♘dx5 14. ♘xe5 ♘xe5 15. ♘f4 ♙f6 16. ♖h5† g6 17. ♖e2 ♙g7



18. ♘xd5! exd5 19. ♙h6!± Balashov, Y;

B) 8. — ♚b8 9. a4 a6 10. d3 b5 11. axb5 axb5 12. g4 b4 13. ♘e2 0-0 14. g5 ♙b7 15. ♘g3 g6 16. ♘h1 ♘d4 17. ♘f2 ♘f5 18. ♘g4 ♖c7 19. ♘f6†∞

Watson — Bagirov BL 1993

9. ♜h1 a6

It is quite difficult to make a decision if this is the right move of preparation or 9. — ♚b8.

9. — f6 10. exf6 ♙xf6

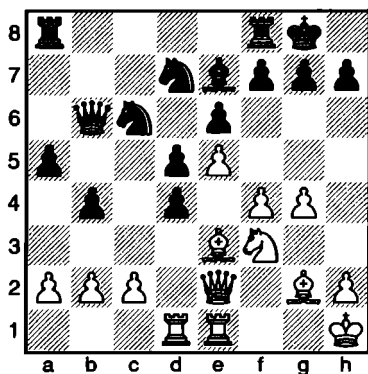
10. — ♘xf6 11. d4!? ♘e4 12. ♘xe4 dxe4 13. ♘e5 ♘xd4 14. ♙xe4±

11. ♖e2 ♜h8 12. d3

12. ♖xe6? ♙xc3+ 13. bxc3?
♜de5+

12. — ♜b6 13. ♜d1±;

10. ♜e2 b5 11. d4 b4 12. ♙e3 a5
13. ♙e1 ♙a6 14. g4 ♙xe2 15. ♖xe2
♜b6 16. ♙ad1 cxd4



17. ♙g1

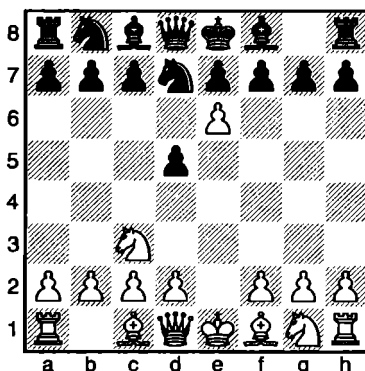
White sacrifices a pawn so as to avoid the exchanges of the pieces that would decrease the chances of its king side attack.

17. — ♙c5 18. ♙d3 ♙fe8 19. ♖f2
a4 20. ♖h4 b3 21. ♜g5 h6 22. ♖h5
♙e7 23. cxb3 ♜b4=

With mutual chances. Conquest —
Baburin Isle of Man 1994

1.6.2.2 — 2. ♜c3 d5 3. e5 ♜fd7 4.
e6

1. e4 ♜f6 2. ♜c3 d5 3. e5 ♜fd7 4.
e6



It is the most aggressive continuation. White's purpose is obvious: to tear up Black's king side pawn structure and start an attack against it. But the most important task is to get the control over the d4 and e5 squares which determines the success of the attack or defence. The outcome of the fight stands or falls on it.

4. — fxe6 5. d4 c5!

Of course Black is also aware of the opponent's aim and it begins the counterplay against White's centre at once.

A) 5. — ♜f6 6. ♜f3 g6 7. ♙f4!?
♜g7 8. ♜b5=;

B) 5. — g6?!

It gives White another target which can be attacked immediately.

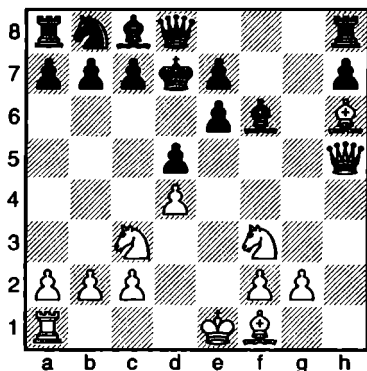
6. h4 d6

6. — g7 7. h5 d8 8. f4 c5 9. d5 a6 10. d3

7. h5 xh5 8. xh5

This sacrifice has always to be taken into consideration.

8. — gxh5 9. xh5 d7 10. d3 g7 11. h6 f6



12. dxd5 exd5 13. xxd5 e8 14. xh5 d7 15. e5!+-

15. 0-0-0 c6 16. f4 g8?

16. — f8! 17. e5! xe5 18. xe5

18. dxe5! c7!+- The difference is that the bishop is not hanging now in contrast to the move 16. — g8.

18. — d8!∞

17. e5! d8 18. f7! d7 19. f5! e8 20. xc8! xf7 21. c4! 1-0 Bellon — Kovacevic, V Karlovac 1979;

C) 5. — e5?! 6. dxe5 e6 7. f4 e7 8. d3 g6 9. d3±

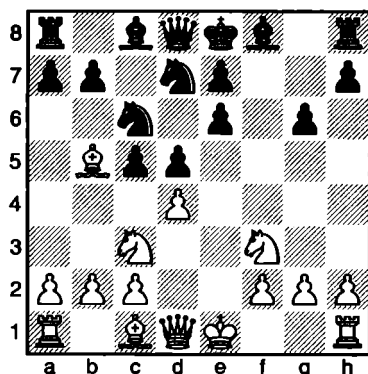
6. dxc5

White does not give up the centre, it wants to control it by its pieces.

A) 6. d3 d6

6. — cxd4!? 7. dxd4 d6 8. b5! d7 9. 0-0

7. b5 g6



7. — cxd4!? 8. dxd4 dxd4 9. xd4 a6 10. d3 b6 11. e3 xd4 12. dxd4

8. e3

8. h4 g7!±

8. — Qf6?! 9. h5 gxf5

9. — Qxh5? 10. Bxh5 gxf5 11.
 Qe5+

10. Qe5

8. — Bg7 9. dxc5 Ba5!?

9. — O-O 10. O-O Bc7 11. Be1
 Qde5 12. Qd4 Qd7 13. Qe2
 Qxd4

13. — Bd8!?

14. Qxd4 Bf4 15. Qe3 Bf7 16. f4
 Qc6 17. Qb5 Bd8 18. c3

10. O-O O-O 11. Bb1 a6 12. Qxc6
 bxc6 13. Be1 Bc7 14. Qg5 Qe5 15.
 Qd4 Bf5 16. Qh3 Qf7 17. Qxg7
 Qxg7 18. Qa4 e5 19. Qb6 Bb8 20.
 c4 Qe6 21. b4

With mutual chances. Hector —
Sergeev Berlin 1995;

B) 6. Qd3?! Qf6 7. dxc5 Qc6 8.
 Qg5

8. Qf3 g6 9. O-O Bg7 10. We2
 O-O 11. Qg5 Qh8 12. a3 e5!

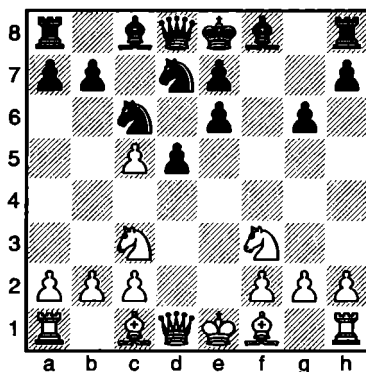
8. — g6 9. Qh3 Qg7 10. Qf4 d4 11.
 Qe4 e5 12. Qxf6?! exf6 13. Qd6

White gives everything for this
check.

13. — Qf8 14. Qe2 Ba5

Jacobs — Shabalov Philadelphia
1997

6. — Qc6 7. Qf3 g6



A) 7. — a6 8. Qe3 Qf6 9. Qa4 e5
10. Qb6 Bb8 11. c3

B) 7. — Qxc5 8. Qb5 Bd6
8. — g6?? 9. Bd4+

9. O-O Qd7?!

Why does not Black develop its
pieces instead by moving 9.— Qd7?

10. Be1 a6 11. Qxc6 bxc6 12. Bd4!
 c5 13. Ba4 Qb7 14. Qf4 Bb6 15.
 Qe5 Bd8 16. Bab1 g5 17. Qxd7
 Bxd7 18. Qe5! Bg8 19. Bg4 Bg6
20. b4!

Holler — Vaganian Bad Woris-
hofen 1991

8. h4

8. Qd4 Qf6 9. Qb5 Bc7 10. O-O
 Qd7 11. Qxc6 bxc6 12. f4 Qg7 13.
 Be1 O-O 14. Qxe6 Qae8! 15. Bd3
 Qg4 16. Qe2 e5 17. fxe5 Qxe5 18.

♘f3 ♙f5 19. ♚d2 ♜xe2 20. ♘xe2
♙e4+

Black played the game perfectly.
Kuyindzhi — Alburt USSR 1974

8. — ♙g7!?

8. — ♘f6 9. ♙b5 ♙g7

9. — ♙d7 10. h5

10. h5! gxf5

10. — ♘xf5 11. ♙e3! ♙d7?!

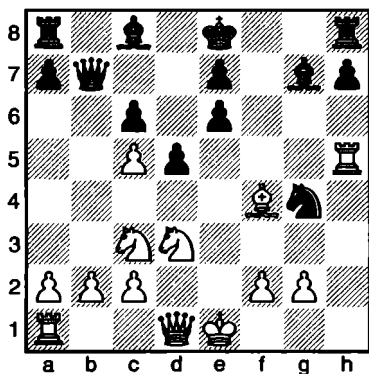
11. — 0-0 12. ♙xc6 bxc6 13.
♙d4↑

12. ♙xc6 bxc6 13. ♙d4 e5?!

13. — ♘f6 14. ♙e5! 0-0 15.
♚d4±

14. ♙xe5 ♘f6 15. ♚d4 ♚c8 16.
0-0-0 ♚a6 17. ♜del± Petronic—
Marinkovic Niksic 1997

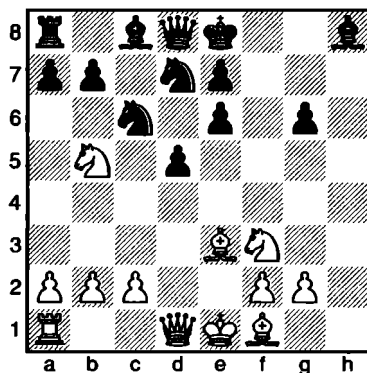
11. ♙xc6† bxc6 12. ♘e5 ♚c7 13.
♙f4 ♚b7 14. ♘d3 ♘g4!? 15. ♜xh5



15. f3 e5=

15. — e5=

9. h5 ♚a5 10. ♙d2 ♚xc5 11. hfg6
hfg6 12. ♜xh8† ♙xh8 13. ♘b5
♚b6 14. ♙e3 ♚d8



15. ♙f4!?

Vidéki

A) 15. c3 ♘f8 16. ♚b3 a6 17. ♘bd4
e5 18. ♘xc6 bxc6 19. 0-0-0 ♚c7
20. ♙b6 ♚b7 21. ♙c5 ♘e6†

Black's superior position is obvious.
Petronic;

B) 15. c4 ♘de5 16. ♘xe5

15. — ♚a5†

A draw is unavoidable.

A) 15. — ♘ce5?! 16. ♘xe5 ♙xe5

16. — ♘xe5 17. ♚e2±

17. ♙xe5 ♘xe5 18. ♚d4±;

B) 15. — e5? 16. ♚xd5±

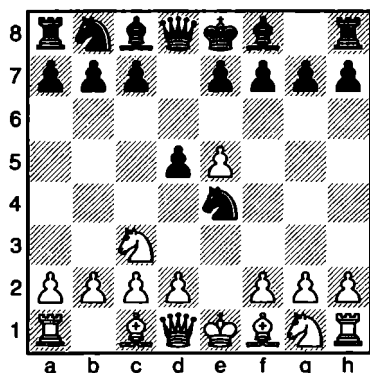
16. ♙d2 ♚b6 17. ♙e3=

A draw by move repetition.

1.6.3.1 — 2. ♖c3 d5 3. e5 ♖e4 4.

♙f3

1. e4 ♖f6 2. ♖c3 d5 3. e5 ♖e4



Since this move has been made for the first time it has not had too much progress (except for the line 4. ♖ce2 which is shown later). It does not have too many lines and theoretical background either, so it can be recommended to those who work out variations at home and like the new ideas and perhaps they want to add something to the variation themselves.

4. ♙f3?!

This move seems to be the most promising one.

A) 4. ♖xe4

It does not cause Black any troubles since the exchange of the e4 knight is more favourable for it.

4. — dxe4 5. d4 exd3 6. ♙xd3

6. ♙xd3 ♖c6 7. ♙e2?!

a) 7. ♖f3 ♙g4 8. h3 ♙xf3 9. ♙xf3 ♙d4 10. 0-0 ♙xe5 11. ♙f4 ♙f6;

b) 7. ♙f4 ♙d4?! 8. ♖e2 ♙xb2?! 9. 0-0

7. — ♖d4 8. ♙e4? ♙f5 9. ♙xb7 ♙xd3 10. cxd3 ♙b8 11. ♙e4 ♖c2† — Kuzmin — Sukhin USSR 1984

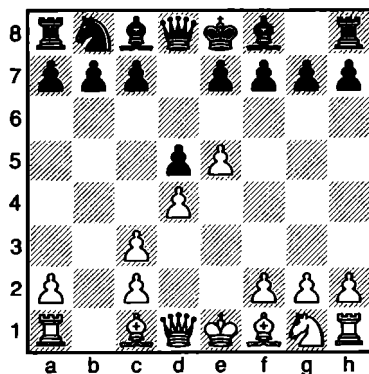
6. — ♙xd3 7. ♙xd3 ♖c6 8. ♙f4 g5

It is an aggressive attempt to increase the tension in the position.

8. — ♙e6 9. a3 ♙d5 10. f3 0-0-0=

9. ♙xg5 ♖xe5 10. ♙e4 ♙g7 11. 0-0-0 ♖c4 12. c3 ♖d6 13. ♙f3 h6 14. ♙f4 0-0 15. ♖e2 e5 16. ♙e3 ♙e6 17. ♙d5± Ardeleanu — Marasescu 1992;

B) 4. d4 ♖xc3 5. bxc3



It is the critical position in which

Black has to make a decision if it brings its c8 bishop out, which may get into trouble later, or similarly to the French Defence, it leaves it on c8 and begins an attack against the weakened white pawn chain without delay.

5. — f5

5. — e6 6. ♖d3 c5 7. f4

7. $2f3!?$

7. — ♖c6 8. ♗f3 ♔a5 9. ♕d2
♜a4 10. ♖e3 c4 11. ♖e2 ♖a3!
12. ♕c1?

12. ♖b1!?

12. — ♔a5+ Heidenfeld —
Hecht Nice 1974

6. ♖e2 e6 7. ♗g3 ♙g6 8. f4 ♖c6 9. ♜b1 ♗a5 10. ♙d3 ♜d7 11. 0-0 0-0-0 12. f5 exf5 13. ♗xf5 ♗c4 14. ♜f3±

**Pakkanen — Baburin Helsinki
1992:**

C) 4. f3 g4 5. h3 h5

It is risky a little although the move Bxf3 would also lead to White's benefit.

6. g4

6. e6 fxe6 7. g4 ♖xc3 8. bxc3 ♙f7
9. ♖e5∞

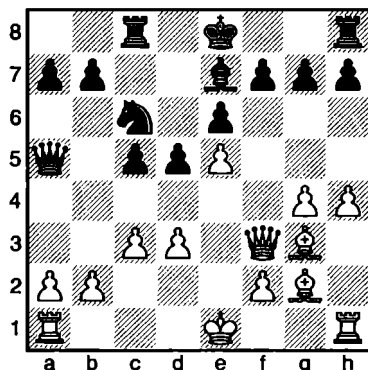
6. — ♖xc3

6. — ♘g6 7. h4

7. e6!?

7. — e6 8. xe4 xe4 9. d3

♠xf3 10. ♖xf3 c5 11. c3 ♜c6 12. ♠f4 ♠e7 13. ♠g3 ♖a5?! 14. ♠g2 ♜c8?



If ♔a5 had already happened, then Black must have proceeded on its way by moving 14. — d4.

14. — d4 15. 0-0 dxc3 16. bxc3
 ♔xc3 17. ♖ab1 ♕d8+

15. 0-0± Guidarelli — Krizsány
Nice 1997:



7. bxc3 ♖g6 8. d3 e6 9. ♖g2 c5
10. 0-0 ♜c6 11. ♔e2 ♕e7 12. ♘f4
♚a5=

Brito — Alburst Hastings 1981;

D) 4. g3 ♖xc3 5. dxc3 ♖c6 6. f4 ♙f5 7. ♖f3 e6 8. ♙e3 ♖a5 9. ♖f2 c5 10. b4 ♖c6 11. ♙b1 d4

Blatny — Bagirov USSR 1984

4. — ♖xc3

4. — c6!? 5. b5

5. dxc3

A) 5. ♖xc3 d4=;

B) 5. bxc3 e6

5. — c5!?

6. ♖g3 c5 7. ♜f3 ♖a5 8. c4 ♜c6 9. ♙e2 ♙d7 10. cxd5 exd5 11. 0-0 0-0-0=

Schumacher — Kluss Porz 1985

5. — c6

A) 5. — g6 6. ♙d3

6. ♙f4 ♙g7 7. h4 h5∞ Doltnadian — Donchev Bulgaria 1978

6. — ♜c6 7. ♖e2 ♙g7 8. f4 0-0 9. ♜f3;

B) 5. — c5!N 6. ♙f4

6. ♙b5† ♜c6! 7. c4 e6∞

6. — ♙f5 7. 0-0-0 e6 8. ♜e2?! ♜c6 9. h4?

It weakens the light squares and so it stops White's king side attack for a long time. 9. ♜b1!?

9. — h5! 10. ♜b1 ♖a5 11. ♜d2 c4!

With the plan of the further moves b5 and b4.

12. ♜g3

12. ♜d4 ♜xd4 13. ♜xd4 ♙c5 14. ♜d2 b5-+

12. — ♙g6 13. ♖dl

With further ♙e2.

13. — b5 14. a3

14. ♙e2 b4 15. cxb4 ♜xb4 16. a3 c3!-+

14. — b4! 15. axb4 ♙xb4! 16. ♙xc4!

16. cxb4 ♜xb4 17. ♜d4 c3 18. ♜xb4 ♖xb4 19. ♙cl ♜b8-+

16. — dxc4 17. ♖f3 0-0!-+

Zakhariev — Stefanopoulos Hania 1996

6. ♙f4

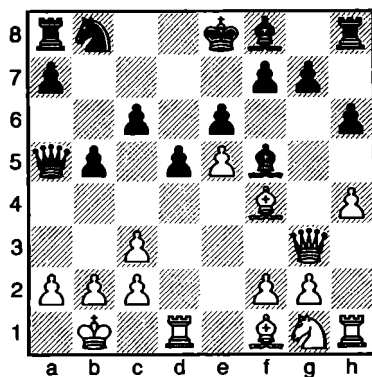
6. ♙d2

This is the more cautious move which hinder the c8 bishop to be placed properly.

6. — ♙f5

6. — g6 7. 0-0-0 ♙g7 8. h4 h5 9. ♖e3 ♖b6 10. ♖d2 ♙f5=

7. 0-0-0 e6 8. ♖g3 h6 9. h4 ♖a5 10. ♜b1 b5!



Black has an obvious plan. It ad-

vances its pawns on the queen side by making the moves b5 and c5, then develops the b8 knight and starts an ultimate attack against the white king by opening the b- or c-file.

11. d3 c5 12. h5 d6

12. — c6

13. d4 e7?! 14. g4! b4 15. d2 c4 16. g6! b8

16. — fxg6 17. xe6† d8 18. g5†!+

With further d5

17. h3

It makes an attempt to attack the opponent's king (along the f-file) and to defend its own king (along the 3rd rank) at the same time.

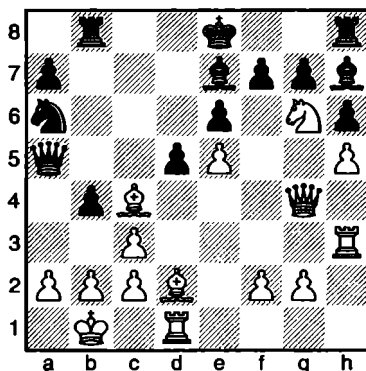
17. xh8? b3-+

17. — e7?

It takes no notice of the opponent's magnificent tactical opportunities.

17. — bxc3 18. xc3 b4 19. d4 g8

18. xc4!!



18. — dxc4

18. — fxg6!? 19. xe6 b6 20. xd5 e8 21. e6 d5 Blatny, Ftacnik

19. xc4 c5?!

A) 19. — fxg6? 20. c6+ f7 21. f3†+;

B) 19. — xg6!?

Black might have attached hopes to its position in this way.

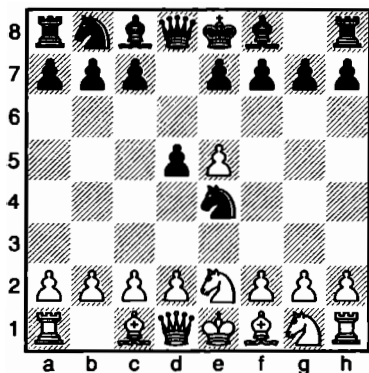
20. c6† f8 21. hxg6 b5 22. f3 e8!?± Blatny, Ftacnik

20. xc5±

Adams — Agdestein 1994

1.6.3.2 — 2. ♖c3 d5 3. e5 ♗e4 4. ♗ce2

1. e4 ♗f6 2. ♖c3 d5 3. e5 ♗e4 4. ♗ce2



White intends to exploit the position of the knight penetrated into the centre. It takes a lot of troubles to Black to save its minor pieces wandering far away which can be tried by three different ways.

4. — d4

A) 4. — f6

It is a quite old move. The essence of Black's system is that it tries to attack the white pawn centre which will be formed soon and gives its e4 knight the opportunity to withdraw through the g5 point.

5. d3

5. ♗f3 ♗c6

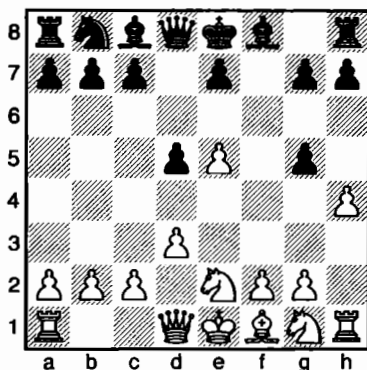
5. — fxe5!?

6. d3 ♗c5 7. d4 ♗e4∞

5. — ♗c5

It is the other way to escape.

5. — ♗g5 6. ♖xg5 fxg5 Black got the advantage of the bishop pair, but its position is inferior taking its weaknesses on the king side into account. 7. h4



White puts its finger on the problems in Black's position. 7. — g4 It closes the position, but in fact it does not help either.

7. — gxh4 8. ♗f4±

8. ♗f4 g6 9. d4 c5?! 10. dxc5 ♗c6 11. ♖xd5 ♖a5† 12. c3 ♖h6 13. g3 ♖f5 14. ♖c4 ♖f8 15. b4!± Baker — Burgess Bristol 1991

6. d4! ♗e6?!

6. — ♗e4 7. f3 ♗g5 8. ♖xg5 fxg5 9. ♖d3±

7. f4± c5?!

By exploding the centre Black wants to decrease the pressure weighing heavily on it.

7. — f5 8. g4!±

8. f5! ♘xd4 9. ♘xd4 cxd4 10. e6! g6 11. ♚f3 ♖a5†

11. — ♘c6 12. ♙d3 ♗d6 13. 0-0±

12. ♘f2 gxf5 13. ♘xd4 ♖b6 14. ♙b5† ♘d8

14. — ♘c6 15. ♙e3 f4? 16. ♖h5† ♘d8 17. ♘xc6†—

15. ♗e1 ♘c6 16. ♙xc6 bxc6 17. ♙e3! c5 18. ♚b3 ♖xe6

18. — d4 19. ♘xc5! ♖xc5 20. ♙xd4 with further 21. ♙xf6†

19. c4!±

Tolnai — Károlyi Kecskemét 1990;

B) 4. — ♘c5

Black does not want to break the pawn structure, thus its knight being in a tight corner has to withdraw of its own accord.

5. d4 ♘e6 6. f4 g6 7. ♘f3 c5

7. — ♘g7 8. g3 ♙g4 9. ♙g2 e6 10. ♙e3 c5 11. c3 ♘f5 12. ♗d2 ♖b6 13. 0-0 ♘c6 14. ♙f2 h5 15. h3± Kislov — Grünberg 1991

8. c3 c4?!

Having a closed position it is easier to get away with it if you lose one or two tempos, but now an error has crept into Black's calculations.

8. — ♘c6 9. ♙e3 f6 10. dxc5 fxe5 11. fxe5 ♙g7 12. ♖b3?!

12. ♘ed4±

12. — ♘a5∞ Meister — Kengis Belgorod 1989

9. g4!N

White would like to enforce its positional and space advantages.

9. — ♘g7 10. h3 h5 11. ♗g1 hxg4 12. hxg4 ♙d7?! 13. b3! ♖c8 14. bxc4 dxc4

14. — ♙xg4 15. ♘d2! ♙e6 16. ♙g2 ♗d7 17. ♖b3± Tseitlin, Mi

15. f5!! gxf5 16. g5 ♘a6

16. — e6 17. g6

17. g6 fxg6 18. ♘f4±

Tseitlin, Mi — Bredemeier 1995

5. c3

5. ♘f3

It often occurs that this is a change of moves only and the basic position come into being after the moves 5. c3 ♘c6 6. ♘f3. It is found good for White, but the opportunities of both sides have not entirely been cleared up yet.

5. — ♘c6 6. c3!? ♙g4

6. — dxc3 7. bxc3± with the plan of further d4

7. cxd4 ♙xf3 8. gxf3 ♘g5 9. ♙g2 ♘e6

9. — ♘xd4? 10. ♖a4† ♘c6 11.

f4—

10. f4 ♖exd4 11. ♜a4! b5

11. — ♜d7 12. ♖xd4 ♖xd4 13. ♜xd7 ♜xd7 14. ♙xb7 ♚b8 15. ♙e4 f5! By moving the well-placed e4 bishop from its place and blocking the f4 pawn on a dark square it creates good counterchances. 16. ♙d3?! g6 17. b3 ♙h6 18. ♙b2 c5 19. ♚c1 ♜hc8 ♞ Forgács — Fekete Hungary 1998

12. ♜xb5! ♜d7

12. — ♖xb5 13. ♙xc6 ♜d7 14. ♙xd7 ♜xd7 15. a4!—

13. ♖xd4 ♖xd4 14. ♜xd7 ♜xd7 15. ♙xa8 ♖c2 ♜d1 ♖xa1 17. ♙e4 1—0

Stjagkin — Levin St. Petersburg 1992

5. — ♖c6

5. — dxc3

It might be played in a quick game or on a rapid tournament, since gaining the knight will result in a failure. Thus someone not knowing this line can fall into into a trap easily in the case of a short time to think.

6. ♜a4 ♜

6. bxc3 ♖c5 7. d4 ♖ca6 8. ♖f4 e6 9. ♖f3 c5 10. ♙d3 cxd4 11. cxd4 ♙d7 12. 0—0 ♖b4 13. ♙e4 ♙c6— Black has a quite bearable posi—

tion compared to its early knight manoeuvre. Niemann — Bagirov 1993

6. — ♖d7 7. ♜xe4 ♖c5

And now Black has got a winning position.

6. ♖xd4

The move 6. ♖f3 leads to the line 5. ♖f3 ♖c6 6. c3 which has already been shown earlier.

6. cxd4 ♖g5 7. f4

It is regarded as the best continuation at the present.

A) 7. ♜a4 It insists on having the extra pawn. 7. — a6 8. f4 ♖e6 9. ♖f3 b5 10. ♜c2 ♙b7 11. ♜c3 g6 12. d3 ♙g7 13. ♙e3 0—0—;

B) 7. h4 ♖e6 8. ♖f3 ♖exd4—

7. — ♖e6 8. ♖f3 ♖exd4 9. ♖exd4 ♖xd4 10. ♜a4 ♖c6 11. ♙b5 ♙d7

11. — ♜d5 12. ♙c4! ♜e4 ♜f2 e6 14. d4 ♙d7 15. ♚e1—

12. e6!

It does not let Black get air.

12. f5?! a6! 13. e6 axb5 14. exd7 ♜xd7 15. ♜xb5 ♜c8—

12. — ♙xe6

12. — fxe6 13. ♜e4— Watson—Neil 1994

13. ♖e5 ♙d7 14. ♖xc6 bxc6 15. ♙xc6 e6 16. 0—0

16. b3! with the plan of further

♙b2±

16. — ♙e7 17. d4 ♚b8 18. f5 exf5
19. ♚xf5 f6?

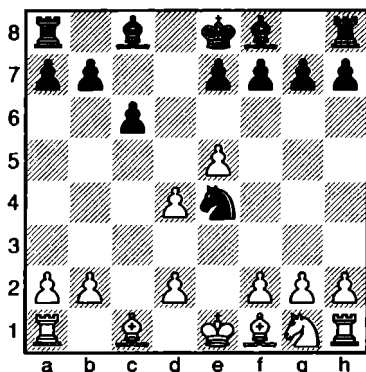
19. — 0-0! 20. ♙xd7 ♚b4 21.

♙c6 ♚b6=

20. ♚d5±

Nisipeanu — Bagirov Cuxhaven
1994

6. — ♘xd4 7. ♙a4† c6 8. ♙xd4
♙xd4 9. cxd4



In this opening, which became a middle game position without queens quickly, White, in spite of the extra pawn, has not got a considerable advantage because of its

worse pawn structure. This position can be played by both sides with good chances.

9. — ♘g5 10. ♙c4

10. ♙d3 ♘e6 11. ♘e2 g6 12. ♙e4
♘c7 13. b3 ♙h6 14. h4 ♙e6 15. h5
♚d8 16. ♙b2=

Hector — Anagnostou 1992

10. — ♙f5N

10. — ♘e6

It wants to give the c8 bishop a place on d5.

11. ♘e2 ♘c7 12. a3

A) 12. ♘c3 ♙f5 13. d5 b5 14.
♙b3 b4=;

B) 12. 0-0 ♙e6 13. d3 0-0-0 14.
f4 f5 15. ♙d2 ♙d5 16. ♚fc1 e6=

12. — ♙e6 13. d3 ♙d5=

11. ♘e2 ♘e6 12. d3 ♘c7 13. ♘g3
♙e6

13. — ♙g6 14. f4 e6 15. 0-0

With the plan of further f5±

14. ♙e3 ♙d5!±

Sorensen — Bagirov Berlin 1992

Chapter 2

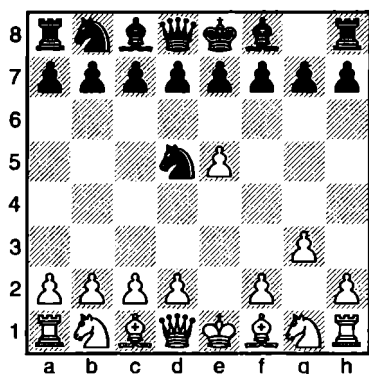
1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5

2.1 — 2. e5 ♘d5 3. g3

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5

We have arrived at the systems beginning with the move 2. e5 in which we are studying the lines first which are different from the main variations (3. g3; 3. ♘c3 or 3. c4).

3. g3



It is grandmaster Rozentalis's favourite move which considering its strategy is quite similar to the position which is formed by the moves 1. e4 c5 2. c3 ♘f6 3. e5 ♘d5 4. g3 in the 'c3 system' of the Sicilian Defence.

A) 3. ♘f3 d6 4. ♖c4

By moving 4. d4 you can turn into the main line as it usually happens.

4. — c6

4. — ♘b6 5. ♖b3 d5

5. — c5!? 6. a4 ♘c6 7. a5 c4!∞

6. d4 ♖g4 7. h3 ♖xf3

7. — ♖h5? 8. e6! fxe6 9. g4 ♖f7

10. ♘e5=

8. ♖xf3 e6 9. 0-0 c5 10. dxc5

White does not hold the tension in the centre any longer but sharpens the play instead. 10. — ♖xc5

10. — ♘d6d7 11. ♖f4 ♘c6 12.

♘c3 ♖xc5 13. ♖g3±

11. ♖g3 g6! 12. ♖h6 ♘c6 13. ♘c3

13. c3 ♘d7 14. ♖a4 a6 15. ♖xc6 bxc6 16. ♘d2 ♖f8!∞

13. — ♘d4! 14. ♖d3?!

a) 14. ♖ad1!? ♘f5 15. ♖f4 ♘xh6 16. ♘e4! White would make Black's situation easier by recapturing the knight. 16. — ♘f5 17. ♘xc5 ♖e7∞ Bagirov, V;

b) 14. ♖g5 ♘f5 15. ♖f4 ♖e7 16. ♖xe7 ♖e7 17. ♘b5 0-0= Bagirov, V

14. — f5! 15. b5† d7 16. a4 c7! Kijf — Bagirov 1989

5. d3 xc3 6. bxc3 d5

It promises an equal position for Black.

7. e2 g4 8. b1 c7 9. d4 e6 10. 0-0 d7 11. h3 xf3 12. xf3 0-0-0 13. d3 b6 14. e2 b8 15. g5 c8=

Speelman-Suba 1978;

B) 3. e4?!

By this move White pledges itself to attack the knight too early and gives Black the opportunity to build up a structure of an entirely different kind as it can be seen later.

3. — b6 4. b3 d5

Quite differently from the Alekhine Defence Black places its d-pawn on the d5 square in one move leaving the move d6 out, strengthens the e4 and c4 points and prevents White from getting a considerable space advantage.

4. — c5 5. d3 c6 6. f3 d5 7. exd6 exd6 8. 0-0 e7 9. c3 g4 10. d4 cxd4 11. cxd4 0-0 12. c3 f6 13. e3 c8 14. h3 h5 15. c2 g6= Ashley — Yermolin-sky 1993

5. d4 c6 6. c3 f5 7. e2 e6 8. 0-0 f6

Black wants to ease the tension in

the centre and insure the opportunity to play later at the same time.

9. exf6 xf6=

3. — d6

3. — c6 4. g2 g6 5. d4 g7 6. e2

Both Black and White chose an unusual structure.

6. — d6 7. exd6 xxd6 8. 0-0 0-0 9. c4 f6 10. bc3 f5 11. h3 h5 12. e1 a6 13. a3 ad8 14. f4 d7

The situation of the e2 knight is not enviable it would be placed much better on f3.

15. h2 c7 16. a4 a6 17. ad1 fe8 18. a5 e6 19. e3 c7=

Pribyl — Bazant 1996

4. exd6 cxd6

A) 4. — exd6

Black accomplishes a symmetrical pawn structure taking less risk, but its hopes for a win are diminished as well.

5. g2 f6 6. d4

a) 6. e2 e7 7. 0-0 0-0 8. h3 d5 9. f4 c6 10. d3 bd7 11. c4 dxc4 12. dxc4 c5 13. c3 xxd1 Black's aims are obvious. 14. xd1 e6 15. ce2 h6 16. b3 fxf4 17. xf4 f5 18. d4 h7= McDonald — Hetey 1996;

b) 6. f3 e7† Black's play is rather simple. 7. e2 c6 8. c3

♠a6= Disconzi da Silva — Lima
Brazil 1995

6. — d5

6. — ♖e7 7. c4 d5 8. c5 0-0 9.
♜e2 b6 10. cxb6 axb6 11. 0-0
♜e4 12. f3 ♜d6 13. ♜bc3 c6 14.
♙f4 ♚e8 15. b3 ♜d7 16. ♚d2
♜f8 17. ♚ae1= Rozentalis —
Miles 1997

7. ♜f3 ♙e7 8. 0-0 0-0 9. ♜e5 ♜bd7
10. ♜c3 c6 11. f4
Rozentalis — Apel 1994;

B) 4. — ♚xd6±

It leads to a difficult position which
cannot be judged by general princi-
ples. On the basis of the experiences
it can be pointed out that to bring the
queen into play early is favourable
for White.

5. ♙g2 c5N

5. — e5 6. ♜e2 ♜c6 7. 0-0 ♙g4
8. h3 ♙h5 9. ♜bc3 ♜xc3 10.
bxc3 ♚d8 11. ♚b1 b6 12. ♚b5 f6
13. f4 a6 14. fxe5 ♜xe5 15. ♚d5±
Rozentalis — Okuniewski 1997

6. ♜e2 ♜c6 7. 0-0 ♙g4 8. h3 ♙h5
9. ♜bc3 ♜xc3 10. bxc3 e5!?

It is too aggressive, all is that comes
to White's mill.

11. f4! exf4 12. g4 f3! 13. ♙xf3 ♙g6
14. d4 ♙e7? 15. ♙f4 ♚d7 16. d5
♜a5 17. d6 ♙d8

17. — ♙h4 18. ♚d5

18. ♙g3!±

Certic — Varga,Z Budapest 1995

5. ♙g2 ♜f6

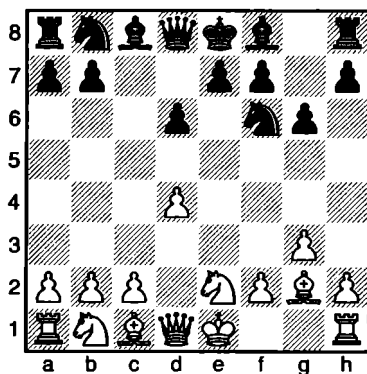
The knight is needed much more on
the king side.

5. — ♜b6?! 6. a4 ♜c6 7. a5 ♜d7 8.
a6 ♚b6=

6. d4

6. b3 g6 7. ♙b2 ♙g7 8. ♜e2 0-0=

6. — g6 7. ♜e2



7. c4 ♙g7 8. ♜c3 0-0 9. ♜ge2 ♜c6
10. 0-0 ♙g4

10. — a6 11. b3 ♚b8 12. h3 ♙d7
13. d5 ♜a5

13. — ♜a7 14. ♙e3 b6 15. a4±

14. ♜d4?! ♚c8 It is just a simple
motif that the queen threatens on
two places at the same time. 15.
♜h2 b5 16. ♚b1 bxc4 17. b4 ♜b7
18. ♙e3 ♜d8 19. ♚d2 e5!±

Rozentalis — Hjartarson 1994;

11. ♖e3 ♜d7 12. f3 ♖h3 13. d5 ♘e5
14. b3±

Rozentalis — Yermolinsky 1993

7. — ♖g7 8. 0-0 d5

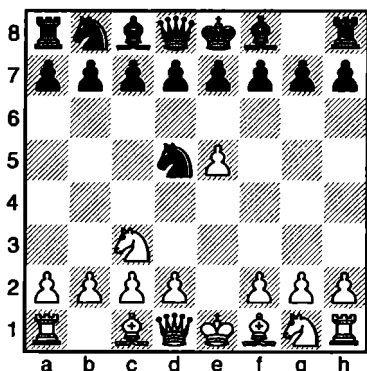
Before White would get space by moving d5.

9. h3 0-0 10. ♘d2 ♘c6 11. c3 e5∞

Rozentalis-Horvath Debrecen 1992

2.2.1 — 2. e5 ♘d5 3. ♘c3 ♘b6

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5 3. ♘c3



White would like to drive away the black knight from the centre without moving one of its pawns. The exchange on c3, of course, would increase White's chances because of its advantage in the advance. Among from the other possible moves 3. — e6; 3. — c6 or 3. —

♘b6 the line beginning with 3. — e6 gives the sides an equal play, while Black takes a considerable risk by moving 3. — ♘b6.

3. — ♘b6

Black avoids the exchange giving White another tempo by this, but the latter can even get the win exploiting its greater chances in the positions with an assymetric pawn structure which come into being in this way.

A) 3. — e6

This is the most evident move that strengthens the d5 point which is the key of Black's situation.

4. ♘f3

4. ♘xd5?! White wastes two moves to exchange the d5 knight.

4. — exd5 5. d4 d6 6. ♘f3 ♘c6 7. ♖f4

7. ♖g5 ♖e7 8. ♖xe7 ♜xe7 9. ♖b5 ♖g4=

7. — dxe5 8. dxe5 ♖c5 9. ♜d2 ♘e7 10. 0-0-0 c6 11. ♖e3 ♜b6 12. ♖xc5 ♜xc5 13. ♖d3 h6

13. — ♖g4 14. ♜f4

14. ♜he1 ♖e6 15. ♜b1 0-0-0 16. c3± White stands better a little because of its knight appearing on the d4 square. Byrne — Jansson Skopje 1972

4. — d6 5. d4 dxe5 6. ♘xe5 ♘xc3 7.

bxc3 ♘d7 8. ♖f4 ♖e7 9. ♖d3 ♘xe5
10. ♖xe5 ♖f6

The game is going on in a rather customary way; Black is striving for the exchange of the minor pieces and White has not got much to do against it.

11. ♖e2 ♖d7 12. 0-0 ♖c6 13. f4 0-0 14. ♖xf6=

Andersson — Kraidman Siegen 1970;

B) 3. — c6

It is an old continuation, which is played very seldom nowadays and it usually leads to White's advantage.

4. d4

4. ♖c4 ♘xc3 5. dxc3 d5 6. ♖d3 c5 7. ♖f4 ♘c6 8. ♖d2 ♖g4?!

8. — ♖e6!? 9. ♘f3 h6 10. h4 ♖d7 11. 0-0-0 0-0-0 12. ♖he1 g6 Kislov

9. h3 ♖h5 10. g4 ♖g6 11. e6 Black has a very awkward situation. 11. — ♖c8 12. exf7 ♖xf7 13. 0-0-0 c4 14. ♖f1 b5 15. ♖g2 ♖a6 16. ♖xd5 0-0-0 17. ♖xf7 ♖xd2 18. ♖e6 ♖b7 19. ♖xd2 White can keep the all black forces at a bay by its bishop pair and rook. 19. — ♘b8 20. ♖d5 ♖c8 21. ♘f3± Kislov — Tsarev Moscow 1989

4. — d6 5. ♘xd5

5. f4 ♖f5 6. ♘xd5 cxd5 7. ♘f3 ♘c6 8. ♖d3 ♖xd3 9. ♖xd3± Zaitsev — Westerinen Moscow 1982

5. — cxd5 6. exd6 ♖xd6

Considering the structure of this position it looks like the exchange variation of the Caro-Kan Defence.

7. ♖d3 g6 8. c3 ♖g7 9. ♖f3?!

It seems to be unnatural.

9. — f6 10. ♖g3 ♖xg3 11. hxg3 0-0 12. ♖h6 ♘c6 13. ♘e2 e5 14. ♖xg7 ♖xg7=

Richmond — Westerinen Debrecen 1992

4. d4

A) 4. ♘f3 d6 5. exd6 cxd6 6. d4 g6 7. a4 a5 8. ♖g5 ♖g7 9. ♖d2 h6 10. ♖e3 ♖g4?!

Knowing the subsequent events Black should have made the move 10. — ♘c6.

11. ♖b5 ♘d8d7 12. ♘g1!? h5

Nothing good will come out of the unpleasant situation of the g4 bishop for Black.

13. h3 ♖f5 14. ♘ge2 ♖c8 15. b3 0-0 16. g4 hxg4 17. hxg4 ♖xg4 18. ♖h6 ♖h8 19. ♖xf8 ♘xf8 20. 0-0-0 ♖g7±

Kakabadze — Krizsany Budapest 1992;

B) 4. a4

White does not give the knight a moment's peace.

4. — d6 5. a5 ♘d6 6. exd6 cxd6 7. d4 g6 8. ♙e3 ♙g7 9. ♖d2 ♘c6 10. d5 ♘ce5 11. h3±

With White's positional and space advantage. Men — Shabalov Pittsburgh 1994

4. — d6

4. — d5 5. a4 e6

Black is in a difficult situation taking its stuck c8 bishop into account.

6. ♖g4 ♘c6 7. ♘f3 ♘b4 8. ♙g5 ♖d7 9. ♚c1 a6 10. b3 ♖c6 11. ♙d2 ♘d7 12. ♙e2 ♖b6 13. ♘g5?

Being impatient does not end in good. 13. 0-0±

13. — h6 14. a5 ♖xa5 15. ♘xf7 ♘xf7 16. ♖f4† ♘e8 17. ♙h5† ♘d8 18. ♖f7†

Bjornsson — Westerinen 1997

5. exd6

A) 5. f4 dxe5 6. fxe5 ♙f5 7. ♙d3 ♙xd3

It equalizes the game.

8. ♖xd3 e6 9. ♙e3 ♘c6=; 5. ♘f3 g6 6. h3 ♙g7 7. ♙f4 0-0 8. ♙d3 ♘c6 9. 0-0 dxe5 10. dxe5 ♙e6=

With mutual chances. Duckstein — Wach 1991;

B) 5. ♙f4 g6 6. a4

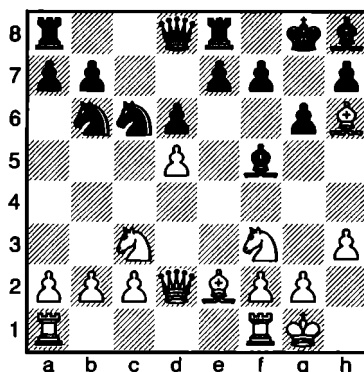
6. ♙d3?! ♙g7 7. ♖e2 ♘c6 8. ♘f3 ♙g4 9. ♙b5 White does not really know where it should place its pieces to. 9. — 0-0 10. ♙xc6 bxc6 11. h3 ♙e6 12. b3 a5 13. a4 ♘d5± Black has the opportunity of taking the initiative. Kalshian — Vaganian Kirokavan 1978

6. — ♙g7 7. a5 ♘d6 7 8. ♘f3 0-0 9. ♙b5 dxe5 10. dxe5 ♘c5 11. ♖e2 c6 12. ♙c4 ♙g4 13. 0-0 ♖c8± Lenart — Varga, Z 1996

5. — cxd6 6. h3 g6 7. ♘f3 ♙g7 8. ♙g5 0-0 9. ♖d2 ♙e8

It averts ♙h6, which now can be answered by ♙h8.

10. ♙e2 ♘c6 11. 0-0 ♙f5 12. ♙h6 ♙h8 13. d5?!



This move leads to a sharp struggle in which Black's minor pieces have good chances to play.

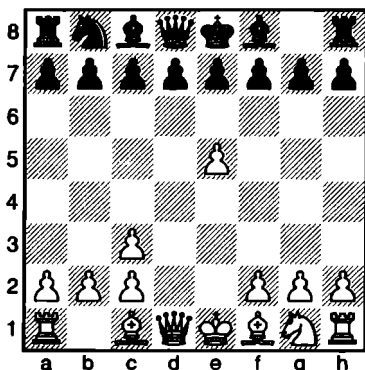
13. ♖fe1!?

13. — ♖a5 14. ♜d4 ♜ac4 15. ♜f4
♜d7 16. b3 ♜a3

Baum — Krizsány Kecskemét 1991

2.2.2 — 2. e5 ♜d5 3. ♜c3 ♜xc3 4.
dxc3

1. e4 ♜f6 2. e5 ♜d5 3. ♜c3 ♜xc3 4.
dxc3



We are already at the fourth move of this line and Black only moved with one of its knight which is captured, in addition. It is true that White did not develop its pieces either during this time but open ways for them to play immediately. If it chooses the castle to the queen side its rook gets to an open file at once. On the basis of these facts and the experiences of the following analyses it can be asserted that White's chances are

better although there are not straight ways to the winning positions.

4. — d6

Black attacks White's passed pawn so as to decrease the pressure weighing heavily on it by forcing an exchange or exchanges on the e5 point.

A) 4. — d5

It is the other important alternative but White's positional benefit is obvious in this case as well.

5. ♜d3

5. f4 c5 6. ♜e3 e6 7. ♜f3 ♜c6 8.
♜d3 ♜e7 9. 0-0±

5. — c5 6. f4

6. ♜f4?! Placing the pawn on the f4 square seems to be better for it gives White the chance of the further advance along the e-file.
6. — ♜c6 7. ♜f3 ♜g4 8. h3 ♜xf3
9. ♜xf3 e6= Platonov — Palatnik
Kiev 1978

6. — ♜c6 7. ♜f3 ♜g4 8. h3 ♜xf3 9.
♜xf3 e6 10. ♜g3 g6 11. ♜e3 c4 12.
♜e2 ♜e7 13. ♜f2 ♜f5

Otherwise White can continue by the move 14. g4 which causes serious problems to Black.

14. ♜xa7±

Nikolic — Orev Kislovodsk 1968;

B) 4. — ♜c6

Black chooses a less elastic setup.

5. ♘f3 e6 6. ♙f4 ♙e7 7. ♙d3 d6 8. ♚e2 f5 9. exf6?

It gives up the centre. 9. 0-0-0!?

9. — ♙xf6 10. 0-0-0 ♚e7

Rufenacht — Kradolfer Switzerland
1984

5. ♙c4

A) 5. ♙f4

This move is less effective than ♙c4.

5. — g6

5. — ♘c6 6. ♘f3 dxe5 It puts an end to the tension in the centre which was so unpleasant for Black. 7. ♚xd8 ♘xd8 8. ♘xe5 c6 9. 0-0-0 f6 10. ♘c4 ♘f7 11. ♙g3 e5 12. ♘d2?! White realises a bad plan (12. ♙d3!?). 12. — g6 13. ♙c4 ♘d6 14. ♙b3 ♙h6 15. f3 ♙f5 16. ♖b1 0-0-0 17. ♙f2 ♖c7 18. g4 ♙c8 19. h3 ♙f4 20. c4 ♘f7 Filipowicz — Chekhov Warsaw 1990;

6. ♚e2 ♙g7 7. 0-0-0 0-0 8. h4 ♘c6 9. exd6 cxd6 10. h5 ♚a5 11. hxg6 hxg6 12. a3 ♙e6 13. g3

Filipowicz — Jansa Zinnowitz 1971;

B) 5. ♘f3

It is not a too dangerous move either.

5. — dxe5

Having the queens this position would cause much more troubles to Black.

5. — ♘c6 6. ♙b5

6. exd6 ♚xd6=

6. — ♙d7 7. ♚e2 White can trust in the tactical complications.

7. ♙f4 dxe5 8. ♙xc6 ♙xc6 9. ♙xe5 ♚xd1 ♘xf3 11. gxf3 c6

7. — a6 8. ♙xc6 ♙xc6 9. ♙f4 e6 10. 0-0-0 After this a double-edged fight begins. 10. — ♙e7

10. — ♙xf3 11. ♚xf3 d5 12. c4 c6= Blatny, P

11. exd6 cxd6 12. h4 0-0 13. ♖b1 ♙c8 14. ♙g5 Seferian — Nesterov 1994

6. ♚xd8 ♖xd8 7. ♘xe5 ♖e8

By choosing this plain line the position can be regarded as an equal one.

8. ♙e3

8. ♘c4 f6 9. ♙d3 ♘c6 10. ♙f4 e5 11. ♙g3 ♙e6 12. f4 e4 13. ♙e2 f5 14. 0-0-0 ♙e7 15. ♘e3 ♙d8 16. ♙f2 ♚xd1 ♘xd1 ♙d6 18. g3 g6= Bitman — Freisler 1992

8. — ♘d7 9. ♘f3 e5 10. 0-0-0 f6 11. ♘d2 ♙c5=

Listengarten — Bagirov USSR 1974

5. — e6

A) 5. — c6 6. d3 dxe5 7. $\text{Wxd8}\dagger$

White does not avoid the exchanges, but by making the position simpler it can only count on getting a draw.

7. $\text{We2}\text{?!}$ Black has well-founded hopes to beat the attack off and keep its extra pawn. 7. — f6 8. h6

8. h4 g6 9. f4 exf4 10. xf4 e5 11. e3 d6 12. O-O We7 13. d5 $\text{d8}\dagger$ *Parkanyi — Foga-rasi Zalakaros 1991*

8. — e6 9. d1 We7 10. e3 Wf7 11. h4 There is only one way for White to open the position. 11. — g6 12. O-O d6 13. f4 exf4 14. xf4 xf4 15. xf4 O-O= *McDonald — Sutter Zug 1991*

7. — xd8 8. xe5 f6

8. — e6 9. e3 g6 10. $\text{b5}\dagger$ c6 11. e2 g7 12. d3 c4 13. d4 e6 14. xg7 dxc7 15. O-O-O O-O-O= *Kakabadze — Sergeev Moscow 1991*

9. f3 e5 10. e3 e6 11. xe6 xe6 12. d1 d6 13. O-O O-O= *Macs — Niemand 1993;*

B) 5. — c6 6. f4 d5

Black has the same strategic plan as in the case of 4. — d5 .

7. d3 g6 8. h4 g7

8. — h5? 9. $\text{d3}\pm$

9. We2

9. h5 Wc7 10. We2 d7 11. f3 c5=

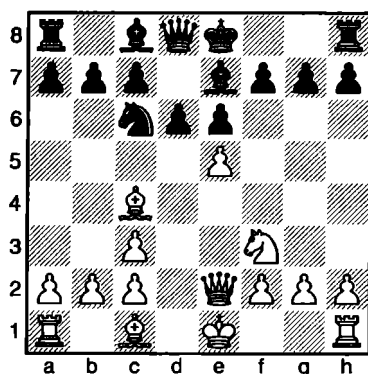
9. — a6 10. h5

To capture the knight on a6 is good for Black.

10. — c5 11. O-O-O $\text{xd3}\dagger$ 12. xd3 Wa5 13. a3 f5 14. d2 gxh5 15. Wxh5 g6 16. $\text{Wh4}\pm$

Hübner — Hammer Luzern 1978

6. f3 c6 7. We2 e7



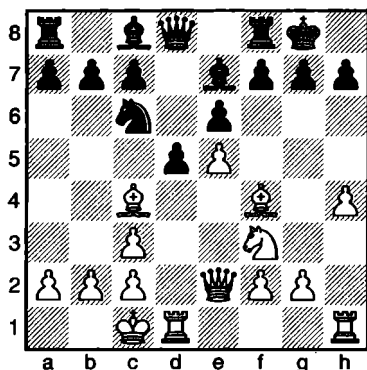
7. — dxe5

It leads to the simplifications which are advantageous for White.

8. xe5 xe5 9. Wxe5 Wd6 10. We2 d7 11. O-O c5 12. g5 Wc7 13. f1 d6 14. Wh5 O-O 15. $\text{e4}\pm$

Herzog — Bilek Baden Baden 1980

8. ♙f4 0-0 9. 0-0-0 d5 10. h4



White is striving to sharpen the play.

10. — f6 11. ♙d3 ♙xe5 12. ♙g3 h6
13. ♘xe5 ♘xe5 14. ♙xe5 ♙xh4 15.
f4 ♙f6 16. ♖g4±

Cvetkovic — Marangunic Yugoslav-
lavia 1970

2.2.3 — 2. e5 ♘d5 3. ♘c3 ♘xc3 4.
bxc3

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5 3. ♘c3 ♘xc3 4.
bxc3

White's aim of recapturing the knight by the b-pawn is not to surrender the centre to Black, even it tries to reinforce it by bringing in another pawn. In these line there is a lot of finesse thus playing them either White or Black you need the

ability of right appreciation of the positions and knowing the laws of tactics.

4. — d6

White has a plan to take control over the centre and then start an attack by its pieces on the king side. Black tries to equalize this advantage in the centre in time by moving d6.

A) 4. — d5

At present White can choose between several continuations.

5. ♙a3

White occupies the very important a3-f8 diagonal, since the exchanging the bishops moving along dark squares is for White's benefit.

a) 5. f4 By putting the move d4 off White can possibly get the chance to attack by c4, but it does not cause difficult problems to Black. 5. — c5 6. ♘f3 ♘c6 7. ♙e2 ♙g4

7. — e6 8. d4 ♙e7 9. 0-0 ♙d7
10. ♘h1 ♖c7 11. c4 dxc4 12. d5
exd5 13. ♖xd5 ♙e6 14. ♖e4
0-0-0 15. ♙xc4 ♘d4 16. ♙xe6f
fxe6 Zotkin — Safarov Moscow
1984

8. ♖b1 ♖b8 9. 0-0 e6 10. c4 dxc4
11. h3 ♙h5?! The simple move
♙xf3 deserves paying more
attention.

11. — exf3 12. exf3 Wd7 13. We2 b5 14. e4 d4 15. Wf2 e7 16. c3 c6 17. Wf3 d8 18. Wd1 Wc7 19. d3 cxd3 20. Wxd3 c4 21. Wf3 0-0 22. e3 Duckstein — Holzl Austria 1989

12. g4 A difficult position came into being with mutual chances. 12. — g6 13. exc4 h5 14. d3 hxc4 15. hxc4 d4 16. c3 exf3 † 17. Wxf3 Wb4 18. Wb2 Upton — Dunworth Swansea 1987;

b) 5. d4 White would like to keep the centre closed and attach hopes to the king side attack. 5. — c5 6. f3 c6 7. Wb1

7. d3 g4 8. h3 exf3 9. Wxf3 e6 10. Wb1 Wc7

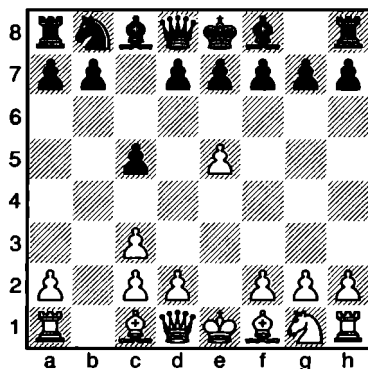
7. — c4 8. g3 Wc7 9. g2 g4 10. h3 exf3 11. Wxf3 e6 12. 0-0 0-0 13. h4 h5 14. g5 d7 15. a4 e7 16. Wxf7 exg5 17. Wxe6 d8 18. Wf5 d2 19. h3 Wh6 20. Wfd1 exc3 21. Wf3 Arkell — Bryson Edinburgh 1988;

5. — d7

5. — f5 6. f3 d7 7. d4 e6 8. exf8 exf8 9. Wb1 Tal — Eversole Chicago 1988

6. f3 b6 7. d4 g4 8. h3 exf3 9. Wxf3 Wd7 10. Wb1 e6 11. exf8 exf8 12. d3 g8 13. 0-0 Zaitsev — Laketic 1992;

B) 4. — c5



It begins the fight against the d4 square of great importance.

5. f4 c6

5. — b6?! 6. f3 b7 7. d4 e6 8. d3 g6 Black chooses a disadvantageous setup. 9. 0-0 d6 10. b5 † c6 11. exc6 † xc6 12. d5! exd5 13. g5 e7 14. f5 dxe5 15. fxg6 xg6 16. exf7 Vorotnikov — Yermolinski USSR 1978

6. d4!? d5 7. f3 g4

7. — f5 8. d3 xd3 9. Wxd3 ! With the plan of further 10. f5 or 10. 0-0 Yudasin, L

8. e2 e6

8. — a5 ?! 9. 0-0! Wxc3 10. d2 a3 11. Wb1 ! With dangerous threats.

9. 0-0 e7 10. h3 h5

10. — ♙f5 11. ♙d3!

11. ♖b1! ♗c7 12. ♙e3

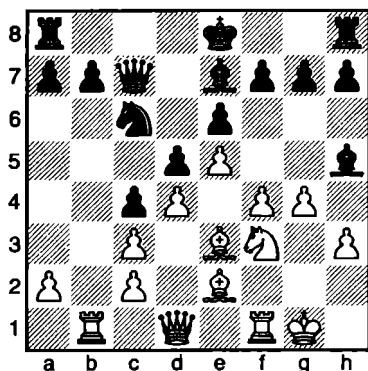
12. a4 ♙xf3 13. ♙xf3 With further 13. — cxd4 14. cxd4 ♘xd4

15. ♗xd4 ♙c5 Yudasin,L

12. — c4!?

12. — cxd4 13. cxd4 ♘b4? 14. c3! and when it is going on by 14. — ♗xc3? then 15. ♗a4† with further ♙d2+.

13. g4!



White has the advantage in all lines.

13. — ♙g6 14. ♘e1! f6?! 15. f5! ♙f7

15. — exf5? 16. gxf5 ♙f7 17. e6±

16. exf6 gxf6?! 17. fxe6 ♙xe6 18. ♘g2! 0-0-0

18. — h5 19. gxh5 with the plan of the further move ♙g4±

19. ♘f4 ♙f7 20. ♙f3 ♗a5 21. ♗d2 ♘b8 22. ♘h1 ♘a8 23. ♙f2! ♗he8!? 24. ♙g2! a6 25. ♙g3!±

Yudasin — Ehlvest Biel 1993;

C) 4. — b6?! 5. ♗f3! ♘c6 6. e6!→

The awkward situation of the black king and White's active position are enough compensation for the sacrificed pawn.

5. f4

5. ♘f3

It is a less energetic move but White chances seem to be better a little this time as well.

5. — ♙f5?

5. — dxe5 If White is not cautious the position can become simpler quickly. 6. ♘xe5 ♘d7 7. ♘f3 e6 8. d4 b6? It is an inaccurate move. (8. — c5) 9. ♙b5! ♙d6

9. — ♙b7 10. ♘e5

10. ♙g5 f6 11. ♙d2 ♙b7 12. ♗e2 ♗e7 13. 0-0 a6?!

13. — 0-0-0 14. a4 with further 15. ♙a6→

14. ♙d3 e5?! 15. ♗ae1 0-0 16. ♘h4 White has already have a decisive positional advantage. 16. — ♗f7

16. — g6 17. ♙h6 ♗fe8 18. ♗g4±

17. ♖g4 e4 18. ♜f5! ♖g6 19. ♙c4†!

19. ♖xg6 hxg6 20. ♜xd6 cxd6
21. ♙xe4 ♙xe4 22. ♚xe4±

19. — ♜h8 20. ♖xg6 hxg6 21. ♚e3! Hausner — Pribyl 1993

6. ♜d4 ♙c8 7. exd6 cxd6 8. ♖f3 a6
9. ♙c4 e6 10. 0-0 ♖f6 11. ♚e1

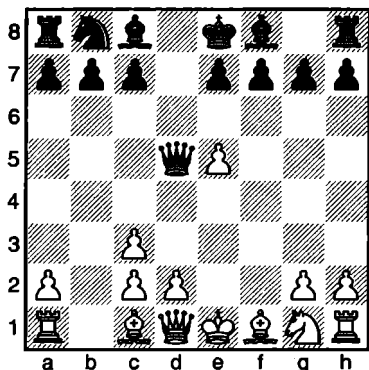
11. ♖xf6 gxf6± With a slightly advantageous position.

11. — ♖xf3 12. ♜xf3 ♙e7 13. a4 d5=

Beblik — Sperr 1988

5. — ♜c6

A) 5. — dxe5 6. fxe5 ♖d5



It is an interesting line by bringing the queen into play early.

6. — c5 7. ♜f3 ♜c6 8. ♙e2 ♙g4
9. 0-0 ≡

7. d4 c5 8. ♜f3 ♜c6 9. ♙e2 ♙g4 10. 0-0 cxd4 11. cxd4 e6 12. ♚b1 ♖d7 13. ♜g5 ♙xe2 14. ♖xe2 ♙e7 15. c3 ♙xg5 16. ♙xg5 h6 17. ♙c1

The bishop plays a more important role on the a3–f8 diagonal.

17. — ♜e7 18. ♖f3 ♜d5 19. c4 ♜b6 20. c5 ♜d5 21. c6 bxc6 22. ♙a3±

White has sacrificed a pawn and got the opportunity of the attack against the black king stuck in the middle. Tal — Podgaets USSR 1970;

B) 5. — g6

Black intends to put further pressure on the centre by this bishop from the g7 square.

6. ♜f3 ♙g7 7. d4 0-0 8. ♙d3

8. ♙c4 ♜c6 9. 0-0 ♜a5 10. ♙d3 c5 11. ♖e2 b6=

8. — c5

It leads to a double-edged position.

9. ♙e3 ♖c7 10. 0-0 d5 11. ♖e1 ♜a6 12. ♙xa6 bxa6 13. dxc5 ♙f5 14. ♖e2 ♖c8 15. ♚ab1 h6 16. ♚b3 f6 17. ♙d4±

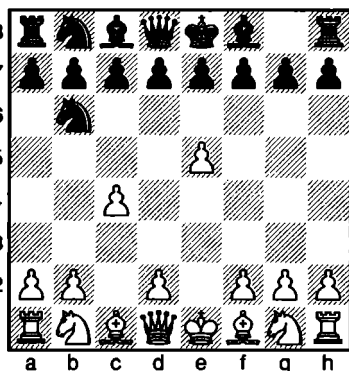
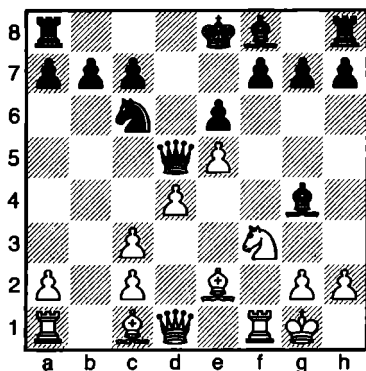
Kogan — Mazi 1997;

C) 5. — c5 6. ♜f3 ♜c6 7. ♙c4 e6 8. 0-0 ♙e7 9. d4 ♖c7! 10. exd6 ♖xd6=

6. ♜f3 dxe5 7. fxe5 ♖d5 8. d4 ♙g4

9. ♖e2 e6 10. 0-0

against the Alekhine Defence.



The sides have similar chances to those in the game Tal — Podgaets.

10. — ♖e7 11. ♘g5 ♖xe2 12. ♙xe2 0-0 13. ♙h5

13. ♙g4 ♖ae8 14. ♘e4 ♖h8 15. ♖g5 h6 16. ♖e3= Micheli — Skalkotas Skopje 1972

13. — ♖xg5 14. ♙xg5 ♙e4 15. ♖a3 ♖fd8 16. ♖f2 ♖d7=

Bilek — Larsen 1967

2.3.1 — 2. e5 ♘d5 3. c4 ♘b6 4. b3

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5 3. c4 ♘b6

We got to a position by this move which occurs very often playing

Here White nearly always pursues on the black knight by moving c5, but in this part we are dealing with White's other opportunities.

4. b3

Taking the aspects of strategy into consideration it is a logical move. The bishop gets to the long diagonal a1-h8, and not being hindered by the f6 knight it can play much more effectively.

4. ♘c3

It is a very interesting continuation which is played seldom in the tournament practice. Black can go back to the main lines by moving d6 in most cases, but let us see what else possibilities it has.

4. — c5

The line 4. — d6 5. exd6 cxd6 6. d4
 ♖c6 7. ♜f3 ♙g4 turns over to the
 main variations B04/B05.

5. ♜f3

5. d4?! It is not so effective here
 as in the basic game. 5. — cxd4
 6. ♖xd4 ♖c6 7. ♖e4 e6 8. ♜f3
 d5 9. exd6 ♙xd6 10. ♙e3 ♖e7
 11. ♙d1 ♙b4 12. ♖c2 0-0 13.
 ♙e2 ♙d7 14. 0-0 ♙c5 15. ♙c1±
 Hargens — Paulsen 1994

5. — ♖c6 6. d4! cxd4 7. ♖xd4
 ♖xe5?

As it is proved by the given game it
 is a fault to accept the sacrificed
 pawn.

7. — d6 8. exd6 ♖xd6 9. ♖cb5
 ♖e5† 10. ♙e3 ♙d7

10. — ♖xd4 11. ♖xd4±

11. ♜f3!? ♖b8 12. ♙e2± White
 preceded Black in the advance.

8. c5!

It is the point of the sacrifice.

8. — ♖bc4 9. f4 ♖xb2 10. ♙xb2
 ♖g6 11. ♙c4

White gets a decisive advantage.

11. — e6

It does not help Black either.

11. — ♖xf4 Black takes another
 pawn which makes Whites attack
 fatal. 12. 0-0 e5 13. ♖h5!! ♖f6

A) 13. — ♖xh5 14. ♙xf7† ♖e7
 15. ♖d5#;

B) 13. — ♖e7 14. ♙xf4 exf4 15.
 ♖d5+

14. ♙xf4 ♖xf4 15. ♖d5 ♖e4 16.
 ♖f6†! gxf6 17. ♖xf7† ♖d8 18.
 ♖e6†! dxe6 19. ♙d1†+ Blatny,P

12. g3 ♙xc5 13. ♜f3 0-0 14. ♖d3
 d5 15. ♙b3 ♙d7 16. 0-0-0 ♙c8 17.
 ♖b1

With the intention of the further
 move f5, while in case of 17. — f5
 18. ♖xd5!+ Lopez Sanchez —
 Barrera 1992

4. — d6

A) 4. — g6

It is a good move which offsets
 White's bishop which will be placed
 on the long diagonal.

5. ♙b2

5. ♖c3 d6 6. exd6 cxd6 7. ♙b2
 ♙g7 8. ♙e2 ♖c6 9. ♜f3 ♙g4 10.
 d4 d5 11. c5 ♖c8 12. h3 ♙xf3 13.
 ♙xf3 e6 14. ♖e2 0-0 15. ♖d2
 b6∞ It is a position with a com-
 plicated play in which Black's
 chances are not worse because of
 the weakness of the d4 point.
 Frenkel — Hjorth New York
 1984

5. — ♙g7 6. d4 d6 7. f4 0-0 8. ♜f3

dx e5 9. fx e5 c5 10. d5 ♙g4 11. ♘bd2 e6 12. dx e6 fx e6 13. ♙e2 ♘c6
Black got the initiative.

14. 0-0 ♘d7 15. ♚e1 ♚e7 16. ♚b1
♙ad8+

Ja Diaz — Marinkovic 1988;

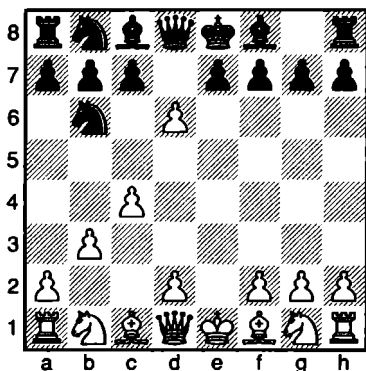
B) 4. — c5 5. ♙b2 d6 6. ex d6 ♚xd6
7. ♘f3 ♘c6 8. ♘c3 ♙g4

8. — e5 9. ♘b5 ♚e7!=

9. ♙e2 ♚d7 10. 0-0 ♙d8 11. ♘e4 e6
12. ♙f6! ♚c8 13. ♘e5 ♘xe5 14.
♙xe5±

Groszpeter — Tomaszewski Kecske-
met 1979

5. ex d6



5. — cxd6

5. — ex d6

It leads to a sharp play, but White

has slightly better chances.

6. ♙b2 d5 7. ♘f3 ♘c6 8. ♙e2 d4

8. — ♙e6

9. d3 ♙e7 10. 0-0 0-0 11. ♘a3 ♙f6
12. ♚d2 g5?!

This move is too aggressive.

12. — ♙g4? 13. ♘xd4 ♙xd4 14.
♙xg4 ♙xb2 15. ♚xb2 ♚xd3 16.
♘b5±

13. h3 ♙f5 14. ♘c2 ♙e8 15. ♙ae1
h6 16. ♘h2 ♙g6 17. f4

Black's position falls to pieces.

17. — gxf4 18. ♚xf4 ♙g5 19. ♚f3
♘d7 20. ♘h1 ♘de5 21. ♚f2 ♙e6 22.
♘xd4±

Ljubojevic — Oney Praia de Rocha
1978

6. ♙b2 ♘c6 7. ♘f3 ♙g4 8. ♙e2 d5
9. 0-0 e6 10. ♘e5

10. d3 ♚c7 11. ♘c3 dxc4 12. dxc4
♙d8=

10. — ♙xe2 11. ♚xe2 ♘xe5 12.
♙xe5 dxc4 13. bxc4 ♙c8 14. d3
♘d7=

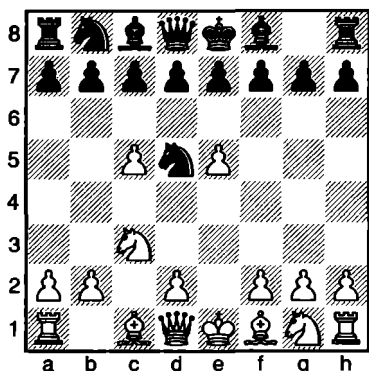
White's worse pawn structure is
compensated by the fact that Black
fell behind with the development.
Rigo — Posch 1997

2.3.2 — 2. e5 \mathcal{Q} d5 3. c4 \mathcal{Q} b6 4. c5
 \mathcal{Q} d5 5. \mathcal{Q} c3

1. e4 \mathcal{Q} f6 2. e5 \mathcal{Q} d5 3. c4 \mathcal{Q} b6 4. c5
 \mathcal{Q} d5

White main purpose is to put pressure on the centre by its advanced pawns and prevent Black from developing its pieces in an untroubled way. In return for it Black will be made up for by a pawn chain which can usually be attacked in the Alekhine Defence. First we taking those systems, one after the other, in which White did not make the move \mathcal{Q} c4 at the very beginning of the opening.

5. \mathcal{Q} c3



This move makes Black choose if it exchanges the knights on c3 destroying the white pawn structure on, or reinforces the d5 point beginning its advance at the same time.

The latter one can rather be recommended to be chosen.

5. d4

It leaves the knight alone, so Black starts a counterplay at once in the centre.

5. — d6

5. — b6 6. cxb6 axb6 7. \mathcal{Q} c4 e6 8.
 \mathcal{Q} e2+

6. cxd6 exd6 7. \mathcal{W} b3

White has slightly better chances with initiative.

7. \mathcal{Q} f3 \mathcal{Q} e7 8. \mathcal{Q} c3 dxe5 9. \mathcal{Q} xe5
 \mathcal{Q} e6 10. \mathcal{Q} d3 \mathcal{Q} d7=

7. — dxe5 8. \mathcal{Q} c4 c6 9. dxe5 \mathcal{Q} b4+
10. \mathcal{Q} d2 \mathcal{W} e7 11. \mathcal{Q} f3 \mathcal{Q} xd2+ 12.
 \mathcal{Q} bxd2 \mathcal{Q} f4 13. 0-0 0-0 14. \mathcal{W} e3
 \mathcal{Q} g6 15. \mathcal{W} fe1 \mathcal{Q} d7 16. e6 fxe6 17.
 \mathcal{Q} xe6+ \mathcal{Q} h8 18. \mathcal{Q} c4+

Macievic — Zelcic 1991

5. — e6

It is the most logical move.

A) 5. — \mathcal{Q} xc3 6. bxc3

This recapture is considerably less frequent since the move 6. — d6 gives Black an equal play.

6. dxc3 Although White's pawn structure is not enviable, Black lags behind in the advance so it has to make arrangements for a long defence. 6. — e6

6. — \mathcal{Q} c6 7. \mathcal{Q} f3 e6

7. — g6 8. \mathcal{Q} c4 \mathcal{Q} g7 9. \mathcal{Q} f4

0-0 10. ♖d2 b6 11. h4±

8. ♙e3 b6 9. ♖a4 ♙xc5 10. ♙xc5 bxc5 11. 0-0-0 *It brings a complicated play with mutual chances.* 11. — f6 12. ♙b5 ♖xe5 13. ♖he1 0-0 14. ♖xe5 fxe5 15. ♙xd7 ♖g5† 16. ♖b1 ♙xd7 17. ♖xd7 ♖g6† 18. ♖a1 ♖xf2+ Capello — Bagirov Tunis 1979

7. ♖g4 h5 8. ♖g3 g6 9. ♙g5 White getting some space advantage has a free position. 9. — ♙e7 10. ♖f3 b6 11. cxb6 axb6 12. ♙d3 ♙b7 13. ♙xe7 ♖xe7 14. 0-0 h4 15. ♖f4 ♙xf3 16. ♖xf3 ♖c6 17. ♙b5 ♖c5 18. ♙xc6 ♖xc6 19. ♖f6 ♖h5 20. h3= Thorhallsson — Hjartarson 1997

6. — d6 7. cxd6 exd6 8. ♖f3 ♖c6 9. exd6

9. ♙b5 ♙d7 10. ♖e2 ♖xe5 11. ♖xe5 dxe5 12. ♖xe5† ♖e7 13. ♙xd7† ♖xd7 14. ♖xe7† ♙xe7±

9. — ♙xd6 10. d4 ♙f5 11. ♙d3 ♖e7 12. 0-0 0-0 13. ♙g5 ♖c8 14. ♖e1 ♖g6 15. ♖h4= Mueller — Appel 1988;

B) 5. — c6

Black has a solid defence.

6. ♖xd5

6. ♙c4 d6 7. cxd6

7. ♖b3 *White gets the chance of a powerful attack.* 7. — ♖d7 8.

♖xd5 ♖xc5 9. ♖c7† ♖xc7 10. ♙xf7† ♖d8 11. ♖e3 d5 12. d4 ♖e6∞ Sveshnikov — Neckar 1992

7. — exd6 8. exd6 ♖xc3 9. dxc3 ♙xd6 10. ♖e2† ♖e7 11. ♖xe7† ♖xe7 12. ♙e3± Baumgartner — Yevdokimov 1990

6. — cxd5 7. d4 ♖c6 8. ♖f3 b6 9. ♙d2 bxc5 10. dxc5 ♖b8 11. ♖a4 ♖c7 12. ♙c3 e6

Black made its position solid satisfactorily.

13. ♙d3

13. b4 d4!

13. — ♙xc5 14. ♖g4 g6 15. 0-0 ♙b4 16. ♖g5 ♙xc3 17. bxc3 d6± Bernard — Neckar 1981

6. d4

A) 6. ♖xd5 exd5

As it has been proved by the practice this setup is well-founded positionally, Black can hold the balance.

7. d4 d6

7. — b6 8. ♙e3 bxc5 9. dxc5 c6 10. ♙d3 ♖a6=

8. cxd6 cxd6 9. ♖f3 ♖c6

9. — dxe5?! 10. dxe5 ♙b4† 11. ♙d2 ♖a5 12. ♙xb4 ♖xb4† 13. ♖d2 ♖xd2† 14. ♖xd2 0-0 15. ♖cl±

10. ♙e2

10. ♖d3 dxe5 11. ♜xe5 ♖b4† 12. ♖d2 ♞a5 13. ♜xc6 bxc6 14. a3 ♖xd2† 15. ♞xd2 ♞xd2† 16. ♜xd2 a5 17. ♞hc1 ♜d7 18. ♞c5 ♜d6 19. a4 ♖d7 20. ♜c3 ♞hb8=

Hodgson — Oll Sevilla 1992

10. — dxe5

This move makes the position simpler.

11. dxe5 ♖b4† 12. ♖d2 ♞a5 13. a3 ♖xd2† 14. ♞xd2 ♞xd2† 15. ♜xd2 ♖g4=;

B) 6. ♞g4

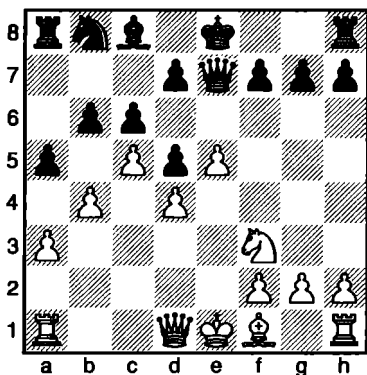
It proves to be premature.

6. — d6 7. cxd6 cxd6 8. exd6 ♜f6

6. — ♜xc3

Black is ending the tension around its d5 knight.

6. — b6 7. ♜xd5 exd5 8. ♜f3 c6 9. b4 a5 10. ♖g5 ♖e7 11. ♖xe7 ♞xe7 12. a3



White puts an unpleasant pressure

on its opponent's queen side.

12. — ♖a6 13. ♖xa6 ♜xa6 14. 0-0 0-0 15. cxb6 axb4 16. a4± c5 17. dxc5 ♞xc5 18. a5?!

18. ♞d4!?

18. — ♜b8 19. ♞c1 ♞xa5 20. ♞xa5 ♞xa5=

Frank — Krizsany Balatonberény 1993

7. bxc3

It is a flexible position which gives White the opportunities to accomplish several different plans.

7. — b6

Black continues consistently.

7. — d6?! 8. cxd6 cxd6 9. f4 ♜c6 10. ♜f3 d5 11. ♖d3 ♜a5 12. 0-0 ♖e7 13. ♜g5 g6 14. ♖a3 ♖d7 15. ♞c1 ♞c8 16. ♞f3 ♜c4±

Sveshnikov — Bagirov 1992

8. ♞g4

This move leads to a complicated play.

8. cxb6 axb6 9. ♞g4

9. ♜f3 ♖b7 10. ♖d3 d6 11. 0-0 ♖e7 12. ♞el ♜d7 13. ♖c2 ♞a5 14. ♜d2 dxe5 15. ♜c4 ♞a7 16. ♜xe5 ♜xe5 17. ♞xe5 ♖f6 18. ♞el ♞a8 19. f3 0-0 20. ♖f4±

Sveshnikov — Morozevich Alushta 1994

9. — c5 10. dxc5 ♞c7 11. ♜f3 ♜a6

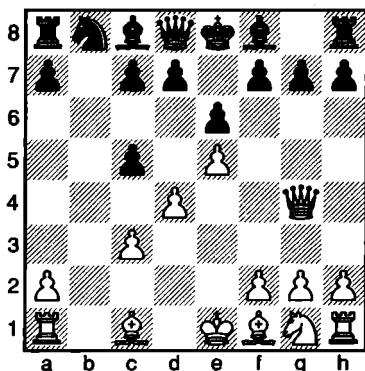
12. ♙xa6

White has serious problems in connection with its castling.

12. — ♙xa6 13. ♙e3 ♙xc5 14. ♙xc5 ♖xc5 15. ♗b4 ♗d5 16. ♖d1 ♗xa2 17. ♘d2 ♙d3 18. f3 ♗a4 19. ♗xa4 ♖xa4 20. ♘f2 ♘e7+

Lein — Zelcic Belgrade 1988

8. — bxc5?!



It is unnecessary to make the events hurry in this way.

8. — f5 9. exf6 ♗xf6 10. ♙d3 bxc5 11. ♘f3 ♘c6 12. 0-0

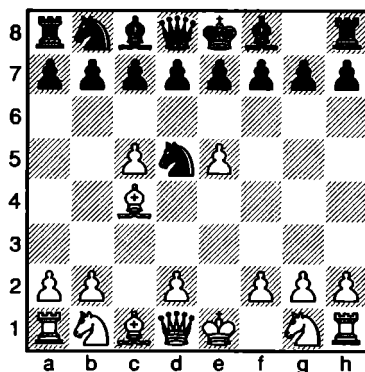
Ings — Baier 1978

9. ♙g5 ♙e7 10. ♙xe7 ♗xe7 11. ♗xg7 ♖f8 12. ♘f3 cxd4 13. ♙e2 f6 14. ♗g3 d3 15. ♙xd3 f5 16. ♖b1 ♘a6 17. ♘d4 ♘c5 18. ♗f3 c6 19. 0-0

Sveshnikov — Basagic 1997

2.3.3 — 2. e5 ♘d5 3. c4 ♘b6 4. c5 ♘d5 5. ♙c4

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5 3. c4 ♘b6 4. c5 ♘d5 5. ♙c4



White's manner of playing is quite similar to that which is followed in the system beginning with 5. ♘c3, that is, it gives up the d5 square and then it attacks it by pieces later. A sharp play and great number of tactical opportunities are typical of most lines of the system.

5. — e6 6. ♘c3

It is a pawn sacrifice which, in the case of being accepted, gives White a dangerous initiative.

A) 6. d4

It introduces a more quiet play than the move of the main line.

6. — b6

The line 6. — d6 7. cxd6 cxd6 turns into the Sicilian Defence.

7. cxb6

7. ♖g4 It is an energetic move which also makes an attack on the g7 point indirectly. 7. — bxc5 8. ♙xd5 exd5 9. ♙g5 ♙e7 10. ♙xe7 ♜xe7 11. ♜xg7 ♜f8 12. ♜f6 cxd4 13. ♜e2 ♜b4† 14. ♜bc3♯ Langschmidt — Zeh 1988

7. — axb6

7. — ♜xb6 It is less convincing but it can be played. 8. ♙d3 d5 9. exd6 cxd6 10. ♜f3 ♙b7 11. 0-0 ♙e7 12. ♜c3 0-0 13. b4! ♜8d7 14. a4 ♜c8 15. ♜b5 a6 16. ♜a3 ♜d5 17. ♙d2 ♜c3 18. ♙xc3 ♜xc3† Kruglov — Pushkin 1992

8. ♜c3

This move does not cause Black much trouble as it can choose from among several satisfactory lines.

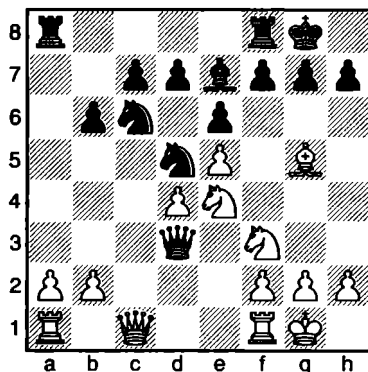
8. ♜f3 It leads to an approximately equal position. 8. — ♙a6 8. — ♙e7 9. 0-0 0-0 10. ♜c3 ♙b7 11. ♙d3 d6 12. ♙b1 ♜d7 13. ♜e4 dxe5 14. dxe5 ♜c5 15. ♜xc5 ♙xc5 16. ♜g5 g6 17. ♜xh7 It is not a complicated piece sacrifice which is sufficient for getting a draw. 17. — ♜xh7 18. ♜h5† ♙g8 19. ♙xg6 fxg6 20. ♜xg6† ♙h8 ½-½ Török — Baburin Budapest 1992

9. ♜bd2

9. ♙xa6 ♙b4† 10. ♙d2 ♙xd2† 11. ♜bxd2 ♜xa6 12. 0-0 ♜c6 13. a3 0-0 14. ♜e4 f5 15. exf6 gxf6 16. ♜d2 ♜e8 17. ♜c3 ♜ce7 18. ♜xd5 ♜xd5† By having a knight with a foothold in the centre and a better pawn structure Black got the advantage. Gonzales, M — Marovic Spain 1977

9. — ♙e7 10. 0-0 0-0 11. ♜e2 11. ♜e1 d6 12. ♙b3 ♜d7 13. ♜c4 Kuksov — Baburin USSR 1986

11. — ♜c8 12. ♜e4 ♜c6 13. ♙g5 ♙xc4 14. ♜xc4 ♙a6 15. ♜c1 ♜d3



Black is trying to exploit the weakness of the light squares in the White's position. 16. ♙xe7

♘dx7 17. ♖f4 ♘g6 18. ♖e3+
Ruck,R — Krizsany Györ 1991;

8. — ♘xc3

8. — ♙b7 9. ♘xd5 exd5 10. ♙d3
d6 11. ♘e2 dxe5 12. dxe5 ♘d7
13. e6?! fxe6 14. ♘f4 ♙b4+ 15.
♙f1 ♖f6 16. ♖e2 e5+ Rausis-
Shirov Riga 1986

9. bxc3 d5 10. ♙d3 ♙a6 11. ♙xa6
♙xa6+;

B) 6. ♖g4

It is a premature 'rushing out' by the
queen.

6. — d6 7. cxd6 cxd6 8. d4 ♖c7 9.
♘d2 dxe5 10. dxe5 ♘d7+

6. — ♘xc3

A) 6. — c6

It is a passive move but it can be
played without problems.

7. d4 b6 8. cxb6 axb6 9. ♘ge2 ♙e7
10. 0-0 0-0 11. f4 f5 12. exf6 ♘xf6
13. ♙b3 ♘a6 14. f5 d5 15. fxe6
♙xe6 16. ♙g5 ♖d7 17. ♖d2 ♙f5
18. a3 ♘c7=

Jonkman — Lukasiewicz 1993

B) 6. — ♙xc5

It chooses the advance instead of
gaining a pawn. Here White has four
different possibilities to continue.

7. d4

a) 7. ♖g4 It is an aggressive and
premature attacking move which,
as it happened so many times
earlier, does not result in getting
the advantage. 7. — 0-0 8. ♘f3 f5
9. ♖g3 ♘b4 10. 0-0 ♘c2 11. ♙b1
♘c6 12. d3 ♘d2 13. ♘xd4 ♙xd4
14. ♙f4 a6+ Bagirov;

b) 7. ♘xd5 exd5 8. ♙xd5 d6 9. d4
♙b4+ 10. ♙f1 dxe5=;

c) 7. ♙xd5 exd5 8. d4 ♙b4 9.
♖g4 ♙f8 Although Black cannot
take the advantage of castling any
longer, but having an extra pawn,
it gets an adequate compensation
in return for it. 10. ♘f3 d6 11.
♖g3 ♘c6 12. 0-0 ♙xc3+

12. — ♙e6=

7. — ♙b4 8. ♖g4 ♘xc3 9. bxc3

9. a3 ♙f8! Black beats its oppo-
nent's attack off. 10. ♙g5 h5+

9. — ♙xc3+ 10. ♙f1 ♖e7 11. ♙b1
f5 12. ♖h5+ g6 13. ♖d1+
Sveshnikov — Khmelitsky 1990;

C) 6. — ♘f4

It is a tricky move but it leads to
Black's disadvantage in the case of
White's carefully thought play.

7. ♖f3

a) 7. d4 ♘xg2+ 8. ♙f1 ♘h4 9.
♖g4+;

b) 7. ♖g4? ♖h4 8. ♖xh4 ♘xg2+
9. ♙e2 ♘xh4+ Kristjansson —

Westerinen 1997

7. — ♖g6 8. d4 ♘c6 9. ♙e3 ♙e7 10. ♗e2 b6 11. cxb6 axb6 12. f4 ♙b7 13. ♘f3±

Spitz — Solakian 1993

7. dxc3 ♘c6

It is a fine intermediate move before the capturing of the c5 pawn, which forces White to defend the e5 pawn by its bishop.

7. — b6

It also gives Black a satisfactory play.

8. ♗g4

8. cxb6 axb6 9. ♘f3 d5 10. exd6 cxd6 11. 0-0 ♙e7 12. ♘d4 0-0 13. f4 d5 14. ♙d3 ♙a6=

8. — ♘c6 9. ♘f3 ♙b7 10. ♙f4 bxc5±

8. ♙f4 ♙xc5

8. — ♗h4

This move leads to an extraordinarily complicated position. It makes White move g3 weakening the diagonal h1-a8 by that, thus the bishop, which now is lying flat on c8, can intervene in the play with great power on this diagonal later.

9. g3 ♗e7 10. b4

10. ♘f3 ♗xc5 11. ♗e2 h6 12. h4 d5±

10. — g5 11. ♙e3 ♘xe5 12. ♙d4!±N
12. ♗h5 ♙g7 13. ♙xg5 ♙f6 14. ♙xf6 ♗xf6 15. ♗e2 ♘xc4 16. ♗xc4 b5! 17. ♗d4 ♗xd4 18. cxd4 ♙b7 19. f3 a5!±

12. — ♙g7 13. ♙e2 d6 14. cxd6 cxd6 15. h4 ♙d7 16. hxg5!

16. f4?! gxf4 17. gxf4 ♙c6 18. ♙h3 0-0-0 19. ♗c2 ♙f6 20. fxe5 ♙xh4† 21. ♙f2 ♙xf2† 22. ♘xf2 dxe5 Baburin,A

16. — ♗xg5 17. ♙h5 ♗g6 18. ♘h3!±

Posch — Baburin Vienna 1995

9. ♗g4 g5

It is the best answer.

10. ♗xg5

10. ♙xg5 ♗g8 11. ♙xd8 ♗xg4 12. ♙e2 ♗xg2±

10. — ♗xg5 11. ♙xg5 ♘xe5 12. ♙f6 ♘xc4 13. ♙xh8 ♘xb2 14. ♙d4 ♙e7 15. ♙b1 ♘c4

Black has a bishop and two pawns for the rook. Its better position is provided by its bishop pair and the weakness of the light squares in the white position. The fight will be brought an issue by the light-squared black bishop later.

16. ♘f3 b6 17. ♘d2 ♙a6 18. ♘xc4 ♙xc4±

Zapolskis — Slavko, 1993

Chapter 3

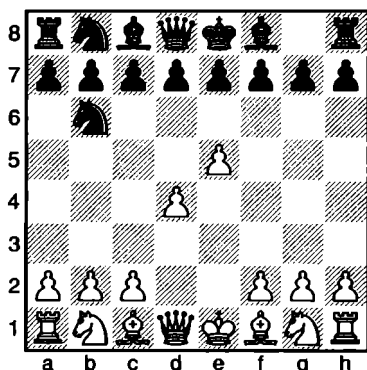
1. e4 ♖f6 2. e5 ♗d5 3. d4 d6

3.1 — 2. e5 ♗d5 3. d4 d6 4. f4

1. e4 ♖f6 2. e5 ♗d5 3. d4 d6

In this and the following parts of the present chapter we are examining two moves (4. f4 and 4. ♙c4) which are not too popular. To touch upon them can be explained by the fact that they still occur on different tournaments but, that is true, not on super-tournaments. But first let us see a different Black's move.

3. — ♗b6



The essence of Black's move is to make the move d5 and then it tries to undermine the centre by the move c5. But by this manoeuvre of knight Black loses too many tempos that

gives White the opportunities to finish its development quickly and to have a lasting initiative.

4. a4

4. ♖f3 d5 5. ♗bd2?! It does not seem to be the most powerful continuation.

5. ♙d3 ♙g4 6. h3 ♙xf3 7. ♗xf3 e6 8. ♗g3 c5 9. dxc5 ♗d6d7 10. 0-0 ♗xc5

10. — ♗c6 11. c4 ♗dxe5 12. cxd5 ♗xd5 13. ♙b5 ♗xc5 14. ♗c3 ♗g6 15. ♗c7 A double-edged and complicated position comes about without queens. 15. — ♗b6 16. ♗xb6 axb6 17. ♙d1 ♙c5 18. ♗e4= Luther — Hoeksema Leeuwarden 1992

11. c4 ♗c6 12. cxd5 ♗xd5 13. ♙b5 ♗e4 14. ♙xc6† bxc6 15. ♗f3 White's queen cannot find its ideal place. 15. — ♙c5 16. ♙e3 0-0 17. ♙xc5 ♗xc5 18. ♗e3 ♙fd8 19. ♗c3 ♗d4 20. ♙f1† Van Riemsdijk — Van der Wal Groningen 1994

5. — ♙g4 6. h3 ♙xf3 7. ♗xf3 e6 8. ♗g3

8. ♗b3 ♗d6d7 9. ♗g3±

8. — c5 9. dxc5 ♖d6 10. ♕e2 ♘c6 11. 0-0 ♘d4 12. ♕d3 ♘xc5 13. c3 ♘xd3 14. ♖xd3 ♘c6 15. ♘f3= Kristensen — Westerinen Nordic Grand Prix 1997;

4. — a5 5. ♕b5

5. ♘f3 d5 6. ♕d3 ♕g4 7. h3 ♕xf3 8. ♖xf3 e6 9. ♖g3 c5 10. dxc5 ♘d6 11. ♘c3 ♘c6 12. ♘b5 ♘dx5 13. ♕f4 Black has to face up to difficult problems. 13. — f6 13. — ♘xd3† 14. cxd3 ♖c8 15. ♕d6±

14. 0-0-0 ♖d7 15. ♕e3 ♖c8 16. ♕e2 ♖f7 17. f4 ♘d7 18. ♖he1 f5 19. ♕g1 ♕e7 20. ♕f3± Benjamin — Albrt New York 1990;

5. — c6

5. — ♘c6 6. ♘c3± Petrosian

6. ♕d3 d5 7. ♕g5

White's aim is to keep the centre closed and put all its means into action to break up Black's king side.

7. — g6 8. h4 h6 9. ♕e3 ♕g7 10. ♘d2 ♘a6 11. c3 ♕e6 12. ♘h3 ♘c4 13. ♖c2 ♘xe3 14. fxe3 g5?

14. — ♘c7 15. ♘f4 0-0 16. h5 g5 17. ♘xe6 ♘xe6 18. ♕h7† ♘h8 19. ♕f5∞

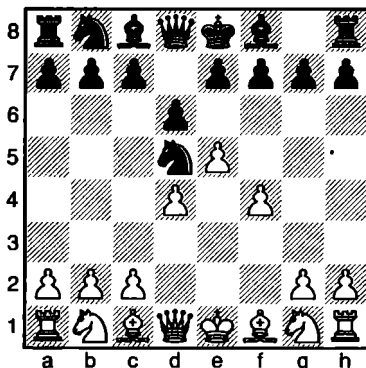
15. hxg5

Black's king side is totally weakened, its pieces cannot co-operate so its position cannot be saved.

15. — hxg5 16. 0-0-0 ♕xh3 17. ♖xh3 ♖xh3 18. gxh3 ♘d7 19. ♕xa6 ♖xa6 20. ♖f5†±

Tal — Lutikov Moscow 1969

4. f4



White intends to get an advantage in the centre or, at least, to control it. Black, beyond hindering White's plans mentioned above, is trying to tear White's too advanced pawn chain apart in a usual way in the Alekhine Defence, and look for opportunities to launch a counter-attack.

4. exd6 exd6

This move introduces a calm, positional play with equal chances on the whole.

5. c4 ♘b6 6. ♘c3 ♕e7 7. h3

There is another typical line too, as follows:

7. ♖e3 ♟c6 8. ♖d3 0-0 9. ♟ge2
 ♟g4 10. 0-0 ♖f6 11. f3 ♖h5 12.
 b3 ♖e8=

7. — 0-0 8. ♟f3 ♖f6 9. ♖e3 ♖e8
 10. ♖e2 ♖e6 11. b3 d5

White starts a counter-attack in the
 centre without delay.

12. c5 ♟d6d7 13. ♖c1 ♟c6 14. 0-0
 ♟xc5 15. dxc5 d4 16. ♟xd4 ♟xd4
 17. ♖xd4 ♖xd4 18. ♖xd4 ♖xd4 19.
 ♖f3

It is indisputable that Black having a
 bishop pair got a minimal position-
 al advantage. Fedorchuk — Ko-
 niushkov Yalta 1996

4. — dxe5

This line is analyzed the most thor-
 oughly. There is another possibility,
 as follows

4. — g6 5. ♖c4

5. ♖e2 ♖g7 6. ♟f3 0-0 7. 0-0 c5
 Black demolishes White's centre
 and gets the initiative. 8. dxc5
 dxe5 9. ♟xe5 ♟c6 10. ♟xc6 bxc6
 11. c4 ♟b4 With Black's active
 play.

5. — ♖e6 6. ♖b3 a5 7. c4 ♟b6 8. c5
 dxc5 9. ♖xe6 fxe6 10. dxc5 ♖xd1†
 11. ♟xd1 ♟a4 12. ♖e3 ♟a6?!

12. — ♟xb2† 13. ♟e2 ♟c4

13. c6 ♟xb2† 14. ♟e2 b5 15. ♟d2
 ♟b4 16. ♟gf3 ♟d5 17. ♟d4 ♟c3†?!

Black does not play accurately

enough so its benefit gives out
 before long.

17. — ♖h6 18. ♟xb5 ♖b8

18. ♟f3 ♖h6 19. ♟e4 ♟d5 20. ♟xe6
 ♟c4

Kupreichik — Agdestein Moscow
 1994

5. fxe5

5. dxe5? ♖f5

With Black's decisive initiative.

6. c4 ♟b4 7. ♖xd8† ♟xd8 8. ♟a3
 e6

5. — c5

This is the most energetic move.
 Black starts an attack on the d4
 square at once. Other typical lines
 are the following:

A) 5. — ♟c6?!

It is less convincing.

6. ♟f3

6. c3 ♖f5 7. ♖d3 ♖xd3 8. ♖xd3
 ♖d7 9. ♟f3 0-0-0 10. 0-0

Beyond the space disadvantage
 Black has got problems with its
 developing. The simple, natural
 moves are to White's advantage.
 10. — f6 11. ♟bd2 ♟f4 12. ♖e4
 ♖g4 13. g3 g5 14. exf6 exf6 15.
 ♟h1 f5 16. ♖e3 White beats the
 opponent's attack off. 16. — ♟h3
 17. ♖e6† ♟b8 18. d5

18. ♟c4 ♖d6 19. ♟e3±

18. — ♖c5 19. dxc6 ♟f2† 20.

♖xf2 ♙xf2 21. ♔g2± Tal —
Yung Moscow 1991

6. — ♙g4 7. ♙e2 e6 8. 0-0 ♙e7
9. c3 0-0 10. ♖el ♙xe2 11. ♗xe2
♗d7 12. ♖d2 f6 13. exf6 ♖xf6 14.
♖d3 ♗ae8 15. ♖c4±

Zapata — Kovacevic, V Zenica
1986;

B) 5. — ♙f5?!

This move is not considered to be
adequate for Black.

6. ♖f3 c5?!

6. — e6 7. ♙d3 ♙xd3 8. ♗xd3 c5
9. 0-0 h6 10. ♖c3 cxd4 11. ♗b5†
♗d7 12. ♖xd5 White will have
an unambiguous positional ad-
vantage through the weak d5
pawn. 12. — exd5 13. ♖xd4±
Georgiev, Kr — Fernandez, J Ko-
motini 1992

7. ♙b5†

It is a difficult position which is
desirable for White.

7. — ♖c6 8. c4 ♖c7

8. — ♖db4 9. 0-0 cxd4 10. ♖xd4
e6 11. ♙e3±

9. ♙xc6†! bxc6 10. ♖c3 e6 11. ♗a4
♗d7 12. ♙e3 cxd4 13. ♖xd4±

Kupreichik — Karolyi Dortmund
1991

6. ♖f3

It is regarded as the best move.

Beyond this the following lines
occur on tournaments:

A) 6. c4?

It is a wrong move, Black will get
the material benefit.

6. — ♖b4 7. d5

7. a3!? ♖4c6 8. d5 ♖xe5 9. ♖f3
e6±

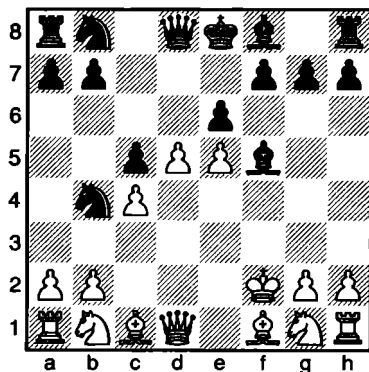
7. — ♙f5 8. ♖f2

8. ♖a3 e6 9. ♗a4† ♗d7 White
fully lags behind in the advance.
10. ♗xd7† ♖xd7 11. ♖f3

11. dxe6 ♖xe5 12. exf7† ♖xf7±

11. — exd5 12. cxd5 ♖xd5± Za-
pata — Tal Subotica 1987

8. — e6!?



The White rook will not run away;
there is no chance to rescue it, for
Black has dangerous threats.

9. d3 c2 10. f3 xa1 11. d3
 xd3 12. xd3 e7 13. e3 b6
 14. e2 d7 15. xa1 0-0 16. b1
 a6 17. d6 d8 18. e4 c6 19.
 d3 f5

Georgiev, Kr — Solozhenkin France
 1996;

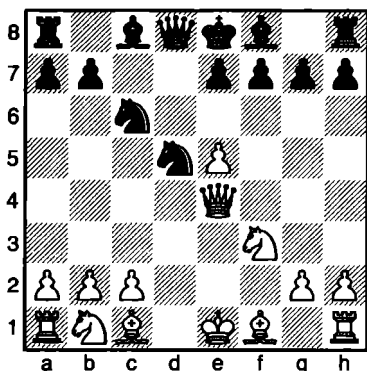
B) 6. b5?!

Exchanging the bishops is favour-
 able to Black, who can make the
 game equal fast.

6. — d7 7. xd7+ xd7 8. f3
 cxd4 9. xd4 e6 10. 0-0 h6=

Vitolins — Bagirov USSR 1979

6. — cxd4 7. xd4 c6 8. e4



It leads to a complicated position
 which promises a difficult and
 hopeful fight for both sides.

8. b5?!

It lets the c8 bishop out.

8. — f5 9. c3 e6 10. g5 e7
 11. xe7 dxe7 12. 0-0 0-0 13.
 xd8 fxd8 14. h3 a6 15. xc6
 xc6 16. a3=

Ankerst — Horvath, Cs Budapest
 1992

8. — g6

The main scene of the fight is the
 centre.

8. — e6 9. c4±

9. c4 b6

9. — ddb4 10. b3 f5 11. e2
 g7 12. a3±

10. b3

10. e6?!

It is only Black whose activity is
 served by this move.

10.— f5 11. e2 xc4 12. xc4
 g7

10. — g7 11. 0-0 f5 12. f4

12. e2 d4!

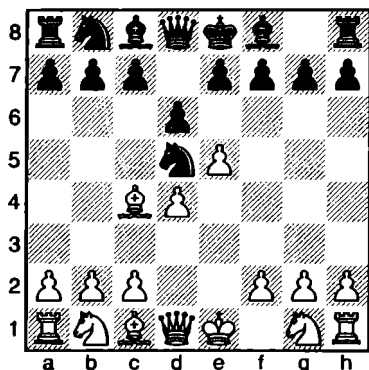
It leads to Black's advantage.

12. — 0-0 13. c3 b8 14. e1=

Kupreichik — Varga, Z Budapest
 1992

3.2. — 2. e5 ♖d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♙c4

1. e4 ♜f6 2. e5 ♜d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♙c4



The basic thought of the system is to bring the queen into play early. This fact must not be underestimated in the least since Black, in fact, has to fight against serious problems. Although White's strategic and tactical aims can be realized easily (attacking the e6 and f7 points immediately and exploiting the frequently weakening dark squares) Black has to take stock of the situation thoroughly and consider its moves before it would make them. Black's plan in general is to decrease the great pressure by trying to exchange the bishop placed on the b3 square and attacking the e-pawn to tie White's active pieces to the e5 point reducing their power in this way.

4. — ♜b6

4. — c6

It is a solid move which keeps some transitions to the main variations, still the move 4. — ♜b6 is considered to be stronger.

5. ♜f3

It is a natural move for the sake of the advance, which gives White a slight advantage in the case of correct play.

5. ♜e2 dxe5

5. — ♙f5 6. g4?! *It is too aggressive.* 6. — ♙e6 7. f4 g6 8. ♜h3 ♜d7 9. ♙g1 h5 *It is a typical move of the counter-attack in such positions which wipes up White's pawn chain.* 10. f5 gxf5 11. gxh5 dxe5 12. dxe5 ♜c7 Gross — Hetey Balatonberény 1996

6. dxe5 ♙f5 7. ♜f3 e6 8. 0-0 ♙g4 Black can make the game equal in this line as well.

8. — ♜d7! 9. a3

9. ♙g5?! ♜c7 10. ♜bd2 h6 11. ♙h4 ♜f4 Black takes over the initiative. 12. ♜e3 g5 13. ♙g3 ♜h5 Gross—Freisler Czechia 1995

9. — ♙e7 10. ♙a2 0-0 11. c4 ♜5b6 12. ♜c3 ♜c7= de la Villa — Miles Sevilla 1993

9. ♜bd2 ♜d7 10. ♙b3 ♜c5=

Mestel — Popov Malta 1980;

5. — dxe5

Black tries to equalize the game by quick exchanges.

5. — ♔g4 6. exd6 exd6 7. 0-0 ♙e7 8. ♚e1 0-0 9. h3 ♙e6 10. ♙f1 ♘b6 11. ♙f4 ♘d7 12. ♘bd2 d5 13. a4 White's pieces placed more actively gives it the initiative. 13. — a5 14. c3 ♘c8 15. ♙d3± Kengis — Falk Vienna 1991

6. ♘xe5 ♘d7 7. ♘xd7 ♙xd7 8. ♙f3

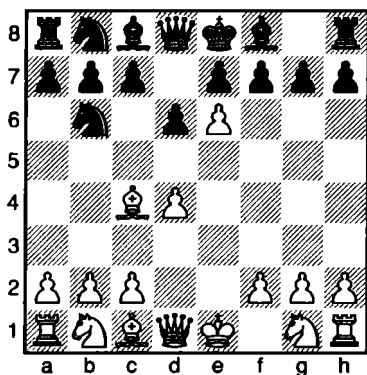
It does not leave the d7 bishop out.

8. — e6 9. 0-0 ♙f6 10. ♙e4 ♙d6 11. ♘d2 ♙g6 12. c3 0-0-0 13. ♙xg6 hxg6 14. h3±

Ochoa — Rivas Barcelona 1992

5. ♙b3

5. e6?!



White introduces a gambit which

can only be successful if Black plays inaccurately.

5. — ♘xc4

5.— fxe6? By capturing the pawn Black falls into the first trap. 6. ♙d3 g6 7. ♘f3 Black has no time to arrange its pieces properly. 7. — ♙g7 8. ♘g5 0-0 9. ♘xh7! ♘xh7 10. ♙h5† ♘g8 11. ♙xg6 ♘c6 12. ♙h7† ♘f7 13. ♙g6† ♘f6 14. ♙g5† ♘xg5 15. ♙xg7 ♙g8 16. f4† ♘g4 17. ♙h6+—

6. exf7† ♘d7?!

It leads to wild complications.

6. — ♘xf7 This is the right move which refutes the gambit. 7. ♙f3† ♘e8 8. ♙h5† g6 9. ♙b5† ♙d7 Black gives White the sacrificed material back just in the most appropriate time. 10. ♙xc4 ♙g4† Bagirov

10. — ♙e6† 11. ♙e2 ♙xe2† 12. ♘xe2=

7. ♙g4† e6 8. d5 c6 9. dxe6† ♘c7 10. ♙g5

10. ♙xc4 ♙e7±

10. — ♙e7 11. ♙f4! ♙f6 12. ♘c3 ♙e7±

5. — dxe5

It is the most important variation but it is also worth taking other opportunities into account as follows.

A) 5. — ♠f5 6. ♖f3

According to the evidence of practice White's initiative is rather interim.

6. — ♖c8 7. ♘h3

White cannot count on a considerable advantage, the position coming into existence is equal.

7. ♖g3?! c5 8. dxc5 dxc5 9. c3 c4
10. ♙d1 ♘c6

10. — ♘a6!? *It has to be taken into account too.*

11. ♘f3 ♙d3 The d3 bishop is dominating. 12. ♙e3 ♘d5 13. ♘d4 e6 14. ♘d2 ♘xe3 15. ♖xe3 ♙c5 16. ♙a4 0-0∞ Strikovich — Alburt New York 1988

7. — ♘c6

7. — d5 It closes the position exploiting the situation of the awkwardly placed queen and knight. 8. ♘f4 e6 9. 0-0 c5 10. c3 ♘c6 11. ♙e3 c4

11. — ♘a5 12. ♙d1 ♘bc4 13. ♙c1 cxd4 14. cxd4 ♘c6∞

12. ♙d1 ♖d7 13. ♘d2 h6 14. g4 ♙h7 15. b4 a5! Black is keeping the balance. 16. b5 ♘e7 17. a4 0-0= Kengis — Bagirov Yurmala 1987;

8. c3 e6 9. ♘g5 ♙e7

Black can be satisfied with the opening.

10. ♖g3 ♖d7 11. 0-0 dxe5 12. dxe5 ♖d3 13. ♘f3 0-0=

Arnason — Alburt Lone Pine 1980;

B) 5. — a5

It promises a very sharp play in which it is difficult to decide the opponent's chances.

6. ♖f3 e6 7. c3 dxe5 8. dxe5 ♙d7 9. ♖g3

9. ♖e2 ♙c6 10. ♘f3 a4 11. ♙c2 ♙xf3=

9. — a4 10. ♙c2 ♙b5

White has got some problems because of the light squares of its position.

11. ♙g5 ♖d5 12. ♘a3 ♘8d7 13. ♙d1 ♖c6 14. ♘xb5 ♖xb5 15. ♘f3 ♖xb2 16. ♘d4∞

Degraeve — Dreev Arnheim 1988;

C) 5. — ♘c6 6. e6

White sacrifices a pawn to hinder Black's advance.

6. — fxe6 7. ♘f3 e5

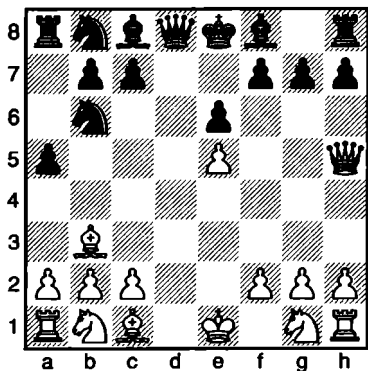
It is the correct move. Black has to give the pawn back that it can finish its advance in return.

a) 7. — g6 8. ♘g5→;

b) 7. — ♘a5?! 8. ♘g5 ♘xb3 9. axb3 ♘d5 10. 0-0 White's benefit is unquestionable. 10. — g6 11. ♙e1 ♙g7 12. c4 ♘f6 13. ♖e2 0-0 14. ♘xe6! Totsky — Minasian Moscow 1996

8. dxe5 d5 9. ♟c3 ♟g4 10. ♟xd5 e6
11. ♟xb6 ♟xd1† 12. ♟xd1 axb6 13.
♟e1 ♟xf3 14. gx f3 ♟xe5=
Strikovic — Ivanovic Niksic 1991

6. ♟h5 e6 7. dxe5 a5



It is the most thoroughly analyzed variation.

A) 7. — c5

It is less convincing.

8. ♟a3 ♟c6 9. ♟f3 ♟d4 10. ♟xd4
♟xd4 11. 0-0 ♟d7 12. c3 ♟e4 13.
♟c2 ♟c6 14. c4

White has a considerable positional advantage.

14. — a6 15. ♟el ♟c7 16. ♟d2 ♟c8
17. ♟c3±

de la Villa — Santo Roman Las Palmas 1991;

B) 7. — ♟c6!? 8. ♟f3 ♟d4

It makes the sharp position blunt.

9. ♟xd4 ♟xd4 10. 0-0

10. ♟c3 ♟d7 11. ♟xe6 ♟xe5†
12. ♟xe5 ♟xe5 13. ♟xc8 ♟xc8
14. 0-0 f6 ½-½ Totsky —
Freisler Czechia 1997

10. — g6 11. ♟f3 ♟g7 12. ♟d2 0-0
13. ♟c3 ♟h4∞

de la Villa — Oll Pamplona 1992

8. a4

It does not let Black get space (in contrast to the move a3) but this pawn, as it will be seen, is a serious weakness in White's camp at the same time.

8. a3 ♟c6 9. ♟f3 a4 10. ♟a2 ♟d4

It is a typical move in such positions, which exchanges the dangerous knight.

11. ♟xd4 ♟xd4 12. ♟e2 ♟a5 13. f4
♟d5 14. c3 ♟b6 15. c4 ♟e7 16.
♟e3 ♟c6

16. — c5 17. ♟c3 ♟f5 18.
0-0-0±

17. ♟c3 ♟f5 18. 0-0-0 ♟xe3 19.
♟xe3 ♟e7 20. ♟d3 b6∞

Summerscale — Zelcic Cannes 1997

8. — ♟a6

It is the better move.

8. — ♟c6 9. ♟f3 ♟d4?!

It just helps White to be more active.

9. — ♟d7 This move leads to an equal position. 10. ♖g5 ♙e7 11. ♙xe6 ♞dx5 12. ♞xe5 ♙xe6= Sax — Hazai Hungary 1974

10. ♞xd4 ♜xd4 11. 0-0 g6 12. ♜g5 ♙g7 13. ♞e1 ♞d7 14. ♙d2± Kruszyński — Szymczak Poland 1978

9. ♞f3

9. ♞c3

It is simpler than the move of the main line.

9. — ♞c5 10. ♖g5 ♙e7 11. ♞d1 ♙d7 12. ♞f3 ♙xg5 13. ♞xg5 ♜e7 14. 0-0 h6 15. ♞ge4 ♞xe4 16. ♞xe4 ♙c6 17. ♞fel ♙xe4 18. ♞xe4 0-0=

Although White's major pieces are threatening with an attack, they are not dangerous because of White's weaknesses on the back rank and its bishop is excluded. Fette — Kahn Budapest 1990

9. — ♞c5

The other possibility also seems to be adequate:

9. — g6 10. ♜h3 h6 11. ♞c3

11. ♖g5 ♙e7 12. ♙xe7 ♜xe7 13. 0-0 ♞c5=

11. — ♞c5 12. 0-0 ♞xb3 13. cxb3 ♞d5

White's attack can only be stopped in this way in the centre.

14. ♞d1 ♖g7 15. ♜g3 b6 16. ♞xd5 exd5 17. h4 c5 18. h5 g5 19. ♞h2 ♙e6±

Kotronias — Kakageldyev Manila 1992

10. ♞g5

10. ♙a2

After accepting of the pawn sacrifice White gets a dangerous initiative in most cases.

10. — ♙d7 11. ♞c3 ♞bxa4 12. ♖g5

12. ♞g5? ♜e7 13. ♞xa4 ♙xa4 14. ♙e3 g6 15. ♜e2 ♙c6± Black can keep the extra pawn without any problems. Milosevic — Baburin Leukerbad 1992

12. — ♜c8 13. ♞xa4 ♞xa4 14. 0-0-0= Adorján, Florián

10. — ♜e7 11. 0-0

11. ♞c3 g6 12. ♜e2 ♖g7 13. 0-0 ♙d7 14. ♙a2?!

White will not get enough compensation for the sacrificed pawn.

14. — ♞bxa4 15. ♞xa4 ♞xa4± Velikhanli — Loeffler Paris 1996

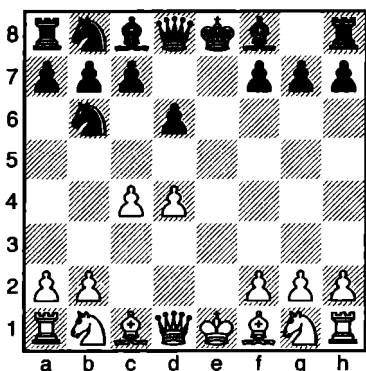
11. — ♙d7 12. ♞c3 ♙c6 13. ♙e3 g6 14. ♜h3 ♞bd7 15. f4 ♞xb3 16. cxb3 ♜b4 17. ♞acl ♙e7±

Strikovic — Zelcic Geneva 1991

To sum up, it can be stated that great number of lines are typical of this opening in which White gets lasting initiative, but the defensive side also has equal opportunities.

3.3.1 — 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. c4 ♘b6 5. exd6 exd6

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. c4 ♘b6 5. exd6 exd6



This move, which otherwise seems to be natural, is not too frequent nowadays. Usually there are slight differences between the lines, sometimes they even turn into each other. The main difference from the foregoing is that the earlier manners of playing cannot come into being now. This system has a symmetrical pawn structure with White's slight space advantage. So it results from this fact logically that Black has got less opportunities to take the initiative, but it will not get in a considerably disadvantageous position because of the closed character of the position. The fight takes place along the open e-file, and if White wants to win, it has to start a very

accurate play with its pieces avoiding the early exchanges.

6. ♘c3

A) 6. ♔d3?!

It is not too convincing.

6. — ♘c6 7. ♔e3 ♘b4 8. ♔e2 ♔f5 9. ♘a3

The building up of White's position is complicated.

9. — ♔e7 10. ♘f3 d5 11. c5 ♘d7 12. ♖b3 a5 13. 0-0 0-0 14. ♗fc1 c6 15. ♘b1 b5 16. a4 bxa4 17. ♗xa4 ♗c7 18. ♗a3 ♔f6=

Zapata — Miles Yopal 1997;

B) 6. ♘f3 ♔e7 7. ♔e2

White keeps back the move ♘c3 for a short time, but the character of the position will be similar to other lines'.

7. ♔e3 c6 8. b3 0-0 9. ♘c3 a5 10. ♔e2 ♘a6 11. 0-0 ♔f5 12. d5 c5 13. ♘e1 ♔f6 14. ♗d2 ♗d7 15. h3 ♗fe8 16. g4 ♔g6 17. a4∞ Polczin — Györköcs Budapest 1992

7. — 0-0 8. 0-0

It is difficult here to find the most hopeful way for Black.

8. — ♔f5

It presumably is the better solution. For the line 8. — ♔g4 see the variation 4. — ♔g4.

9. ♖c3 ♙f6 10. ♙e3 ♜c6 11. b3 d5
12. c5 ♜c8 13. ♜e1 h6 14. g4

14. ♞c1!?

14. — ♙h7 15. ♜g2 b6 16. ♜a4

16. cxb6 axb6 17. ♜f4 ♜8e7 18.
♙f3 ♜b4↑ Chekhov

16. — ♜b4 17. ♜e1

17. ♞d2 ♜c2 18. ♞ac1 ♜xe3 19.
♜xe3 ♜e7

17. — bxc5 18. ♜xc5 ♜d6 19.
♞d2

Weaknesses can be found in the positions of both sides give the opponents mutual chances. Yagupov — Balashov Moscow 1996;

C) 6. h3

It obviously is a useful move which does not leave the bishop out to g4. To exchange the pieces would be favourable to the side being in space disadvantage.

6. — ♙e7 7. ♜f3 0-0 8. ♙e2 ♙f5 9.
♜c3 ♙f6

a) 9. — c5 10. 0-0 ♜c6 11. ♙e3 ♞c8 12. d5± White has a considerable space advantage. The opportunities of the black knights are rather restricted. Wach — Varga, Z Balatonbereny 1996;

b) 9. — ♜c6 10. d5 ♜e5 11. ♜d4
♙d7

11. — ♙g6 12. b3 ♙f6 13. 0-0

♞e8 14. ♙e3±

12. b3 c6 13. dxc6 bxc6 14. 0-0
White can play without problems and in contrast to Black's pawns in the centre it has not got any weaknesses in its position. 14. — ♞e8 15. ♙e3 ♜g6 16. ♞d2± Sermek — Zelic Makarska 1996;

c) 9. — c6 10. 0-0 ♞e8 11. ♙e3 ♜8d7 12. b3 ♙f8 13. a4 a5 14. d5! The position of the knight getting to d4 will make amends to White for giving up the c5 point. 14. — ♜c5 15. ♜d4 ♙d7 16. ♙f3 ♞c7 17. ♞c2 ♜c8 18. ♜e4 ♜e7 19. ♙f4± Rogers — Tu Hoang Thong Singapore 1997

10. 0-0 ♞e8 11. ♙e3 ♜c6 12. ♞c1
h6

12. — d5? 13. c5 ♜c4 14. ♜xd5!

13. d5 ♜e5 14. ♜d4 ♙h7 15. b3
♜bd7 16. ♜a4 ♜c5=

With an approximately equal play.

6. — ♙e7 7. ♙e3

White can even choose among the following lines:

A) 7. ♜f3 0 0

7. — ♙g4 8. ♙c2 c6 9. b3 White was threatened by capturing the f3 knight and then losing its c4 pawn.

9. h3?! ♙x/3 10. ♙x/3? ♜xc4

9. — ♘8d7 10. h3 ♕h5 11. ♕e3±
Rogers — Helgason Malmö 1993

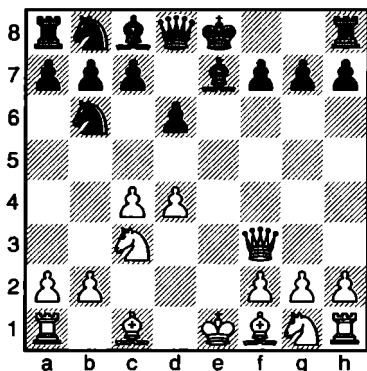
8. ♕e2 ♘c6 9. 0-0 ♕f5 10. d5 ♘e5
11. ♘d4 ♕d7 12. b3 ♘g6 13. ♕e3
♕g5 14. f4 ♕e8 15. ♖d2

The tactical chances are over thus
the advantage is given White by
Black's awkward situation.

15. — ♖e7 16. ♘c2 ♕f6 17. ♕ael
♕f5 18. ♕d3 ♖d7 19. a4±

Marciano — Solozhenkin St.
Petersburg 1996;

B) 7. ♖f3!?



White purpose is to increase the
pressure on the d5 point and to pre-
pare the castle to the queen side.

7. — ♘c6

7. — 0-0 8. ♕e3 c6 9. 0-0-0?!
d5 10. c5 ♘6d7 11. ♕d3 b6±
Camacho — Diaz Perez Pinar del

Rio 1991

8. ♕e3 0-0 9. 0-0-0

There are three different lines here:

9. — ♕f6

This is also a less convincing one.
White has two possibilities to get
to an advantageous position. But
let us see the other two lines first:

a) 9. — f5?! It gives up the e6
point. 10. g3 f4? 11. gxf4 ♕f5 12.
c5!± Black has to face serious
problems. 12. — ♘d7 13. ♕h3!
♕h8 14. d5 ♘cb8

a1) 14. — ♘b4? 15. ♕xf5 ♕xf5
16. ♖e4+ Blatny,P;

a2) 14. — ♘a5 15. ♕xf5 ♕xf5
16. ♖e4 ♖f8 17. b4+ Blatny,P

15. cxd6 cxd6 16. ♕xf5 ♕xf5 17.
♘ge2± And the knight getting to
e6 through the d4 square will
bring the fight to an issue.
Korchnoi — Miles Biel 1992;

b) 9. — ♕e6 It is an advancing
move seeming to be natural but it
gives White dangerous initiative.
10. c5

10. b3? a5 11. a4 d5 12. c5 ♘c8!
13. ♘ge2 ♕g5 14. ♕b2 ♘b4
Chernishov — Zelic Dakovica
1994 15. ♘f4± Lalic,B

10. — ♘c4? It is a blunder. The
positions of the black pieces are
rather uncertain which is exploit-

ed by White.

10. — $\text{d7}\pm$ Leyva

11. f4! f6 12. d5 d4e5 13. e2 g6 14. e3 xc3 15. bxc3 f6 16. dxe6 $\text{xc3}\dagger$ 17. c2+ Leyva — Medina Cuba 1994;

10. h4

10. d3 xd4 11. xd4 xd4 12. $\text{hx7}\dagger$ hx7 13. $\text{h5}\dagger$ g8 14. xd4 f6 15. $\text{f3}\pm$ Chernishov, Raetsky

10. — e6

10. — h6 11. g4 hxh4 12. $\text{h3}\infty$ 11. b3 d5 12. c5 c8 13. h3 b6 14. $\text{g5}\pm$ Chernishov — Kopylov Voronezh 1993;

C) 7. d3

The idea of White's move is to hinder the advance of the black c8 bishop which can be carried out at the expense of losing important tempos.

7. — c5

7. — c6 8. ge2 g4 9. f3 h5 10. 0-0 g6 11. b3 a5 12. e3 b4 13. xg6 hxg6 14. d2 0-0 15. d5 d7 16. e4 c5 17. 2g3 e8 18. xc5 dxc5 19. $\text{e4}\pm$ Rogers — Varga,Z Budapest 1991

8. d5 0-0 9. ge2 d8d7 10. f4 f6 11. c2

Black's position is extremely passive.

11. — b8 12. h3 a8 13. g4 gh8 14. b3 c7 15. g5 fe8 16. $\text{b2}\pm$ Rodriguez,A — Rausis Ubeda 1997

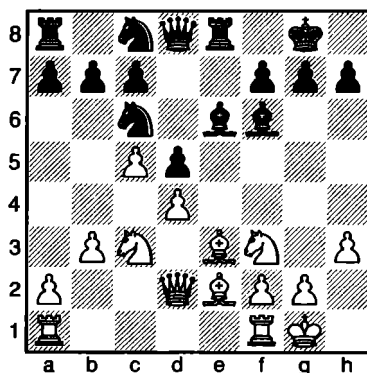
7. — 0-0

This is the healthiest move.

A) 7. — c6 8. f3 g4 9. b3 0-0 10. e2

10. $\text{h3!}?$

10. — e8 11. d2 f6 12. 0-0 d5 13. c5 c8 14. h3 e6!



It is the perfect move. To capture the knight is disadvantageous to Black because of the weakness of the d5 pawn, and to retreat to h5 is inconsistent with the plan moving ce7 and g6 .

15. b4 a6

15. — $\text{e7!}?$ 16. b5 a5 17. xd5?! xd5 18. xa5 xe3

19. fxe3 ♗d5 20. ♖c3 ♖e7=

Black has got an excellent play for the pawn.

16. b5?!

16. ♖ab1 ♗f5 17. ♖b2 ♗e4?!

With Black's good counterplay.

16. — axb5 17. ♘xb5 ♘a5 18. ♗f4 ♖e7 19. ♖fel b6

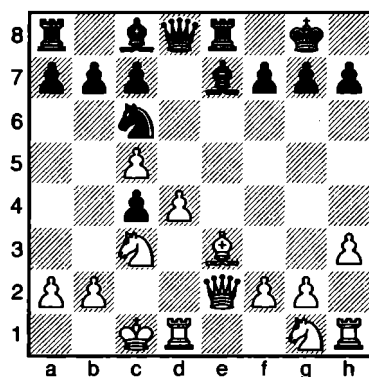
Black gets a comfortable play on the queen side. Djurhuus — Tisdall Gausdal 1996;

B) 7. — c6 8. b3 d5

It is a dynamic plan. Black takes the initiative on the queen side without delay.

9. c5 ♘d6d7 10. ♘f3 b6 11. cxb6 axb6 12. ♗d3 ♗a6 13. 0-0 0-0 14. ♖c1 ♗xd3 15. ♖xd3 ♘a6= Grosar — Hug Pula 1997

8. ♖d2 ♘c6 9. 0-0-0 ♖e8 10. h3 d5 11. c5 ♘c4 12. ♗xc4 dxc4 13. ♖e2



13. ♘f3!?

Although Black has dangerous threats, White's chances are better.

13. — ♗f5 14. g4 ♗g6 15. h4 ♘b4 16. h5 ♗d3 17. ♘e5 ♗f6 18. f4± Bischoff,K

13. — ♗f5 14. ♖xc4 ♗g5 15. ♘f3 ♖xe3!

15. — ♗xe3† 16. fxe3 ♖xe3 17. ♖hel±

It provides a dangerous initiative for White.

16. fxe3

16. ♘xg5? ♖xc3† 17. ♖xc3 ♖xg5† —+

16. — ♗xe3† 17. ♖d2

White has to give the exchange back.

17. ♘d2!?

Black has got a pawn and an active play in return for the exchange.

17. — ♖xd4 18. ♖xd4 ♘xd4= Donev

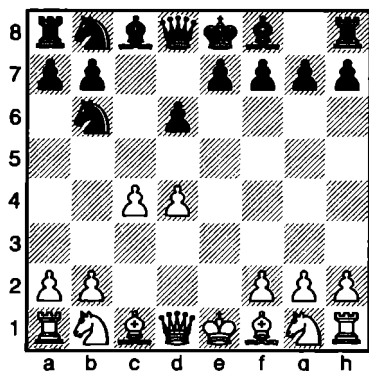
17. — ♗xd2† 18. ♘xd2 ♗e6! 19. ♖d3

Donev — Bischoff Austria 1994

19. ♖d3 ♘b4 20. ♖b5=

1. 1.2 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. c4
 ♗b6 5. exd6 cxd6

1. c4 ♗f6 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. c4
 ♗b6 5. exd6 cxd6



For a long time this move was regarded to be weaker than the capturing 5. — exd6, but this judgement is reconsidered by the up-to-date tournament practice. Due to the asymmetric pawn structure such double-edged positions come usually into being which are much more complicated than those formed by the move 5. — exd6. Thus Black chooses this move in such cases when it endeavours to win at all costs. First of all we are dealing with the sublines which are almost always controlled by White since it

rather has got the opportunities to turn aside. Black has got less chances to change the progress of the game, but it does not mean that it only makes defensive moves. The main lines turn over other systems (especially the one beginning with the move 4. — g6), so they are discussed later in the suitable part of the book.

6. ♗c3

6. d5

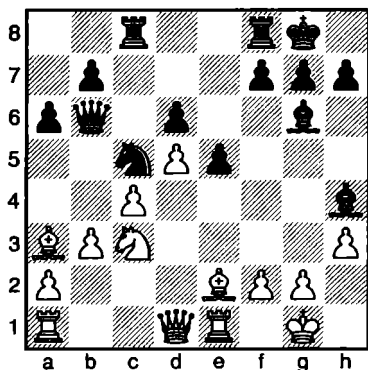
By this move, which has the basic idea of getting space and hindering Black's free advance, White pledges itself to a sharp struggle. During the further moves White attacks on the queen side while Black tries to explode the centre, so it is not surprising that a double-edged fight takes place very soon in some game which spreads over the whole board.

6. — e5 7. ♗c3 ♗e7 8. ♗d3

8. ♗f3 0-0

8. — ♗g4 9. h3 ♗h5 10. ♗e2
 ♗d7 11. b3 0-0 12. 0-0 ♗c5
 13. ♗a3 ♗c8 14. ♗e1 ♗g6 15.
 ♗d3 ♗bd7 16. ♗xc5 ♗xc5 17.
 ♗e1 a6 18. ♗b2 ♗b6 19. ♗a3
 ♗h4!! It is a move with forcing
 power. The rook has to with—

draw to the f1 square.



20. ♖f1 e4 21. ♘h1 ♖fe8 22. b4 ♘d3∞ Gallagher — Krizsany 1994

9. h3 ♘d8d7 10. ♖e2 a5 11. 0-0 f5 12. b3 ♘c5 13. a3 e4 14. ♘d4 f4 15. f3 e3 16. ♖b1 ♖h4⌘ Black has a protected passed pawn on e3 which paralyzed White on the dark squares together with the h4 bishop. Atlas — Preissmann Switzerland 1996;

8. — 0-0 9. ♘ge2 f5 10. b3 a5 11. 0-0 ♘a6 12. f4

It stops Black's attack in the centre.

12. — ♘d7 13. ♖e3 ♘dc5 14. ♖c2 ♖f6 15. ♖c1 ♖d7 16. ♘h1 ♖e7 17. ♖d2 ♖ae8±

Fossan — Agdestein Norway 1994

6. — g6 7. ♖e3

A) 7. ♖g5!?

It is an energetic move.

7. — ♖g7 8. ♖c1 0-0!? 9. ♖e2 h6 10. ♖e3 d5 11. c5 ♘c4 12. ♖xc4 dxc4 13. ♘ge2 ♘c6

13. — ♖f5 14. ♖d2 ♘h7 15. 0-0 ♘c6 16. ♖fd1 ♖d3 17. ♘f4 ♘xd4 18. ♘xd3 cxd3 19. ♖xd3 e5 20. ♘e4± Chekhov

14. ♖a4 ♘a5 15. 0-0 b6 16. ♖fd1 ♖d7 17. ♖b4 ♖b8 18. cxb6 ♖xb6

18. — axb6 19. d5±

19. ♖xe7±

And Black has not got enough compensation for the sacrificed pawn. Kaminski — Kveinys Poland 1995;

B) 7. a4

As we have seen it to pursuit the b6 knight is an acceptable plan, but this move together with c4 seems to be strange a little, as it surrenders the b4 point to Black. But in the case of White's accurate play Black can turn it for its own benefit very seldom.

7. — a5

7. — ♖g7 8. a5 ♘6d7 9. ♘f3 0-0 10. ♖a3 ♘f6 11. d5 e5 12. ♖e2 ♘a6 13. 0-0 h6 14. ♘e1 ♘e8 15. ♖e3 ♘ac7 16. ♘c2 f5 17. f3 ♘h7 18. ♖d2 ♖f7 19. b4±

With Black's superior position. Aleksandria — Gipslis USSR 1997

8. c5

It creates complications which almost cannot be surveyed.

8. — ♠d6d7

8. — dxc5 9. ♠b5† ♠d6d7 10. ♠f3 cxd4 11. ♠xd4†

9. cxd6 exd6 10. ♠f3 ♠e7†

10. — ♠g7 11. ♠g5 f6 12. ♠f4±

11. ♠e2 ♠g7 12. ♠d5 ♠d8 13. ♠g5 ♠f6 14. ♠xf6† ♠xf6 15. ♠h6 ♠c6 16. 0-0±

Donev — Regez Bad Ragaz 1993;

C) 7. ♠d3 ♠g7 8. ♠ge2

The basic thought behind the move is that the c8 bishop has not got a really good place to move and if Black does not take steps to solve this problem, it can get a disadvantageous position easily.

8. — ♠c6

8. — 0-0 9. 0-0 d5 10. c5 ♠d6d7 11. ♠g5 h6 12. ♠e3 ♠c6 13. ♠b5 ♠f6 14. f3 ♠f5 15. ♠d2 ♠h7 16. ♠g3 ♠d7 17. ♠ab1 ♠a5 18. b3 b6 19. ♠fd1 ♠xb5 20. ♠xb5 bxc5∞ With mutual chances. Spraggett — Nataf Enghien 1997

9. d5!?

9. ♠e3 0-0 10. 0-0 d5 11. c5 ♠d7 12. ♠b5 ♠f6 13. f3 ♠d7 14. ♠cl ♠e8 15. ♠d2 e5 16. ♠fd1 e4= Motwani — Gluckman Yerevan

1996

9. — ♠e5 10. b3 ♠g4 11. ♠b2 ♠c8 12. h3 ♠xd3† 13. ♠xd3 ♠xe2

13. — ♠f5?! In the case of taking the bishop back White would get an excellent play by 14. ♠d2± with further 0-0, ♠fe1 and ♠d4.

14. ♠xe2 0-0 15. 0-0 ♠e8 16. ♠ad1±

Mikhailchishin — Krizsany Kecs-kemet 1991;

D) 7. h4

Making the move White changes the strategic ideas usually accepted in the Alekhine's Defence very much, but the chances remain approximately equal.

7. — h6 8. h5 g5 9. ♠d3 ♠c6 10. ♠ge2 ♠g7 11. ♠e3 d5!

It is a typical counteraction in these positions.

12. c5 ♠d7 13. ♠cl ♠xc5 14. dxc5 d4∞

Meier — Bagirov Berlin 1991;

E) 7. d5

White's plan is similar to the one which was discussed by the line 6. d5 some moves earlier.

7. — ♠g7 8. ♠ge2 0-0 9. ♠d4 e5 10. dxe6 ♠xe6

Although it gives up the bishop pair

Black can get some counterplay in the centre in this way.

10. — fxe6!? 11. ♙e2 ♘c6 12. ♘xc6 bxc6 13. 0-0 d5±

11. ♘xe6 ♙e7 12. ♙e2 ♙xe6 13. 0-0 ♘c6

13. — ♘xc4? 14. ♘d5 ♙c8 15. ♙e1 ♘e5 16. f4→ Dolmatov

14. ♘b5 ♙ad8 15. ♙e1 ♙f6 16. ♙b1 d5 17. c5 ♘c4 18. b3 ♘4e5 19. f4?! ♘d7 20. b4 b6?

Dvoirys — Svidler Novgorod 1995
20. — a6! 21. ♘d6 ♘xb4! 22. ♙xb4 ♙c3→ Dolmatov

F) 7. h3 ♙g7 8. ♘f3 0-0 9. ♙e3 ♘c6 10. ♙c1

It is a fashionable continuation which plays a considerable role among the lines nowadays.

10. — e5?!N 11. dxe5

11. d5 This is the consistent move making 10. ♙c1 more meaningful. 11. — ♘e7 12. ♙e2

12. c5!? dxc5 13. d6 ♘f5 14. ♙xc5 ♙e6∞ Chekhov

12. — ♘f5 13. ♙g5 ♙f6 Black exchanges its bishop in the interest of decreasing the tension in the centre. 14. ♙xf6 ♙xf6 15. ♘e4 ♙d8 16. 0-0 ♘d7 17. g4 ♘h4 18. ♘xd6 f5 19. ♘xh4 ♙xh4 20. c5 ♘f6± Serper — Yermo-

linsky Tilburg 1994

11. — dxe5 12. c5

12. ♙xd8?! ♙xd8 13. ♙e2 ♘d4± Chekhov

12. — ♘d7 13. ♙c4 ♙a5!? 14. a3

14. 0-0?! ♘xc5 15. b4 ♘xb4 16. ♘d5 ♘ba6± White has not got a play with the desired value for the sacrificed pawn.

14. — ♙4 15. ♘d2 ♘xc5 16. b4 ♙xa3 17. ♙xc5

17. ♘b5 ♘d3†!

17. — ♙xc3 18. ♙xf8 ♘xf8±

Zagrebelny — Remizov St. Petersburg 1994

7. — ♙g7 8. ♙c1 0-0

8. — ♘c6

This knight move is premature, the immediate castling would have been better.

9. d5 ♘e5 10. f4!?

White gets the tempos one after another. Of course the c4 pawn cannot be captured because of the losing of piece in two moves.

10. — ♘g4 11. ♙d4 ♘f6 12. ♘f3 0-0 13. ♙e2 e6!

It is the only chance.

14. dxe6 ♙xe6 15. b3 ♘c8!?

15. — d5 It would have been more consistent 16. c5 ♘bd7 17.

0 0 ♖c8 18. ♜b5 ♜e4 19. ♜xa7
♜xd4† 20. ♜xd4 ♜xc5 21. f5†
Chekhov.

16. 0 0 ♜c7 17. ♜g5 ♜c6 18. ♜xe6
18. ♜f2 d5 19. c5 d4 20. ♜ce4
♜d5

18. — fxe6 19. ♜f2±

Akopian — Minasian Yerevan 1995

9. b3!? e5

The following other lines occurred in the tournament practice:

A) 9. — f5!?

It is an aggressive attacking move but in the case of White's accurate play there will be weaknesses remain in Black's position.

10. ♜f3!? f4

10. — e5?! 11. dxe5 dxe5 12.
♞xd8 ♞xd8 13. c5 ♜6d7 14.
♜c4† White's play is simple,
Black has not got any chance to
turn aside. 14. — ♜f8 15. ♜g5
♜f6 16. ♜f7 ♞e8 17. ♜b5±

11. ♜d2 ♜c6 12. d5 ♜e5 13. ♜xe5!
♜xe5 14. ♜e2 e6 15. dxe6

15. ♜f3!? exd5 16. ♜xd5 ♜e6 17.
♜a5!±

15. — ♜xe6 16. ♜f3 d5±

Ivanov, V — Chekhov Moscow
1995;

B) 9. — ♜c6 10. d5 ♜e5 11. ♜e2 e6
12. f4 ♜ed7 13. dxe6 ♞e7 14. ♜b5

White can thwart Black's effort to be more active in the centre easily and after the exchanges it gets an advantageous position.

14. — ♞xe6 15. ♜d4 ♞e4 16. ♜xg7
♜xg7 17. ♞d4† ♞xd4 18. ♜xd4±

Mitkov — Baburin Yerevan 1996

10. dxe5 dxe5 11. ♞xd8

This line is slightly lower-key than other opportunity but White takes less risk in this way.

11. c5

Keeping the queens rather serve Black's interests

11. — ♜6d7 12. ♜c4 ♜c6 13. ♜f3
♞a5 14. 0-0 ♜xc5 15. b4! ♜xb4 16.
♜d5 ♜c6 17. ♜e7† ♜h8!

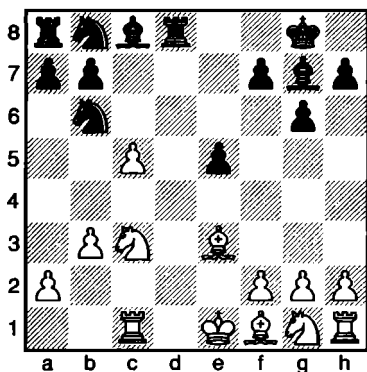
The black king moves away the diagonal of the bishop for after capturing the knight White would win by 18. ♜xc5.

18. ♞d6

18. ♜xc6 bxc6 19. ♜g5 ♜e6†
and Black keeps the extra pawn.

18. — ♜e4 19. ♜xc6 bxc6 20. ♞xc6
♜f5 21. ♜x17 ♜ac8 22. ♞d5 ♞xd5
23. ♜xd5 ♜c3 24. ♜b7 ♜c7†
Weinzettl Krizsany Austria 1996

11. — ♖xd8 12. c5!?



Black lags behind in the advance a little on the queen side.

12. — ♗d6d7 13. ♕c4 ♗c6 14. ♗f3± h6

A) 14. — ♗d4?

It cannot decrease White pressure at all.

15. ♗g5 ♖f8 16. ♗ce4 ♗f5 17. 0-0 17. ♗xf7!? ♖xf7 18. ♗g5 ♗h6∞

17. — ♗f6 18. ♗d6! ♗xd6 19. cxd6±

Dzindzikhshvili — Alburt USA 1996;

B) 14. — ♗a5!?

Here White also has the better chances.

15. ♕e2 h6 16. 0-0 f5 17. ♖fd1 ♗c6 18. g3 e4 19. ♗d4 ♗xd4 20. ♕xd4±

Finkel,A

15. ♗e4 ♗a5

15. — ♗f8 16. ♗d6 ♖d7 17. 0-0 ♖e7 18. ♗xc8 ♖xc8 19. ♖fd1=

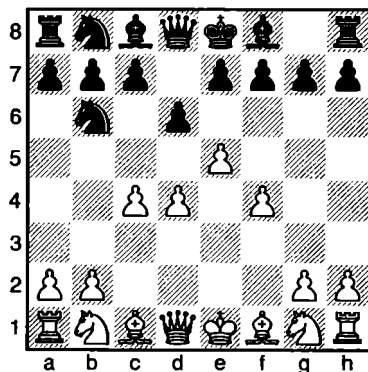
Black's plan to move ♗e6-d4 is sufficient for equilibrating the game. Gross — Bagirov Berlin 1996

16. ♕d5 ♗f6 17. ♗xf6† ♕xf6 18. ♖d1 ♗g7 19. 0-0 ♖e8 20. ♗d2±

Finkel — Drazic Nova Gorica 1997

3.3.3 — 2. e5 ♗d5 3. d4 d6 4. c4 ♗b6 5. f4 g6

1. e4 ♗f6 2. e5 ♗d5 3. d4 d6 4. c4 ♗b6 5. f4



By this move we have arrived at the four-pawn system of the Alekhine Defence, which is the oldest and the most aggressive variant of it. This

captivating continuation, which leads to uncertain complications in most cases, has come to a serious crisis by this time. This system can be seen now and then in major tournaments, for on the basis of experiences it seems to be sure that it gives the defensive side a complex and hopeful play in return for the lost tempos. First we are dealing with those moves when one of the opponents wants to go off the beaten tracks.

5. — g6

A) 5. — ♖f5

Black puts off the the pawn moves de5, fe5 but this waiting is more favourable for White in accordance with our present knowledge.

6. ♖c3 e6 7. ♖f3

7. ♖e3 This is the exact move order. 7. — ♖a6?! The main scene of the fight is the centre and Black places its knight on the edge of the board yet.

7. — ♖c6 8. ♖f3 d5 *It is an unusual move in this system.* 9. c5 ♖c4 10. ♖xc4 dxc4 11. ♖a4 ♖d3 12. ♖d2 ♖h4† 13. g3 ♖h5 14. ♖xc4 0-0-0

14. — ♖xc5 15. dxc5 ♖f3∞

15. ♖f2± *Koch — Boulard France 1989*

8. ♖f3 c5 9. exd6

9. ♖e2 ♖e7 10. dxc5 *White gets the better position without difficulties having the more active pieces and the space advantage.*

10. — dxc5 11. a3 0-0 12. ♖b3 ♖d7 13. 0-0 ♖ad8 14. ♖fd1 ♖c7 15. h3 ♖c8 16. ♖d2 ♖b8 17. g4± *Yudasin — Barkovsky Leningrad 1984*

9. — ♖xd6 10. ♖e2 0-0 11. 0-0 ♖e7 12. ♖b5 ♖b8 13. ♖c1 ♖d7 14. a3 ♖d8 15. ♖e1 ♖g6 16. ♖e5 cxd4 17. ♖xg6 hxg6 18. ♖xd4± *Mohammad,S — Gausel Yerevan 1996*

7. — dxe5 8. fxe5 ♖b4 9. a3

9. ♖d3 White exchanges the bishops moving along the light squares strengthening its position in the centre by this. 9. — c5 10. ♖xf5 exf5 11. ♖g5 ♖d7 12. 0-0 0-0 13. d5 ♖xc4 Black has an extra pawn but it lags behind in the advance very much. 14. ♖e2 ♖xc3 15. ♖xc4 ♖xb2 16. ♖ab1 ♖d4† 17. ♖xd4 cxd4 18. e6± *Morozevich — Bagirov Moscow 1995*

9. — ♖xc3† 10. hxc3 ♖c6 11. ♖e3 ♖d7 12. ♖d2 ♖a5 13. a4?

13. ♖c2

13. 0 0 14. ♖c2 ♖c6 15. ♖f3 ♖e8 16. ♖c2 c5

Black has an equal play.

17. d5 ♖c8 18. d6 ♘d7 19. ♙f4
♘c6±

Hirche — Bagirov Berlin 1997;

B) 5. — g5

It is only mentioned because it occurred in a game. Otherwise it has no theoretical value at all.

6. ♖h5 dxe5 7. c5 ♘d5 8. fxe5 ♘f4
9. ♙xf4 gxf4 10. ♙c4 e6 11. ♘e2
♘c6 12. ♘bc3±

Durao — Pomar Madrid 1983

6. ♘c3

The variation 6. ♘f3 ♙g7 7. b3 dxe5
8. fxe5 c5 9. d5 turns to the line 3.
c4 ♘b6 4. b3.

6. — ♙g7 7. ♙e3 0-0

A) 7. — ♘a6?

To develop the knight on the edge of the board is usually not recommended. It proves to be a mistake here as well.

8. ♘f3 ♙g4 9. h3 ♙xf3 10. ♖xf3
♖c8 11. c5 dxc5 12. dxc5 ♘b4 13.
0-0-0±

Krecak — Mayhrofer 1984;

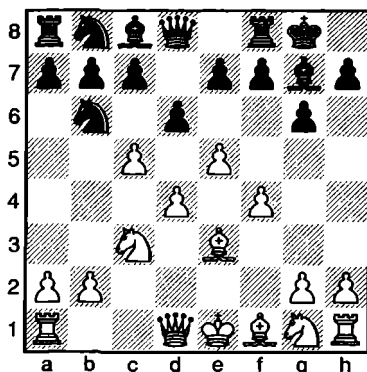
B) 7. — f6 8. exd6?

White decreases the tension unnecessarily. (8. c5!?)

8. — exd6 9. c5 ♘6d7 10. ♙c4 c6
11. f5 ♖e7 12. ♙e6 gxf5 13. d5
♘xc5 14. ♖h5† ♘f8 15. ♙xc5
♙e6±

Bucker — Westerinen Nordwalde
1985

8. c5



White launches an attack in the centre without delay.

8. ♘f3?!

It is more advisable to play the main line.

8. — ♙e6

This interesting bishop move causes White many troubles.

9. ♘d2?

A) 9. ♖b3?! It gives Black the initiative. 9. — h6?! It is an unnecessary losing of tempo, since Black has not been threatened by

♭g5 as we could see it in the foregoing.

9. — a5 10. ♖g5

10. a4?! ♖a6=

10. — a4! *And as it turns out this variation does not give White anything and it even leads to Black's advantage.*

10. — ♙f5 11. e6!

11. ♖xe6 axb3 12. ♖xd8 ♙xd8 13. a3 ♖c6 14. 0-0-0 ♖a5 *This closed position is much more favourable for knights, so White's position cannot be saved.* 15. c5 dxc5 16. dxc5 ♙xd1† 17. ♖xd1

17. ♖xd1 ♖bc4 18. ♙c1 ♙d8†
19. ♖e1 f6-+

17. — ♖bc4 18. ♙d4 ♙d8 19. ♙c3 ♙d5 20. ♙b4 g5 *The ultimate blow. White has no chance to protect its position effectively on both sides.* 21. fxg5

21. ♙xc4 ♖xc4 22. g3 gxf4 23. gxf4 ♙h6 24. ♙f1 ♙xe5-+

21. — ♙xe5 22. ♙xc4 ♖xc4 23. ♙e1 e6 24. h4 ♙d5† *Brener — Pushkhin USSR 1988;*

10. ♙d1 a5 11. a3 a4 12. ♙a2 c6 13. ♙d3?! d5 14. c5 ♖c4 15. ♙xc4 dxc4 16. 0-0 b5= *Delnef — Jung Mainz 1986;*

B) 9. b3 *It is the most natural line.*

9. — c5 10. dxc5 ♖d6d7 *Black*

sacrifices a pawn to get the initiative. 11. cxd6 exd6 12. ♙xd6 ♖xe5 13. ♙xd8 ♖xf3† 14. gxf3 ♙xd8 15. ♙c1 ♖c6 16. ♖f2 ♖d4= *Gipslis — Li Wenling Luzern 1993*

9. — dxe5

Black demolishes the centre and gets the better position.

10. fxe5 c5 11. d5 ♙f5 12. ♙f4 e6† *Ivanchuk — Sergeev USSR 1984*

8. — dxc5

8. — ♖d6d7

Black tries to keep the position closed for some time but this is not enough for making the game equal either.

9. ♖f3 e6

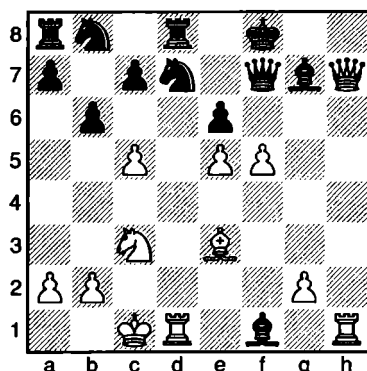
9. — b6!? *This move offers the most opportunities.* 10. b4 ♙b7 11. ♙e2 a5 12. a3 bxc5 13. bxc5 dxc5 14. dxc5 ♖a6 15. ♙b1 ♖axc5 16. 0 0 c6 17. ♙d4 ♙c8 18. ♙b5 ♙d8= *Rogers — Loeffler WAZ 1996* *White must not capture the knight by 19. ♙xc5 because of 19. — ♖b6! and finally Black would win.*

10. h4 dxc5 11. dxc5 ♙e7 12. h5

White starts an endless attack with tactical blows.

12. ♙d8 13. ♙c2 b6 14. ♖g5 ♙a6

15. ♖xh7! ♜xh7 16. hxg6† ♜g8
17. gxh7† ♜xf7 18. 0-0-0 ♙xf1 19.
♜h7† ♜f8 20. f5!



One might as well be hung for a sheep as a lamb, it opens the f-file and the c1-h6 diagonal by one move.

20. — ♙xg2 21. fxe6 ♜xe6 22.
♜h1† ♙xf1 23. ♜xf1† ♖f6 24.
♙h6+

Minasian — Gukasian Armenia
1987

9. dxc5 ♘d6d7

It chooses the lesser of two evils.

9. — ♜xd1†?

This move carries serious consequences.

10. ♜xd1 ♘d6d7 11. ♘d5+

10. h4 c6 11. h5 ♜a5 12. a3?!

It is not the most accurate move.

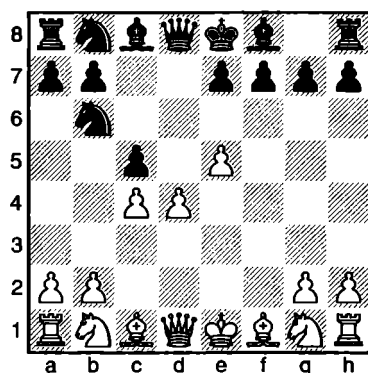
12. ♜a4! ♜xa4 13. ♖xa4 Rogers

12. — ♜d8 13. ♜a4 ♜xa4 14.
♖xa4 ♖f8 15. h6 ♙h8 16. ♖f3 ♖a6
17. ♙c4±

Rogers — Depasquale Toowoomba
1986

3.3.4.1 — 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. c4
♘b6 5. f4 dxe5 6. fxe5 c5

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. c4
♘b6 5. f4 dxe5 6. fxe5 c5



This consistent way of playing (i. e. to attack the white pawn chain immediately) is not a new system and it did not really spread among the followers of Alekhine Defence yet. This thing can be explained by the fact that the play becomes very complex and Black usually lags

behind in the fight going on for the centre, and in most cases the games lead to White's advantage.

7. d5

It is a natural move for the sake of making the positions of White's pawns solid and controlling the more important centre squares in the meantime.

A) 7. dxc5?

So Black can achieve its purpose at once.

7. — ♖xd1† 8. ♜xd1 ♞a4! 9. ♞c3 ♞xc5 10. ♙e3 ♞ca6 11. ♞f3 ♙d7†
Tochtermann — Sibenhaar Mainz 1984;

B) 7. ♞f3 cxd4 8. ♖xd4 ♖xd4 9. ♞xd4 ♞c6 10. ♞b5

Black has to go through hard moments here.

10. — ♜d8 11. ♞1c3 ♞xe5

11. — a6?! 12. ♙e3 ♞d7 13. 0-0-0

12. ♙f4 ♞bd7

12. — ♞exc4? Being greedy commands a high price. 13. ♙c7†! ♜d7 14. ♙xb6 ♞xb6 15. 0-0-0† ♜c6 16. ♙e2+ Bagirov

13. 0-0-0 f6 14. ♙e2 e6 15. ♙xe5 fxe5 16. ♙f3 a6 17. ♞d6 ♙xd6 18.

♙xd6 ♜e7 19. ♙hd1 ♙b8 20. ♞e4 ♙f8=

Velimirovic — Bagirov Palma de Mallorca 1989

7. — e6

7. — g6

The aim is similar to the main line's: Black pokes the white pawn and advances its forces wholly in the meantime. Though by developing the bishop on g7 Black found a place for its bishop and it attacks the e5 pawn too but it does not cause White any particular problem by it.

8. ♞c3 ♙g7 9. ♙f4 0-0 10. ♖d2 e6 11. 0-0-0

It is the better move. White exploiting its advantage in the advance sharpens the position.

11. d6 Although this move still leads to White's advantage, Black has some spare resources in this line. 11. — ♞c6 12. ♞f3 ♞d7 13. ♙e3 f6 14. 0-0-0

14. exf6 ♖xf6 15. ♙g5 ♖f7

14. — fxe5 15. ♙h6 ♞d4 16. ♙xg7 ♜xg7 17. ♞xe5 White's benefit is beyond doubt, it is rather difficult to counter-balance the weakness of the e6 pawn. 17. — ♞f5 18. ♙e1 ♖g5† 19. ♙d2 ♙e3

19. — ♞d4!?

20. ♖xe3 ♜xe3 21. ♜f3± Klinger — Bischoff Zug 1985;

11. — exd5

11. — f6 12. ♜f3 fxe5 13. ♙xe5 exd5 14. ♙xg7 ♜xg7 15. cxd5 ♙f5 16. ♙d3± Koch — Dubois France 1994

12. cxd5 ♙g4

A) 12. — c4 It does not seem to be good for the first sight either. There is a big trouble if you have to make such move. 13. h3

13. ♜f3 ♙g4 14. ♙h6 ♙xf3 15. ♙xg7 ♙xd1? *Black loses the game at once in this way, but it would have had a hopeless situation after the moves 15. — ♜g7 16. gf3 as well. 16. ♙f6+ Solomon — Kanikevich Sydney 1991*

13. — ♜8d7 14. ♜f3 ♜c5 15. g4 ♙d7 16. ♙h6 ♜ca4 17. ♙xg7 ♜xg7

17. — ♜xc3?? 18. ♖xc3 ♜xg7 19. e6†—

18. ♜e4 c3 19. bxc3 ♖e7 20. d6 ♖e6 21. ♜eg5 ♖e8 22. h4± Koch — Hauchard Montpellier 1991;

B) 12. — ♜8d7 Black has no reason to be glad here either. 13. ♜f3 ♙e8 14. e6 fxe6 15. dxe6 ♙xe6 16. ♜g5±

13. ♙e1 c4∞ 14. h3 ♙f5 15. g4 ♙d3 16. ♙xd3 cxd3 17. ♖xd3+—

Ilincic — Marinkovic Vrnjacka Banja 1989

8. ♜c3 exd5 9. cxd5 c4

This is the only continuation which can be played indeed. Black opens the diagonal for its f8 bishop.

9. — ♖h4†?!

Black is trying to initiate an active play, but it cannot meet with success because of the premature queen move.

10. g3 ♖d4 11. ♙b5†

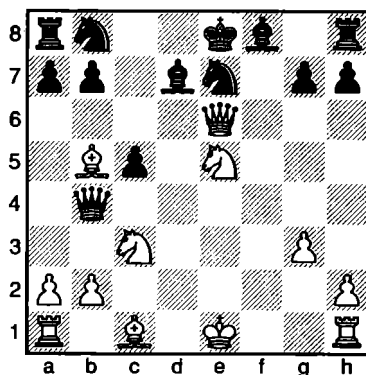
So White takes over the control.

11. ♙f4 g5 12. ♙xg5 ♖xe5† 13. ♖e2±

11. — ♙d7 12. ♖e2 ♜xd5 13. e6 ♙xb5

It also leads a quick defeat.

13. — fxe6 14. ♖xe6† ♜e7 15. ♜f3 ♖b4 16. ♜e5!



It puts another piece into action

having several different threats: it attacks the pinned bishop, shows the weakness of the f7 point and gives the f1 rook the opportunity to attack the black king position immediately along the f-file in the case of castling.

16. a3 ♖xb5!

16. — ♙xb5

16. — ♙c6 17. ♙g5 ♖xb2 18. ♙xc6† bxc6 19. 0-0+

17. ♙g5 ♖xb2 18. ♙xb5 White counting accurately gives Black a checkmate by its remained few pieces at the end of the struggle.

18. — ♖xa1†

18. — ♖xb5 19. 0-0-0+

Bryson

19. ♖f2 ♖xh1

19. — ♖b2† 20. ♖e3 ♖xb5 21. ♙d1+- *Bryson*

20. ♖c8†! ♙xc8 21. ♙c7#
Bryson

14. ♖xb5† ♙c6

14. — ♖d8 15. ♙g5† f6 16. ♙ge2 ♖e5 17. 0-0-0+

15. ♖xb7+-

Chaplin — Gantet Paris 1991

10. ♙f3

It is the move applied most frequently, but the other lines are very interesting as well.

A) 10. ♙e3?! ♙b4 11. ♙xb6

This manoeuvre is obviously disadvantageous; it gives up the bishop pair and let Black develop.

11. — ♖xb6 12. ♖d2 0-0 13. ♙f3 ♙g4 14. h3 ♙xf3 15. gx3 ♙d7

White is missing its bishop moving on dark squares very much.

16. f4 ♙c5 17. 0-0-0 ♙e4 18. ♖d4 ♙xc3 19. ♖xb6 ♙xa2†?

It is an unnecessary intermediate move by which Black loses important tempos.

19. — axb6 After this move Black would have had chances to win. 20. bxc3 ♙xc3 21. ♖c2 ♙a3 22. ♙xc4? ♙c8 23. d6 ♙xc4 24. d7 ♙d4† 25. ♖d2 ♙a8 26. ♖d3 b5+- van der Tak

20. ♖b1 axb6 21. ♙xc4 ♙c3† 22. bxc3 ♙xc3 23. d6 ♙a4 24. e6±

Aleksandrov — Shabalov Riga 1987;

B) 10. d6

This line is recommended for chess players having strong nerves and enjoying positions which are full of tactical opportunities.

10. — ♙c6

The other move is a mistake: 10. — g6 11. ♙f3 ♙g7 12. ♙g5 f6 13. exf6 ♙xf6 14. ♙xf6 ♖xf6 15. ♙xc4 ♙xc4 16. ♖a4† ♙c6 17.

♚xc4± Zude — Ruhrig Germany
1987

11. ♙f4

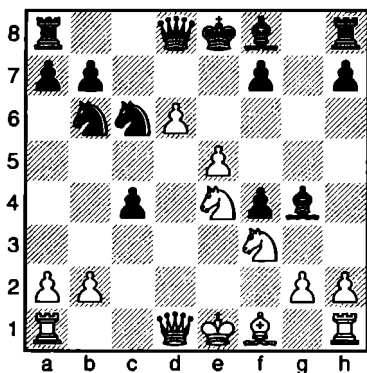
This is the best answer undoubtedly.

A) 11. ♘f3 The classical continuation cannot be successful now, since White has to face an unpleasant pin. 11. — ♙g4 12. ♙f4 g5 13. ♘e4? White could not count on any benefit here yet but the game came to its turning point in this way.

a) 13. ♙g3 ♙g7 14. ♚e2 ♘d7
15. 0-0-0 0-0; Burgess

b) 13. ♙xg5 ♚xg5 14. ♘xg5
♙xd1 15. ♚xd1 ♘xe5 16. ♘b5
0-0-0 17. ♘xa7 ♙b8; Burgess

13. — gxf4!!



It is an original queen sacrifice after which the active black pieces put a pressure on White's position. 14. ♘f6 ♚xf6 15. exf6

0-0-0 ♚ Paunovich — Marsh-
vich Yugoslavia;

B) 11. ♘b5? It is a serious mis-
take to start an action before
finishing of the advance. 11. —
♚h4 † 12. g3

12. ♘e2 ♚e4 † 13. ♘f2 ♘xe5+

12. — ♚e4 † 13. ♚e2 ♚xh1 14.
♙g5 f6 15. exf6 ♘f7

11. — ♙e6

Perhaps it is the only black move
which has the suitable value in this
line.

11. — g5 It is tempting but dan-
gerous. 12. ♘e4

12. ♘b5 *If it can be said, it is
simpler than the previous move.*

12. — ♙g7 13. ♘c7 † ♘f8 14.
♘xa8 gxf4 15. ♘xb6 ♚xb6 16.
d7 ♚b4 † 17. ♘f2

17. ♚d2?! ♙xd7 18. ♚xb4 †
♘xb4 19. ♚cl b5

17. — ♚xb2? *It is unnecessary
to take the risk; if White does
not want to win, Black has to be
satisfied with a draw by move
repetitions.*

17. — ♚c5 † 18. ♘el ♚b4 †

18. ♙e2 ♙xd7 19. ♚xd7 ♚xa1
20. ♚c8 † ♘e7 21. ♚xb7 † ♘d8
22. ♚xc6±

12. — gxf4 The queen sacrifice
here is not so dangerous as it was

in the former line, it gives Black faint hope only. 13. $\text{Qf6}\dagger$ Wxf6 14. exf6 Qe6 15. Wh5

15. Qe2? 0-0-0 16. Qxf4 $\text{Qxd6}+$

15. — Qxd6 16. 0-0-0 0-0-0 17. Qf3 $\text{Wgh8?!$ Black's all hopes are vanished by this move. It should have moved 17. — $\text{c3!?$ Burgess

A) 17. — Qb4 18. $\text{Qd4!}\pm$;

B) 17. — $\text{Qb8!?$ 18. Qe2 $\text{c3}\infty$

18. Qg5 Wg6 19. Qxe6 fxe6 20. f7 Wf6 21. Wh7 Qe7 22. $\text{Wxd8}\dagger$ Qxd8 23. $\text{We4}+$ Zude—Bucker Germany 1987;

12. Qf3 Wd7

12. — h6 13. Qd4 Qxd4 14. Wxd4 g5 15. Qg3 $\text{Qg7}=\text{Jepsen}$

13. Qe2 0-0-0 14. Wd2 f6 15. exf6 $\text{Qxd6?!$

The open d-file is advantageous for White. (15. — $\text{gxf6}\infty$)

16. 0-0-0 Qc5 17. $\text{Wxd7}\dagger$ Wxd7 18. $\text{Qe4}\pm$

Kotsur — Koniushkov Russia 1997;

C) 10. $\text{a3?!$

As it can be seen later White does not need to be afraid of the move Qb4 , so it loses a valuable tempo by this unnecessary move.

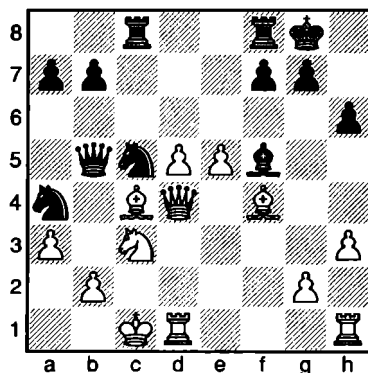
10. — Qc5 11. Qf3 0-0

This is the convincing continuation.

12. $\text{Qe2?!$ Qf5 13. Qg5 Wd7 14. Wd2 h6 15. Qf4 Qa6 16. 0-0-0 Wac8 17. h3 Qa4 18. Qd4 Qxd4 19. Wxd4 Q6c5

The faulty move a3 is already striking here.

20. Qxc4 $\text{Wb5!}\!-\!+$



It is a witty and simple finish. Ve-temaa — Shabalov Haapsalu 1986;

D) 10. $\text{e6?!$

It leads to disadvantageous complications.

10. — Qb4

It compensates White's slight inaccuracy.

10. — Qc5 Black should have made this move exploiting White's open king position. 11. $\text{exf7}\dagger$ Qxf7 12. Qf3 $\text{We8}\dagger$ 13.

♙e2 ♙g4⁺ (Burgess)

11. exf7⁺ ♘xf7 12. ♘f3 ♙e8⁺ 13. ♙e2 ♙xd5 14. ♙xd5⁺ ♘xd5 15. 0-0 ♘b6

Levin — Chernin Philadelphia 1982

16. ♘g5⁺!

White has the compensation in position for the given pawn.

16. — ♘g8 17. ♙h5 g6 18. ♙f3
Levin

10. — ♙b4

10. — ♙g4⁺!

In this way Black makes free way for White's very dangerous king side attack.

11. ♙xc4

It is not the best line for Black gets equivalent tactical opportunities.

A) 11. ♙d4 ♙xf3 Black is obliged to capture the knight, although it is inconsistent with the rule that the wrongly developed side must not open a file. 12. gxf3 ♙b4 13. ♙xc4 0-0 14. ♙g1

14. ♙h6!? *It is pretty but not forcing as far as Black is concerned.* 14. — ♘d7

14. — ♘xc4 15. ♙g4 g6 16. ♙xc4 ♙xc3⁺ 17. bxc3 ♙e8 18. ♙d4 ♙f6⁺ Ljubojevic

15. ♙g1 g6 16. e6 ♘e5 17. ♙e2⁺

Martin Gonzales — Brynolf Luzern 1982

14. — g6 Black has to insure the g-file, but the dark squares become ultimately weakened by this move. 15. ♙g5

15. ♙h6 ♘c6 16. ♙e4 ♘xc4 17. dxc6 ♘xb2⁺

15. — ♙c7 16. ♙b3 ♙c5 17. ♙f4 ♙e8?! 'White's attack cannot be stopped in this way either.

17. — ♙xg1 *This is the most substantial move, though it also leads for Whites benefit.* 18. d6

18. 0-0-0 ♘d7 19. ♙xg1 ♙xe5⁺ Grünfeld — Letzelter Buenos Aires 1978

18. — ♙c5 19. ♘e4 ♙d4 20. ♙d1 ♙xb2 21. ♘f6⁺

21. e6 ♘d7! 22. e7 ♙xb2 23. exf8 ♙f⁺ ♙xf8 24. ♙xb2 ♙xb2⁺ Grünfeld — Ljubojevic Riga 1979

21. — ♙h8 22. ♙d2![±] Grünfeld — Wiemer Tecklenburg 1984;

18. ♙f6 ♘d7 19. ♘e4

19. d6 ♘e5!

19. — ♙xe5 20. ♙xe5 ♘xe5 21. ♙e2[±] Bonaventure — Reaud Le Havre 1977;

B) 11. ♙e2 This simple advancing move sets Black big prob-

lems. 11. — ♖c5 12. ♗g5 It is the point of the move 11. ♙e2. White based its play on it. 12. — ♙f5 13. ♖f1 ♗g6 14. h4 h6 15. h5 ♙d3 16. ♙xd3 cxd3 Buckner — Fleck Bunde 1985 17. ♖xf7± White can sacrifice its piece safely for its attack strikes through because of Black's open king position. 17. — hxg5

a) 17. — ♗xd5 18. ♖xd3±;

b) 17. — ♗8d7 18. ♖g4 ♗xe5 19. ♖e6† ♙e7 20. ♖xg7±

18. ♖xg7 ♗xd5

18. — ♗f8 19. ♙xg5 ♖e8 20. ♖f3† ♗xg7 21. ♙f6† — Foisor

19. ♖f3 ♗e7 20. ♖f7† ♗d7 21. ♖d5† — Foisor

11. — ♗xc4 12. ♖a4† ♗d7 13. ♖xc4 ♙xf3 14. gx3 ♗xe5 15. ♖e4

15. ♖e2 This is the more problematical variation and although White will have an extra pawn Black can start a dangerous attack in the centre against the king stuck in the middle in return for it. 15. — ♙d6 16. f4 ♖h4† 17. ♗d1 0-0 18. fxe5 ♖ae8 19. ♖e4 ♖h5† with a very complicated position. Velimirovic — Barlov Arandjelovac 1980

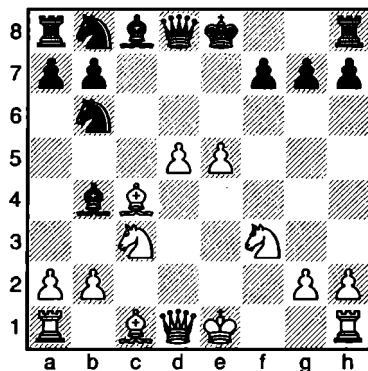
15. — ♖h4† 16. ♗e2 ♖xe4† 17. fxe4 ♙c5

Black has no more problems, it can

block White's pawn perfectly which can also be weakened later.

18. ♙f4 ♗g6 19. ♙e3 ♙xe3 20. ♗xe3 0-0= Dinther — Liardet Zurich 1989

11. ♙xc4



It is just a temporary piece sacrifice. White has another remarkable opportunity too as follows.

11. ♙g5

It is an unpleasant move demanding that Black should play accurately.

11. — ♙xc3†

It is a necessary intermediate move.

A) 11. — ♖xd5 12. ♖xd5 ♗xd5 13. 0-0-0 ♗e7 14. ♗b5 ♗a6 15. a3 ♙c5 16. ♙xc4 0-0 17. b4±;

B) 11. — f6? 12. exf6 gxf6 13. ♖e2± Timman

12. bxc3

Both sides' chances are approximately equal after the exchanges.

12. — ♖xd5 13. ♖xd5 ♘xd5 14. 0-0-0 ♘e7 15. ♙xc4

15. ♙xe7?! It just lightens Black's problems. 15. — ♗xe7 16. ♙xc4 ♙g4 17. e6 ♙xe6 18. ♙xe6 fxe6 19. ♖he1 ♘a6 20. ♘d4 ♘c7 21. ♘f5† ♗f6 22. ♖d7 ♘d5=

15. — ♘bc6 16. ♖hf1 ♙g4 17. h3 ♙xf3

17. — ♙e6 This is the simpler way to equalize the game entirely. 18. ♙xe6 fxe6=

18. ♖xf3 ♘xe5

White's pieces mean dangerous threats that can also be fatal for Black.

19. ♙xf7†

19. ♖e1!?

19. — ♘xf7 20. ♙xe7 ♗xe7 21. ♖e1† ♘e5! 22. ♖xe5† ♗d6 23. ♖fe3 ♖ad8=

Bryson — Burgess Edinburgh 1990

11. — ♙xc3†

11. — ♘xc4?

Black counts inaccurately.

12. ♖a4† ♘c6 13. dxc6 ♙xc3† 14. bxc3 b5 15. ♖b4 a5 16. ♖c5 ♖d3 17. ♙g5± Boleslavsky

12. bxc3 ♘xc4 13. ♖a4† ♘d7 14. ♖xc4 ♘b6 15. ♖b5†

White keeps the extra pawn but Black advances its forces like a shot in the meantime.

15. ♖d4

The main line gives White several opportunities.

15. — ♖xd5 16. ♙a3 ♖xd4 17. ♘d4 ♘c4 18. ♙d6 ♙d7 19. 0-0 ♘d6 20. exd6=

Belov — Koniushkov Russia 1996

15. — ♖d7 16. ♖xd7†

16. ♖c5 ♖xd5 17. ♙a3 ♖xc5 18. ♙xc5 ♙e6=

Klundert — Migl Germany 1987/88

16. — ♙xd7 17. d6 ♖c8 18. ♙e3

White thinks that it is the suitable moment to give Black the pawn back and take over the initiative.

18. ♙d2

It is passive a little but it can be playable without problems.

18. — ♘c4

18. — ♘a4!?

19. 0-0 ♘d2 20. ♘d2 0-0

It would be a mistake to accept the pawn.

20. — ♖xc3?! 21. ♖ac1±

21. ♖f3 ♖c5 22. ♖e3±

Durao — Bagirov Kusadasi 1990

18. — ♖xc3 19. ♙xb6

19. ♘d2!? ♖a3

19. — ♘d5!= Shabalov

20. ♙xb6 axb6 21. ♖hb1 ♙c6 22.
♖xb6±

Shirov — Shabalov Riga 1986

19. — axb6 20. ♘d2

The king must be centralized in the endgame. Otherwise this move also connects the rooks.

20. — ♖c5 21. ♖hb1 b5 22. a4±

Minasyan — Shabalov Minsk 1990

This continuation is connected with the delay of the move 6. — ♘c6 temporarily or omitting it finally, so Black has the chance to make the move c5 or advance the knight on a6. The fact that this move is still less popular among the experts of the Alekhine Defence than the 6. — ♘c6 is due to that that Black is affected by the lack of the c6 knight in the open variations. White can reckon on getting benefit if it creates tactical complications quickly exploiting its advantage in the development. Being slow in making such attempts can cause troubles to White, so it must be extremely cautious in playing these lines.

3.3.4.2 — 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. c4

♘b6 5. f4 dxe5 6. fxe5 ♙f5

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. c4

♘b6 5. f4 dxe5 6. fxe5 ♙f5

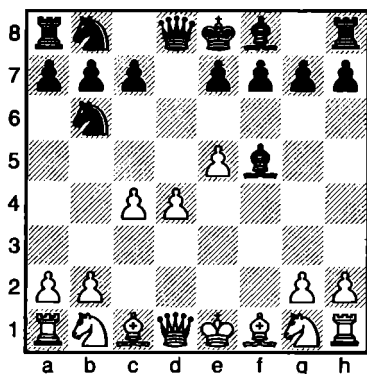
7. ♘c3 e6 8. ♘f3

8. ♙e3 ♙b4 9. a3

9. ♙d3? In this case it is a bad plan to exchange the bishops moving along light squares because of the weakness of the c4 pawn. 9. — c5 10. a3 cxd4 11. axb4 ♙xd3 12. ♖xd3 dxe3 13. ♖xd8† ♘xd8 14. b3 ♘c6̄ Gunnarson — Agdestein Reykjavik 1996

9. — ♙xc3† 10. bxc3

Although White strengthens the centre by this capture, but the c4



pawn became even more vulnerable.

10. — c5 11. ♘f3 ♘c6 12. ♕e2 0-0
13. 0-0 ♖c8 14. ♖c1 ♗g6 15. ♗b3
♘a5

15. — ♕e4!?

16. ♗a2 ♗d7 17. ♘d2 ♖c7 18. ♖fd1
♗c6∞

Minasian — Timoschenko Podolsk
1988

8. — ♕b4

This move contains the most chances being connected with the later move c5.

A) 8. — ♕e7

Black maintains the opportunity to turn to the main line by the move ♘c6 later.

9. ♕e2?!

White quickly loses the advantage obtained by this move.

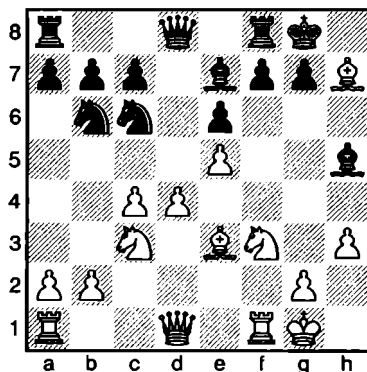
9. ♕e3 0-0?! 10. ♕d3 ♗g4

10. — ♘c6 11. ♕xf5 exf5 12. b3
♗e8 13. c5± Lazarevic — Alek-
sandria Yugoslavia 1971

11. 0-0 ♘c6 12. h3 ♕xf3

12. — ♕h5? *It is a blunder in a*

difficult position. 13. ♕xh7+!



13. — ♕xh7 14. ♘g5+ ♕xg5 15.
♗xh5+ ♕h6 16. ♖f6!+— *It is the
point of the combination.*

13. ♗xf3 ♗g5

a) 13. — ♘d4? 14. ♗e4+—
Bagirov;

b) 13. — ♘e5 14. ♕xh7+ ♕xh7
15. dxe5 ♗d3 16. ♖ad1± *Bagi-
rov*

14. ♖ad1 f6?! 15. ♕xg5 fxg5 16.
♗e3± Morgado — Svenningson
1984

9. — 0-0 10. 0-0 f6 11. ♕e3

11. ♕f4? ♘c6 12. exf6 ♕xf6 13.
d5 ♘a5+ Korchnoi

11. — fxe5 12. ♘xe5 ♘8d7 13. ♘f3

c6 14. ♖d2 ♜e8 15. ♞ae1 ♞d8 16. ♜c1 ♜f6= Smyslov;

B) 8. — ♟g4

Black would rather have chosen an advancing move.

9. c5

For the line 9. ♟e3 ♜c6 see the variation 6. — ♜c6 7. ♟e3 ♟f5 8. ♜c3 e6 9. ♜f3 ♟g4.

9. — ♜d5 10. ♟e2 ♜c6 11. 0-0 ♟e7 12. ♜e4 0-0 13. ♜fg5 ♟f5 14. ♟h5 g6 15. ♟f3 b6 16. g4 ♟xe4 17. ♜xe4=

Pieri — Popov Rome 1990

9. ♟d3

It is a natural and good reply.

A) 9. ♟e3 c5 10. ♜b3?!

White connects this early move of the queen with the castling to the queen side, but its planned attack will come to a dead end along the opening d-file and the fact that its queen stands extremely clumsy on b3.

10. ♟e2 ♜c6 11. 0-0 cxd4 12. ♜xd4 ♜xd4 13. ♟xd4 ♟c2 14. ♜d2 ♞c8 15. ♜h1 0-0 16. b3 ♟c5 17. ♜b5 ♟xd4 18. ♜xd4 ♟g6 19. ♟f3 ♞c7=

10. — ♜c6 11. dxc5 ♜d7 12. 0-0-0

0-0 13. ♟d3

13. ♞d6 It would have been more forceful. 13. — ♞b8=

13. — ♟xd3 14. ♞xd3 ♟xc5 15. ♟f4 ♜c8 16. ♜e4 ♟e7 17. ♜d6 ♟xd6 18. ♞xd6 ♜a5 19. ♜c2 ♜xc4+

Wisniwski — Suder Poland 1990;

B) 9. ♟d2?

It is a serious mistake to condemn the bishop to defence on d2.

9. — ♜c6! 10. a3 ♟e7 11. ♟e3 0-0 12. ♟e2 f6 13. 0-0? fxe5 14. dxe5 ♜d7+

Radtke — Siebenhaar 1983;

C) 9. ♟e2 c5 10. 0-0 ♜c6 11. d5

It is a constraint for the other moves would be disadvantageous for White.

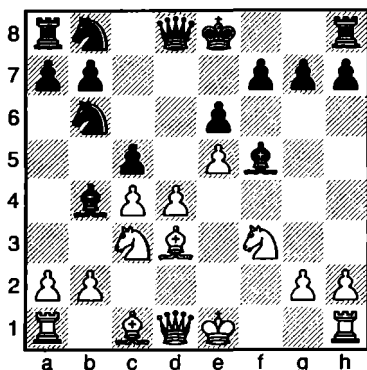
11. — ♟xc3 12. dxc6 ♜xd1 13. ♞xd1 ♟a5 14. ♜d2?!

14. cxb7 Choosing this simpler play would have led to White's benefit. 14. — ♞b8 15. ♟d2 ♟xd2 16. ♞xd2+

14. — ♟c2 15. cxb7 ♞d8 16. ♞f1 ♜d7 17. ♜b3 ♟b6 18. ♟f4 ♟e4 19. ♟f3 ♟xf3 20. ♞xf3 ♞b8=

The mutual weaknesses (the c5 and e5 pawns) are equalizing each other. Holmes — Santos Haifa 1989

9. — c5



Other moves do not cause problems to White.

9. — ♙xd3?

It is a faulty move for White gets further important tempos.

10. ♖xd3 c5 11. 0-0 h6

11. — cxd4 12. ♘e4 ♘d6d7 13. ♘fg5 ♘xe5 14. ♖g3± Timman

12. ♘e4 cxd4 13. c5 ♘c8 14. a3 ♙a5 15. ♘d6† ♙e7 16. ♘g5 ♙f8 17. ♘gxf7+—

Stutz — Payak Toronto 1984

10. ♙xf5 exf5

It leads to complications which are disadvantageous for Black.

10. — cxd4

This simple intermediate move offers Black more chances to make

the play equal than the move of the main line.

11. ♖b3

It results in an equal game, but Black can defend successfully in the cases of other lines, too.

A) 11. ♘xd4 exf5 12. 0-0 0-0 13. ♘xf5 ♖xd1 14. ♙xd1 ♙xc3 15. bxc3 ♘xc4=;

B) 11. 0-0 exf5! 12. ♙g5 ♖d7=;

C) 11. ♙e4 dxc3 12. ♖xd8† ♘xd8 13. 0-0 ♘c6 14. ♙xc6 bxc6 15. ♘g5 ♙e8!=;

D) 11. ♙g5 ♖d7 12. ♖xd4 ♖xd4 13. ♘d4 exf5 14. ♘xf5 0-0 15. ♘d6 ♘c6= Sitdikov — Pavlov, corr. 1987

11. — exf5 12. ♖xb4 ♘c6 13. ♖b3 dxc3 14. ♖xc3 ♖e7! 15. b3

It is an inevitable move because of the weakness of the c4 pawn.

15. — 0-0-0 16. 0-0 ♖c5† 17. ♙e3 ♘d5 18. ♙xc5 ♘xc3 19. ♘g5 ♘xe5=

Varfolomeev — Pavlov 1987

11. d5

The advantage in development and the uncertain position of the black king are adequate compensation for the c4 pawn being offered as a sacrifice.

11. — ♖xc4 12. 0-0 ♜b6 13. ♘b5
0 0

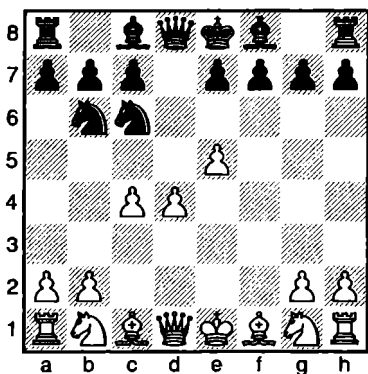
13. — ♜xd5?? 14. ♘d6†+—

14. a3 ♕a5 15. ♘d6 ♔d7 16. ♕e3
♘a6 17. ♘h4 ♘c7 18. ♘hxf5±

Zakharchenko — Khromov Yalta
1996

3.3.4.3 — 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. c4
♘b6 5. f4 dxe5 6. fxe5 ♘c6

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. c4
♘b6 5. f4 dxe5 6. fxe5 ♘c6



This move introduces the most wide-spread system of the 'four pawns' Alekhine Defence. Since, on the one hand, this system seems to become extinct as for the modern tournament practice, and on the other hand, the variations because of their high complexity are rather

complicated, thus we tried to analyze the most significant and important opportunities only in accordance with the up-to-date demands. Black usually makes preparations for defence first and it tries to avoid White's all tricks in the opening. When there are no more immediate threats, it starts an attack against the squares which became weakened possibly and the white pawn chain. But Black has to defend very accurately since White usually has a lot of tactical threats and motifs in the forming difficult positions.

7. ♕e3 ♕f5 8. ♘c3 e6 9. ♘f3 ♕e7

It is the most important line but there are other very interesting moves at Black's disposal, too.

A) 9. — ♕b4

The bishop placed here is more active, but it will be missing in the defence of the dark squares later, in the case of the exchange on c3.

10. ♕e2 0-0 11. 0-0

11. ♖c1 By the experts it is stronger than 11. 0-0 but it does not lead to a win. 11. — ♔d7

11. — ♘a5 12. ♕g5 ♔d7 13. c5
♘d5 14. ♕d2 b6∞ *Burgess*

12. a3 ♕xc3† 13. ♖xc3 ♖ad8 14.
0-0 ♕g4 15. ♖h1! ♕xf3 16. ♕xf3

♘d4 17. ♙g5± Bagirov

11. — ♙xc3 12. bxc3 ♘a5 13. ♘d2
♙d7 14. ♚f4

This move prepares a place for the queen.

14. ♚f3 ♙a4!? 15. ♙f1 g6 16.
c5± Alburtt

14. — ♙g6 15. ♙f1

It has got double intentions. On the one hand it protects the c4 pawn, on the other it puts pressure along the f-file.

15. — c5 16. ♘b3±;

B) 9. — ♙g4

Black's move is inconsistent with an important basic principle that until we have finished the advance we should not move twice with the same pawn or piece.

10. ♙d2

It is proved to be true by the experiences that White's move is not adequate, Black has got enough play.

10. ♙e2 ♙xf3 11. gxf3 ♙h4† It is the essence of the system.

11. — ♙d7 *It leads to a complicated position.* 12. f4 ♙d8 13. d5 ♙b4 *From Black's point of view the events are favourable, it can finish its development just in time.* 14. ♙xb6

14. dxc6 ♙xc6—+

14. — axb6 15. ♙f3 exd5 16. cxd5 ♙h3 17. ♙e2 0-0= *With mutual chances.*

12. ♙f2 ♙f4 Now White has got two lines which are usually different in the move order only, and they can turn to each other later. 13. c5

13. ♙c1 *White has a slight initiative.* 13. — ♙xc1† 14. ♙xc1 0-0-0 15. c5

15. ♙d1 *It is an elastic continuation.* 15. — g6?! 16. a3 ♙h6 17. b4 ♙d7 18. ♘e4 ♙hd8 19. c5 ♘d5 20. b5± Valvo — Alburtt Philadelphia 1988

15. — ♘d7 16. f4

16. ♘e4 ♘db8 17. ♘g5 ♙d7 18. ♙b5 h6 19. ♘e4 g6 20. 0-0 ♙g7± Byrne — Alburtt Berkeley 1984

16. — ♘e7 17. ♙f3 ♘b8 18. 0-0 ♘bc6 19. ♙fd1 ♘b4= *With solid defensive position.* Murey — Bagirov Belgrade 1988;

13. — ♘d7 14. ♙d3 (For the line 14. ♙c1 see the variation 13. ♙c1.) 14. — f6 15. ♙e3 ♙h4† 16. ♙f2 ♙h6 17. ♙e3 ♙h3 18. exf6 ♘xf6 19. 0-0-0 0-0-0 20. ♙c4 ♘d5= It gives Black an equal play. Andersson, R — Alburtt New York 1993;

10. ♖b4

10. ♖d7 This continuation is considered to be the most demanding one for Black. 11. ♖e2 0-0-0 12. c5! ♙xf3

12. — ♖d5?! *White has a dangerous initiative on the queen side.* 13. ♖xd5 ♖xd5 14. b4 a6 15. a4±

13. cxb6 ♙xg2! 14. ♙b5! a6

14. — ♙xh1?! 15. bxa7 *And the promotion can only be hindered by sacrificing the queen moving* 15. — ♖xa7.

15. ♖xg2 axb5 16. bxc7?

16. a4! b4 17. bxc7 ♖xc7 18. ♖b5 ♖d7 19. 0-0± *With plentiful compensation for the sacrificed pawn.*

16. — ♖xc7 17. 0-0 b4 18. ♖e4 f5! 19. ♖g5 ♖d7 20. ♖ac1 ♖b8 21. ♖fd1 Shabalov — Kengis USSR 1987 21. — ♖e7!! 22. ♖f7 ♖d5 23. ♙g5 ♙e7 24. ♖xb8 ♖xh8

11. a3

A considerable weakening. Its drawbacks are obvious later.

11. — ♙e7 12. ♖e4 ♖d7 13. ♙e2 0-0-0 14. 0-0-0 ♙f5 15. ♖g3 ♙g6 16. h4?

It is a fault in a difficult position. (16. ♙d3=)

16. — ♖b4!

It is an excellent reply and after this White's position cannot be saved.

17. b3 ♖c2 18. c5 ♖c6! 19. ♙d3 Hübner — Hort Biel 1987

19. — ♖xa3 20. ♖b2 ♙xd3 21. ♖xd3 ♙xc5-+;

C) 9. — ♖b4

Black already goes into action by trying to explode the centre before the finishing of the advance.

10. ♖c1 c5 11. ♙e2 ♙e7

Here White gets a better play as well.

11. — cxd4 The fact that the black queen side is undeveloped gives White better chances during the following double-edged fight. 12. ♖xd4 ♙g6 13. 0-0 ♙c5 14. ♖cb5 0-0 15. a3 ♖c6 16. b4 ♙xd4 17. ♙xd4 ♖g5=

12. 0-0 0-0 13. dxc5 ♖d7 14. a3 ♖c6 15. b4 ♖dx5 16. ♖b5!

The success is guaranteed by the considerable advantage on the queen side and the weakness of the d6 square.

16. — ♙d3 17. ♖xe5 ♖xe5 18. ♙f4 18. ♙d4! ♙xe2 19. ♖xe2 ♖c6 20. ♙c3± Mikhailchishin

18. — ♙xe2 19. ♖xe2 ♖d3 20.

♟cd1 ♟xf4 21. ♟xf4± Mikhail-chishin — Karsa Lvov 1983;

D) 9. — ♟d7

Black's play is rather simple; after the long castling it puts further pressure on the d4 pawn. White has to be very prudent, because Black's manoeuvres in the centre can easily be serious attack.

10. d5

It is a fault obviously. White does not realize that the opening d-file is favourable for Black after the castling to the queen side.

a) 10. ♟c1?! It is a thoughtless move for Black can have the advantage easily after it. 10. — ♟g4 11. c5 ♟d5 12. ♟xd5 ♟xd5 13. ♟c4 ♟e4 14. ♟d2 (After the apparently appealing move 14. ♟e2 Black can carry on by 14. — ♟d4!) 14. — ♟xf3 15. gxf3 ♟xf3 16. ♟f1 ♟h5± Velimirovic — Kupreichik Yugoslavia 1994;

b) 10. ♟e2 It is a simple and good answer. 10. — 0-0-0 It is the more logical move; if Black has already chosen the variation with ♟d7, it has to take the risk of castling to the queen side.

10. — ♟d8 It is less hazardous than the other line. 11. 0-0 This

natural move gives White the most chances.

11. ♟d2 It leads to equal positions only. 11. — ♟e7 12. 0-0 0-0 13. ♟ad1 f6= Bagirov

11. — ♟g4 12. ♟g5 ♟xc4 13. ♟xf7

13. ♟f2 Making this move White would obviously have got a superior position. 13. — ♟e7 14. ♟xf7 ♟xe2 15. ♟xe2 ♟xf7 16. ♟e3† ♟e8 17. ♟xc4±

13. — ♟xe3 14. ♟xd7 ♟xd1 15. ♟xd8† ♟xd8 16. ♟xg4 ♟e3 17. ♟f3?! c6= Posch — Klinger Leutasch 1984

11. 0-0

11. ♟d2 ♟e7

11. — ♟g4 12. c5 White commits itself by this move to overtaking its structural weaknesses. 12. — ♟d5 After the exchanges the positions become approximately equal. 13. ♟xd5 ♟xd5 14. ♟g5 ♟xe2 15. ♟xe2 ♟xd4 16. ♟xd4 ♟xd4† 17. ♟h1 ♟d2 18. ♟xd2 ♟xd2 19. ♟xf7 ♟xc5 20. ♟xe6 ♟d4= Ignatev — Chekhov 1978

10. — exd5 11. cxd5 ♟b4 12. ♟d4 ♟6xd5

Black does not even shrink back from sacrificing a piece for the sake

of opening the d-file.

13. ♖xd5 ♗xd5 14. ♖xf5 0-0-0 15. ♗d3 g6 16. ♖d6†?

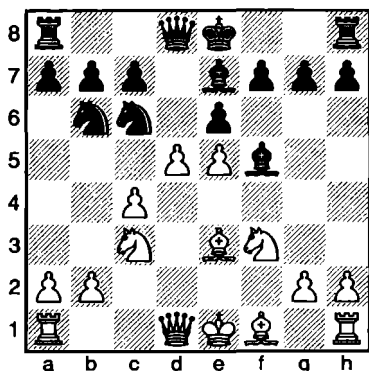
16. ♗g3 ♖xe3 17. ♗xe3 ♖c5!
White's position cannot be saved.

18. ♗f4 ♖he8+

16. — ♖xd6 17. exd6 ♖xe3+

Bullockus — Oakley 1984

10. d5



By this move we arrived at one of the most aggressive variations of the four pawn Alekhine Defence.

10. ♖e2

It is the classical line which causes less excitement than the previous move.

10. — 0-0 11. 0-0 f6

It is the only adequate Black's move of this line. Black can compensate

the weakness of the e6 pawn by putting a pressure on the d4 pawn.

12. exf6

This is White's most hopeful continuation.

A) 12. ♗b3 fxe5 13. d5 ♖d4 14. ♖xd4 exd4 15. ♖xd4 ♖d6 16. ♖b5± (Of course 16. c5 is bad because of 16. — ♖h2!†.);

B) 12. ♖h4 fxe5 13. ♖xf5 exf5 14. d5 ♖d4 Black gives the pawn back for the sake of making the game equal easily. 15. ♖xd4 exd4 16. ♗xd4 ♖d7= Bagirov

12. — ♖xf6 13. ♗d2

A) 13. ♖c1 ♗e7 14. ♖f2 ♖ad8 15. c5 ♖d5 16. ♖e1±;

B) 13. h3 h6 14. ♗d2 ♗e7 15. ♖ad1 ♖ae8 16. b3 ♖h8 17. ♖h2∞

13. — ♗e7

A) 13. — ♖g4 14. ♖ad1 ♖xf3 Black starts a counter attack. 15. ♖xf3 It could not be captured by the bishop because of the hanging c4 pawn. 15. — e5 16. d5 ♖d4 17. ♖xd4 exd4 18. ♖b5 ♗e7 19. ♖f1 ♖g5±;

B) 13. — ♖f7?! It proves to be a plan of doubtful value. 14. ♖ad1 ♖d7 15. c5 ♖d5 16. ♖xd5 exd5 17. ♖e5 ♖xe5 18. ♖xf5±

14. ♖ad1 ♖ad8 15. ♗c1

It is the best to leave the d-file end—

ing the pinning of the d4 pawn immediately.

15. h3 ♖g6 16. ♖c1 ♘h8 17. b3 ♜d7 18. ♖g5 ♘xd4 19. ♘xd4 ♜xd4 20. ♖xf6 ♜xd1 21. ♖xg7† = Schmitt diel — Appel Germany 1997

15. — h6

Both sides start to manoeuvre in the usual way.

15. — ♜fe8 It is inaccurate, the rook perhaps stands better on the f-file. 16. ♘h1

16. ♜f2!? ♖g6 17. b3± Stein

16. — ♘h8 17. h3 ♖g6 18. ♜fe1 ♜f7 19. c5! ♘d5 20. ♖g5 ♘ce7 21. ♖c4 c6 22. ♘e5± Honfi — Vukic Bajnok 1978

16. ♘h1 ♘h8 17. h3 ♖h7

You have to give the evidence of a maximum patience in such positions.

18. ♜fe1

18. ♖g1 White has to set aside its minor pieces that it can get hold of the e6 pawn. 18. — ♜fe8 19. ♜fe1 ♜f7 20. c5 ♘d5 21. ♖b5 ♘db4 22. a3 a6 23. axb4 axb5 = Timman

18. — ♜f7 19. ♜d2 e5 20. d5∞

Suetin — Bagirov Biel 1997

10. — exd5

10. — ♘b4

The drawback of this move occurs quite frequently in the practice is that because of the lack of the moves exd5 cxd5 the d5 pawn cannot be captured directly by the knights.

11. ♜cl f6

A) 11. — exd5 (For the line 11. — c5 12. a3 exd5 13. axb4 d4 see the current variation.) 12. a3

12. ♖xb6!? It gives White excellent chances but you have to consider thoroughly if you exchange such a valuable bishop. 12. — axb6 13. a3 ♘a6 14. cxd5 0-0 15. ♖xa6 bxa6 16. 0-0 ♖c5† 17. ♘h1 ♖e3 18. ♜a1 ♖g4 19. ♜d3 ♖c5 20. b4 ♖e7 21. ♘d4±

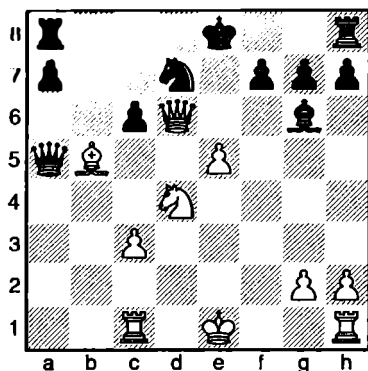
12. — c5 13. axb4 d4 14. ♖xd4 cxd4 Apparently this position seems to be pleasant for Black, but the theory queries this assumption. 15. ♘xd4

15. ♜xd4 ♖xb4 16. c5 And it turns out that the co-operation of the black pieces is not appropriate. (16. ♜f4∞ Timman) 16. — ♖xc3† 17. ♜xc3

17. bxc3 ♘d7 18. ♜d6

18. — ♜a5 19. c6 bxc6 20.

14. ♖g6 21. ♗b5!



It closes the fifth rank and the way of the queen to c5. 21. — ♗b6 22. e6 fxe6 23. ♖xc6+

18. — ♗e7 Bagirov

17. — ♖d5 18. ♗b5† ♗d7 19. ♗xd7†

a) 19. c6 ♖f8 20. ♖a3+
Timman;

b) 19. ♗xd5 ♗xb5 20. ♗xb7 ♖b8 21. ♗xa7 0-0 22. ♖f2 ♗c6 Bagirov

19. — ♗xd7 20. ♖d3 ♖d8 21. 0-0 0-0 22. ♖f1 Bagirov

15. — ♗g6

15. — ♗b8 Black defends in a tactical way but White can avoid the excitement as it does not have to capture the bishop at all costs. 16. ♗e2

16. ♖xf5!? After this move the chances are equal. 16. — ♗xe5† 17. ♗e2 ♗xf5 18. c5 ♖d7 19. ♖d5

16. — ♗g6 17. c5 ♖d7 18. c6

a) 18. e6 ♖e5 19. ♗b5† ♖f8 20. exf7 a6 21. ♗e8† Nunn;

b) 18. ♖d5 ♗g5 19. c6 0-0 20. cxd7 ♗c1 21. e6 Nunn

18. — bxc6 19. ♖xc6 ♗b7 20. ♖d5± Nunn

16. c5 0-0 It is an original idea. 17. cxb6 ♗xb4 18. ♗g4 ♗xb6 And it is a rather exciting position despite the extra piece because of the vulnerable white king stuck in the middle.

B) 11. — 0-0 12. a3 ♖a6 13. ♗d3! ♗xd3 14. ♗xd3 f6 15. exf6 ♗xf6 16. 0-0 The passivity of the a6 knight leaves its mark on Black's position. 16. — exd5 17. ♖xd5 ♖xd5 18. cxd5±

12. a3 ♖a6 13. g4

White can even put a rook into action to attack the opponent's king along the opening g-file in return for the pawn.

13. exf6?! To open the position in the centre is rather grist to Black's mill. 13. — ♗xf6 14. ♖d4 0-0 15. dxe6 ♗xd4 16.

♞xd4 ♞e7∞

13. — ♙xg4 14. ♚g1 ♙h5 15. ♙e2
fxe5 16. ♘xe5 ♙xe2 17. ♞xe2 0-0
18. ♞g4± Velimirovic

11. cxd5

11. ♙xb6

It is not too logical to part with the bishop pair, but, in spite of it Black must be very cautious, since White's attack against the black king often becomes extremely dangerous.

11. — axb6 12. cxd5 ♘b4 13. ♘d4

Here White has the chance to choose several interesting continuations, but it is the ♙g6 which seems to be adequate among them.

13. — ♙g6

This move offers Black the best counter-chances.

A) 13. — ♙c8?! It is a bad idea of Black to hold its bishop on the diagonal h3-c8 by all means. 14. a3

14. ♙b5† c6 15. a3 cxb5 16. axb4 ♚xal 17. ♞xal ♙xb4 18. 0-0 0-0 19. ♘dxb5 ♞g5± and *Black's prospects are better.*

14. — ♘xd5 15. ♙b5† ♘f8 16. ♞f3 ♙c5 17. ♚f1! f6 18. 0-0-0

+— Velimirovic — Kovacevic Yugoslavia 1981;

B) 13. — ♙d7? It closes the way of the queen along the d-file. 14. a3 ♙c5 15. ♘f3 ♘a6 16. b4±;

C) 13. — ♙e4!? Black takes the chance provided by the tactical motif. 14. ♘xe4

14. d6? ♙h4†—

14. — ♞xd5 White is threatened by both moves 15. — ♞e4 and 15. — ♞d4. 15. ♙b5† c6 16. ♘d6† ♙xd6 17. exd6 0-0 18. 0-0 cxb5 19. ♘f5 ♞xd1 20. ♚axd1∞ Cafferty

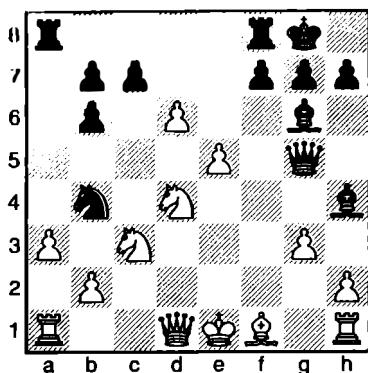
14. d6

14. ♙b5† c6 15. dxc6 0-0! 16. cxb7 ♚b8 Some sacrificed pawns seem to be unimportant compared to the weaknesses in White's position. 17. ♘c6 ♘xc6 18. ♙xc6 ♞c7 19. ♘d5 ♙h4† 20. g3 ♞xc6 21. gxh4 ♞xb7± Murey — Palatnik Palma 1989

14. — ♙xd6

A) 14. — ♙h4† Black has several opportunities to sacrifice a piece, but it appears to be the most effective. 15. g3 0-0 16. a3 c5

16. ... ♖g5!



The chance to sacrifice another piece is given by the excellent cooperation of the black pieces.
 17. ♜f2 ♞xe5 18. ♜f3 ♞c5† 19. ♞d4 ♞xd4† 20. ♜xd4 ♜f6 21. ♜d1 ♜d3†+ Carlsson—Kuhnrich 1985

17. ♜f3 ♜c2† 18. ♜f2 ♜g5 19. ♜d3 ♜xa1 20. ♜xg6 hxg6 21. ♞xa1 ♜h6 22. ♞a2 ♞d7 23. ♞d5 Murey — Kovacevic Hastings 1981 23. — ♜ae8!± Burgess;

B) 14. — 0-0 15. a3

15. dxe7 ♞xe7± It is true, that Black has only a pawn in return for the piece, but White's defence is almost hopeless in spite of the tactical motifs.

15. — cxd6 16. axb4 ♜xa1 17. ♞xa1 dxe5 18. ♜f3 ♜xb4 It is difficult to give White a good

piece of advice how to save the game. 19. ♞d1

19. ♞a4 ♞d6±

19. — ♞f6 20. ♞b3 ♞f4 21. ♜e2∞ Chandler — Kengis Yurmala 1983

15. exd6 0-0 16. dxc7 ♞xc7 17. ♜b5 ♜ad8 18. 0-0 ♜c2!

An interesting material distribution came into being, in which Black has the advantage by its more active pieces.

19. ♞xc2 ♜xc2 20. ♜xc2 ♜d2± Majeric — Rogulj Zagreb 1981

11. — ♜b4 12. ♜d4 ♜d7

12. — ♜c8

An unexpected retreat of the black bishop. It does not seem to be imaginable that Black can get off it without being punished.

13. ♜b5† c6

13. — ♜f8 Black has an extremely original plan. 14. e6!? ♜6xd5 15. ♞h5 fxe6 16. 0-0† ♜f6 17. ♜g5→ Finkel,A

14. dxc6 0-0 15. 0-0 ♞c7 16. cxb7 ♜xb7 17. ♞g4±

White refuses to have an extra pawn and get a very dangerous attack in exchange for it on the king side. Morozevich — Bratchenko Russia 1997

13. e6**A) 13. ♖f3**

The basis of White's move are quite simple. It attacks the f7 point directly and gives its king the chance to castle to the queen side.

13. — c5

It is the best move ending the harmony of the white pieces in the centre.

13. — 0-0 14. a3 c5 15. axb4 cxd4 16. ♙xd4 ♙xb4= Alburt

14. dxc6

14. e6 0-0!

14. — bxc6

Black got a satisfactory play by using simple means: it had got the d5 square and made White's king position as vulnerable as that it has.

15. ♙e2

15. a3 c5 16. axb4 cxd4 17. ♙xd4 0-0= Hartston

15. — 0-0 16. 0-0 ♘d6d5 17. ♙f2 ♖c7

It attacks the weak e5 pawn.

18. a3 ♘xc3 19. bxc3 ♘d5 20. c4 ♘b6 21. ♖e4 ♙ae8 22. ♙g3 ♙c5∞ Alavkin — Kravtsov Russia 1997;

B) 13. ♖b3

The play is similar to the line 13. ♖f3, although here Black has some

difficulties in controlling the d5 square.

13. — c5 14. dxc6 bxc6 15. 0-0-0

Black now must protect itself against the threat 16. e6 by all costs.

15. ♙d1 It is unusual, that White does not connect the move ♙d1 to castling to the queen side. 15. — ♘d6d5

15. — ♘4d5? 16. ♘xc6! ♙xc6 17. ♙b5!±

16. ♘xd5 ♘xd5 17. ♙c4 ♙b8 18. ♖d3 ♘e3 19. ♖xe3 ♖a5† 20. ♙d2 White has concentrated considerable forces against the black king, what starts series of tactical blows with sacrifices. 20. — ♙b4 21. ♙xf7† ♖e7

21. — ♖xf7 22. 0-0†∞

22. ♖g5† ♖xf7 23. 0-0† ♖g8 24. ♘f5 ♙xf5 25. ♖xf5 Timman — Kovacevic Wijk aan Zee 1980 25. — h6!= White has to resign itself to a draw with perpetual checks.

15. — ♘d6d5

a) 15. — ♖c7 16. ♙c4 ♘xc4 17. ♖xc4 ♖xe5 18. ♙he1 0-0 19. a3 ♘d5 20. ♘xc6?! It opens the c-file where its king and queen are standing. 20. — ♙xc6 21. ♘xd5 ♙xa3! The point!. 22. bxa3 ♙fc8 23. ♙c5 ♙xd5 24. ♙xe5 ♙xc4 25. ♖b2 f6† Tsarev — Pa-

Itznik Kiev 1989;

b) 15. c4d5? 16. c4xc6 dxc6
17. dxb6 d5g5 18. c2 \pm Alburt

16. d4 0 0?

It proves to be an important loss of time.

16. — b8! ? 17. dxd5 dxd5 18.
 dxd5 xb3 19. dxb3 g5 ∞
Ljubojevic

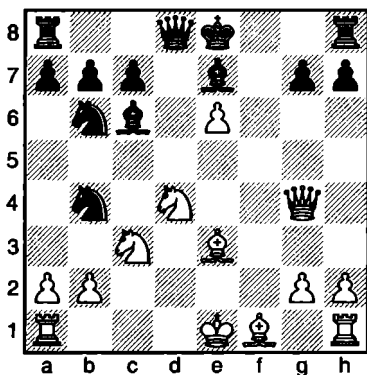
17. dxc6 dxc6 18. dxd5 dxd5 19.
 dxd5 c7 20. c3 !

White does not give Black the e5 pawn.

20. — a5 21. b1 \pm

Black has no enough compensation for the pawn. Ljubojevic — Rogulj Yugoslavia 1978

13. — fe6 14. dxe6 c6 15. g4



A) 15. h5 !

A remarkable move, since the black king gets stuck in the middle.

15. — g6 16. h6 f6

a) 16. — d6? It loses easily. 17. g7 0-0-0 18. a3 d4d5 19. e4+ ;

b) 16. — d4d5? ! Now White has the advantage again. 17. dxc6 bxc6 18. 0-0-0 \pm ;

c) 16. — h4 17. g3 f6

17. — exh1? 18. gxh4 f6 19. 0-0-0 \pm

18. 0-0-0 e7 19. a3 d4d5 20. dxc6 bxc6 21. dxd5 dxd5 22. dxd5 \pm Black has an extra exchange but it cannot be too happy with it, since its king position is not safe at all, and it is almost impossible to escape from the grasp of the white bishop pair and the e6 pawn.

17. 0-0-0 e7 18. a3 d4d5 19. dxc6 bxc6 20. dxd5 dxd5 21. dxd5 !

The motif is the same as it was in the previous line.

21. — cxd5 22. b5 d8 23. f1 ! f8

23. — c6 24. xf6 cxb5 25. xg6 !

24. xf6 xf6 25. g5 b8 26. d7 c5 27. b1 xb2 \neq

And Black saves the game by giving perpetual checks. Filipenko—Gleizerov USSR 1987;

B) 15. a3 ♘d4d5 16. ♖f3 ♙f6!?∞
Nunn

15. — ♙h4† 16. g3 ♙xh1

16. — ♙f6?

It is a move of dubious value, for Black has no time to withdraw.

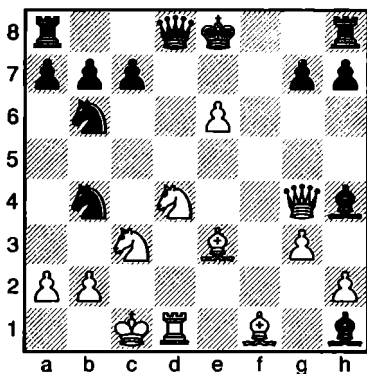
17. 0-0-0 ♙xh1 18. ♘f5 ♖xd1†

18. — ♘a2†

19. ♖xd1 ♙c6 20. ♘xg7† ♙xg7
21. ♖h5† ♘d8 22. ♖g5† ♘c8 23.
♖xg7±

Martin,A — Rivas Malaga 1981

17. 0-0-0



This is the most complex continuation.

17. ♙b5†

This move, rarely applied in the tournament practice, is a very interesting one creating mutual chances for the opponents by the present stage of the theory. It is highly recommended for those who like analyzing the game at home or in workshops, since the chess players looking for novelties are still concerned by this move.

17. — c6

17. — ♙c6?! 18. 0-0-0 ♖f6 19. gxf4 0-0 20. ♙g5 ♖e5 21. e7 ♙fe8 22. ♘f5± And Black practically lost the game despite its extra exchange, which is not surprising taking its weak king position into account.

18. 0-0-0 0-0 19. gxf4 h5?!

The basic idea of Black's move is to deflect the white queen from attacking the g7 square which causes a lot of troubles otherwise.

19. — ♖f6 To take away from the line of effect of the battery on the d-file is a logical move. 20. ♙g5 ♖e5

20. — ♖f2!? 21. e7 cxb5 Black must give White the material back if it does not want to face some problems. 22. exf8 ♖†
23. ♖e2 ♖xe2 24. ♘dx2
25. ♙e7 ♙e8 26. ♙xb4
27. ♙xe2= Kovacevic

21. e7 cxb5

21. — ♖f8 22. ♜f5 h5 23. ♜xb4±

22. ♜f5 White makes a move having the most chances, but Black's pieces come in time again. 22. — ♜xa2† 23. ♜xa2 ♜fc8† 24. ♜c3 ♜xc3†± Roth — Etmans 1986

20. ♜g3 cxb5 21. ♙g5 ♜b8 22. e7 ♜e8 23. ♜xh1?!

It is not a striking mistake.

23. ♜xb8 White should have made this move leaving the g-file open. 23. — ♜axb8 24. ♜xh1 ♜bc8 25. ♜b1 a6 26. ♜gl± Ko-vacevic

23. — ♜xg3±

Velimirovic — Kovacevic Yugos-lavia 1984

17. — ♜f6 18. gxf4 0-0 19. ♙e2

A) 19. ♙b5

This move has an advantage attacking the e8 square, where the white pawn can promote, and the draw-back at the same time that it is exposed the bishop to dangers in some cases standing here without defence.

19. — ♜e5 20. ♙h6

It is an unclear move which is for benefit of Black after the exchanges.

20. ♙g5 c5 21. e7 cxd4 22. exf8♜† ♜xf8 Verőczy — Aleksandria Wijk aan Zee 1977 23. ♜xh1

23. ♜xd4 ♜xa2†! 24. ♜xa2 ♜xb5 25. ♜c3 ♜c6±

23. — a5

23. — dxc3! 24. ♜xb4 cxb2† 25. ♜b1 ♜d5 26. ♜c4 ♜f2!∞ (White is threatened by 27. — ♜e4†!! which can only be saved by 27. ♜c8† ♜f8 28. ♜c4 =. So both sides have to be resigned to a draw.) Krantz — Niederkopf 1978

24. ♜e4

24. ♜e2 ♜c7 25. ♜e6† ♜h8 26. ♜f1+ exploiting Black's weakness on the back rank.

24. — ♜xa2† 25. ♜c2 ♜f2† 26. ♜b3 ♜xb2† 27. ♜a3 ♜xb5 28. ♜xe5 ♜xe5 29. ♜xa2∞

20. — c5 21. ♜gl cxd4 22. ♜xg7† ♜xg7 23. ♙xg7 ♜f2 24. ♙xd4† ♜g2 25. ♜xh1±

Kveynis — Panchenko USSR 1979;

B) 19. ♙g5

It is a double-edged line in which Black giving the material advantage

back has a powerful play with its pieces. White's only hope is in the c6 pawn.

19. — ♖xf1 20. ♜xf1

20. e7? Making a mistake in a difficult position. 20. — ♘xa2† 21. ♘xa2 ♖c4† 22. ♘c3 ♜f1 23. h5 c5 24. ♖e6† ♖xe6 25. ♘xe6 ♜xd1† 26. ♘xd1 ♙f3†— Albur

20. — ♜xf1† 21. ♘d1 ♘d3† 22. ♘c2 ♘e1† 23. ♘c3

Now a very complicated position comes into being.

23. — c5 24. ♘f5 ♘d5† 25. ♘c4 ♙f3 26. ♖g3 ♘b6†∞

19. — ♖e5

The queen in the centre is very strong.

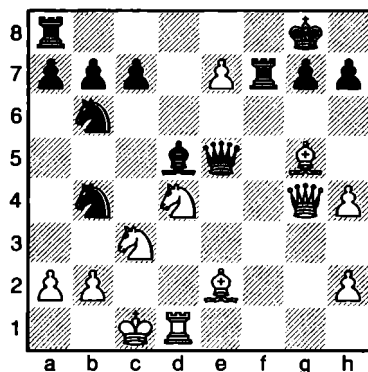
19. — ♙c6?

It would be a blunder, for it gives White the chance to have a winning position with a nice ending.

20. ♙g5 ♖e5 21. e7 ♜f2 22. ♘xc6 ♘xc6 23. ♙c4† ♘xc4 24. ♖xc4† ♘h8 25. ♖xc6†—

20. ♙g5 ♙d5 21. e7 ♜f7!

It is an excellent move which is for Black's benefit.



The other two opportunities are also deserving attention.

A) 21. — ♜fe8 22. ♘d5 ♖xd5 23. ♘f5 ♖c5†∞;

B) 21. — ♜f2 22. a3 c5∞

22. a3

22. ♘f3?!

It loses at once.

22. — ♘xa2† 23. ♘xa2 ♖xe2— Bol — Diepstraten 1979

22. — ♘c6 23. ♘d5 ♘d5 24. ♙c4 ♘cxe7 25. ♘f3 ♜xf3 26. ♖xf3 c6†—

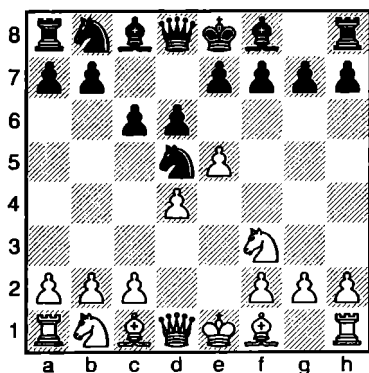
And Black has the chance to defend itself successfully and to keep its better position.

Chapter 4

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♘f3

4.1 — 4. ♘f3 c6 5. ♖e2

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♘f3
c6



It is the basic position of the solid variation. Its main advantage is that it has slight theory, so it can be put into the repertoire easily. But it has a drawback too, since in the case of White's accurate play passive positions come into being for black and it is difficult to find any counter activity. The idea of this move is obvious, once White move c4 the black knight can withdraw on c7 from where it can be put into action sooner than from the square b6.

4. — ♖f5?!

It is a move without any purposes.

White has several chances to get the advantage.

5. ♖d3

Perhaps it is the simplest.

5. — ♖d7

5. — ♖g4 6. h3 ♖h5? 7. g4 ♖g6

8. ♖xg6 hxg6 9. e6±

6. 0-0 ♘b4?!

6. — ♘c6 7. c4 ♖xd3 8. ♖xd3

♘b6 9. exd6 exd6 10. ♖e1†±

Bagirov

7. ♖xf5 ♖xf5 8. c3! ♘c2 9. ♘h4

♖e4 10. ♘d2 ♖d3 11. ♖b1 dxe5 12.

♘df3! ♘b4

12. — ♖xd1 13. ♖xd1 exd4 14.

♖d2 g5 15. ♘xg5 ♖h6 16. f4 ♘e3

17. ♖xd4± Videki

13. ♖d2 ♘4c6 14. ♖b3↑

Kavalek — Ljubojevic Lanzarote 1973 (Sokolov)

5. ♖e2 dxe5

For the line 5. — ♖g4 see the variation 4. — ♖g4 5. ♖e2 c6

A) 5. — g6 6. 0-0

For the line 6. c4 ♘c7 7. exd6 see the variation 5. c4

6. — ♖g7 7. ♖e1 dxe5 8. ♘xe5 ♘d7

9. ♘f3 0-0 10. ♙f1 c5?!

Black tries to be active too early.

11. c4 ♘c7 12. ♘c3 cxd4 13. ♘xd4 ♘b6 14. ♙e3 e5 15. ♘db5 ♘xb5 16. ♘xb5 ♙d7 17. ♙c5±

Godena — Lukaszewicz Cannes 1997;

B) 5. — ♘d7 6. 0-0 dxe5 7. dxe5 ♘c5 8. c4 ♘c7

8. — ♘b4!? 9. ♙xd8† ♘xd8 10. ♙e3 ♘d7 11. ♙c1±

9. ♙xd8† ♘xd8 10. ♘g5! ♘e8 11. ♙e3! ♘7e6 12. ♘xe6 ♘xe6 13. f4±
Stoica

6. ♘xe5

6. dxe5 ♙f5 7. ♘d4!?

7. 0-0 e6=

7. — e6 8. ♘xf5 exf5 9. 0-0 ♘d7 10. ♙c4 ♘7b6 11. ♙b3 ♙e7

11. — ♙c5 12. ♙f3± Smirin — Zelcic Struga 1995

12. ♙e2 0-0-0=

With mutual chances.

6. — ♘d7

6. — g6 7. c4

A) 7. ♘d2 ♙g7 8. ♘df3 ♘d7 9. 0-0

9. ♘d3

9. — ♘xe5 10. ♘xe5 0-0 11. c4

♘c7 12. ♙e3 c5 13. f4 cxd4 14. ♙xd4 ♙xd4 15. ♙xd4 ♙f5 16. ♙f3 ♙fd8 17. ♙e3 f6 18. ♘g4=
Golubev — Miles Biel 1994;

B) 7. 0-0 ♙g7 8. ♘d2

8. c4 ♘b6

8. — ♘c7 9. ♙e3 0-0 10. ♘c3±

9. ♘c3 0-0 10. ♙e3 ♙e6 11. b3 ♘8d7 12. ♘f3 ♙g4±;

8. — 0-0 9. ♘df3 ♙f5?!

9. — ♘d7

10. c4 ♘b6

10. — ♘b4!? 11. ♙b3 ♘c2 12. ♙xb7 f6! 13. ♘d3 ♘d7 14. ♙b1 e5∞ with the plan of the further moves 15. dxe5 ♙xd3 16. ♙xd3 ♘c5 Sulskis,S

11. ♙b3 ♘8d7 12. ♙f4 c5 13. ♙e3! ♙c8 14. ♙ad1 cxd4

14. — a5?! 15. ♙d2 f6 16. ♘xd7 ♘xd7 17. ♘h4!± Black's position is suspicious. Sulskis — Kengis Riga 1995

15. ♘xd4 ♘xe5 16. ♙xe5 ♙xe5 17. ♙xe5 f6 18. ♙e3 e5 19. ♘xf5 ♙xf5 20. c5± Sulskis

7. — ♘c7 8. ♘c3

8. ♙e3 ♙g7 9. ♘d2? c5! 10. ♘df3 cxd4 11. ♙a4†□ b5!† Garcia,Gi — Miles Matanzas 1994

8. — ♖g7 9. ♙e3 0-0 10. 0-0 c5
10. — ♟d7 11. f4 ♟xe5 12. dxe5
f6!? Hernandez, Gi

11. ♟f3 cxd4 12. ♙xd4 ♙h6?!

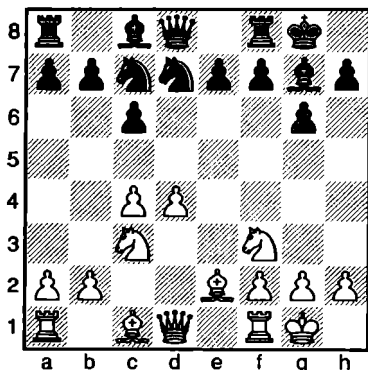
It is an unreasonable move in this situation.

12. — ♙xd4 13. ♖xd4 ♖xd4 14.
♟xd4±

13. ♙c5! ♟c6 14. ♟d5 ♖e8 15. ♖b3
e6 16. ♟e3±

Hernandez, Gi — Miles Linares
1994

7. ♟f3 g6 8. c4 ♟c7 9. ♟c3 ♙g7 10.
0-0 0-0



11. ♙e3

A) 11. ♙f4 c5

11. — ♟e6 12. ♙e3 ♖c7 13. ♖d2
♙d8 14. ♖ad1 ♟e5 15. d5 ♟g4=
Ekström — Zelcic Mitropa Cup
1995

12. dxc5 ♟e6 13. ♙e3 ♙xc3!

13. — ♟exc5 14. ♖c2 a5 15.
a3!±

14. bxc3 ♟dxc5 15. ♟d4 ♙d7 16.
f4!? ♟e4

16. — f5

17. ♙f3 ♟6c5 18. ♟b3 ♖c8 19.
♖d4! ♙c6! =

Watson — Baburin Kilkenny 1994
Baburin;

B) 11. ♖e1 c5 12. d5 b5! = 13. cxb5
♟b6 14. ♙e3 ♟bxd5 15. ♟xd5
♟xd5 16. ♙xc5 ♙xb2 17. ♙c4 ♙b7
18. ♖b1 ♙f6 19. ♙d4! e6 20. ♙xf6
♖xf6 =

de Firmian — Miles Chicago 1994

11. — e5

11. — ♟f6 12. h3 ♟ce8 13. ♖b3
♟d6 14. ♖ad1±

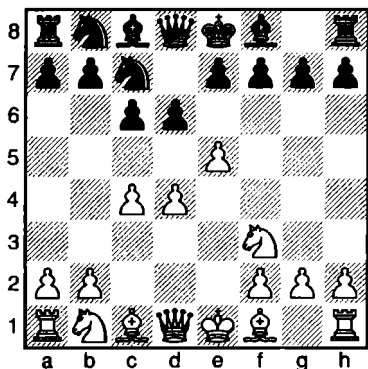
Nunn — Ghinda Hamburg 1984

12. d5 cxd5 13. cxd5 ♟b6 14. ♙c5
♖e8 15. d6 ♟e6 16. ♙a3±

The d6 pawn gives White a slight
advantage.

4.2 — 4. ♟f3 c6 5. c4

1. e4 ♟f6 2. e5 ♟d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♟f3
c6 5. c4 ♟c7



6. h3!

A) 6. exd6

It is an undemanding continuation. Now Black can develop its king side without problems. White should have waited for the Black's moves g6 or ♟d7.

6. — exd6 7. h3

7. d5 ♟e7 8. ♟c3 0-0 9. ♟e3 ♟f6
10. ♖d2 cxd5 11. cxd5 ♟g4 12.
♟e2 ♜e8 13. 0-0 ♟d7 14. h3
♟h5 15. g4?! ♟g6 16. g5 ♟xc3
17. bxc3 ♟c5+ White's pawn
structure is not worth much.
Blatny — Kengis Bern 1995

7. — ♟f5 8. ♟c3 ♟e7=;

B) 6. ♟e2 g6

For the line 6. — ♟g4 see the variation 4. — ♟g4

7. exd6! ♜xd6

7. — exd6 8. ♟g5 ♟e7 9. ♟h6±

8. ♟c3 ♟g7 9. ♟e3 ♟ba6 10.
♜d2±;

C) 6. ♟e3 dxe5 7. ♟xe5 ♟d7 8.
♟d3 g6 9. ♟d2 ♟g7 10. ♟f3 0-0
11. ♟e2 ♟e6 12. 0-0 ♟b6 13. ♟b4
♜c7 14. ♜c1 a5 15. ♟c2 ♜d8 16.
♜d1 ♟a4 17. ♜b1 c5 18. d5 ♟f8 19.
♟f4 ♜b6 20. ♟e3±

White's pieces are arranged more harmoniously. Slobodjan — Günther, Münster 1996

6. — dxe5

A) 6. — g6 7. exd6 ♜xd6 8. ♟c3
♟g7 9. ♟e3 0-0 10. ♜d2 ♟ba6 11.
♟f4±

Lanka — Agafonov USSR 1980;

B) 6. — ♟d7 7. exd6 exd6 8. ♟c3
♟e7 9. ♟d3±

7. ♟xe5 ♟d7 8. ♟f3 g6 9. ♟c3 ♟g7
10. ♟e2 0-0 11. ♟f4 ♟e6

11. — e5 12. dxe5 ♟e6 13. ♟h2
♜b6

Fercec — Zelcic Makarska 1994

14. ♜c2± Videki

12. ♟e3 ♜c7 13. ♜c1! c5 14. dxc5
♟dxc5 15. 0-0 ♟xc3 16. ♜xc3 ♟f4
17. ♟d1

17. ♖f1! ♜xc2† 18. ♖xe2±

17. ♖f1!

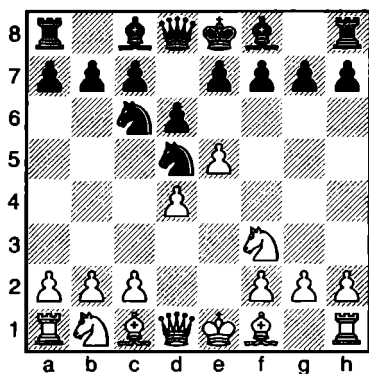
17. ♖d8 18. ♜d4 ♚e5∞

18. ♜d4! a6 19. ♖f3!±

White definitely stands better.
Anand — Suba Palma de Mallorca
1989 Anand

4.3.1 — 4. ♜f3 ♜c6 5. c4 ♜b6 6.
♖e2

1. e4 ♜f6 2. e5 ♜d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♜f3
♜c6



This variation tries to divert from the positionally based continuation which is typical of the lines after the move ♜f3. White can only be effective if it accepts the glove and starts to play chess aggressively. In the case of accurate play Black has troubles in several lines, so this continuation cannot be offered.

5. c4!

A) 5. ♖e2 dxe5 6. ♜xe5 ♜xe5 7.
dxe5 ♖f5=;

B) 5. ♖b5 a6

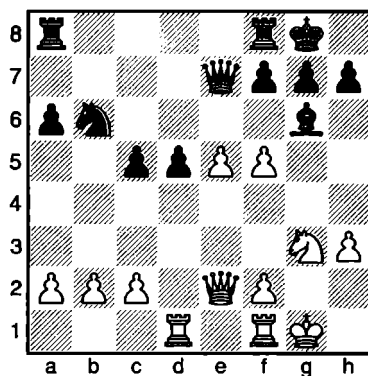
The double pawns on the c-file do not cause problems, even they strengthen Black's centre, while the bishop will be missing in the opening positions.

6. ♖xc6†

6. ♖a4 ♜b6 7. ♖xc6† bxc6 8.
0-0 ♖g4 9. ♚e2 ♚d7 10. h3 ♖h5
11. ♜c3 e6 12. ♖g5 d5! Black
gets an excellent play in the cen-
tre. 13. ♖ad1

13. ♖e3 c5 14. dxc5 ♜c4†

13. — c5 14. dxc5 ♖xc5 15.
♜e4 ♖e7 16. g4?! ♖g6 17. ♖xe7
♚xe7 18. ♜g3 0-0 19. ♜d4 c5
20. ♜df5 exf5 21. gxf5



21. — ♖xf5!

21. — ♖g5?! 22. fxg6∞ Lastin
— Dyachkov 1996

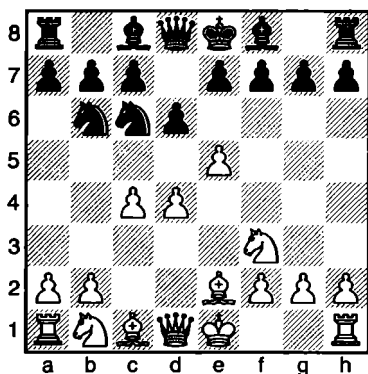
22. ♘xf5 ♖e6! 23. ♖g4 g6 24.
♘h6† ♘g7 25. ♖xe6 fxe6 26.
♘g4 ♖f4† Having a considerable
benefit in the endgame.

6. — bxc6 7. c4

7. h3 ♖f5 8. ♘a3 e6 9. ♘c4 ♖e7
10. ♖e2 0-0 11. 0-0 ♖d7 12.
♘a5 ♖fb8 13. a3 c5 14. c4 ♖a4!
15. ♖d2 ♘f4 16. ♖e3 ♘d3 17. b4
♖d7 18. exd6 cxd6 19. ♖ab1
♖d8!† Oll — Komarov 1984

7. — ♘b6 8. b3 ♖f5 9. 0-0 e6 10.
♖b2 ♖e7 11. ♖e2 0-0 12. ♘bd2 a5
13. a4 ♘d7 14. ♖fd1 ♖e8 15. ♖ac1
♖b8 16. h3 dxe5 17. ♘xe5 ♘xe5
18. ♖xe5 c5!† Slobodjan — Var-
ga, Z Budapest 1994

5. — ♘b6 6. ♖e2!?



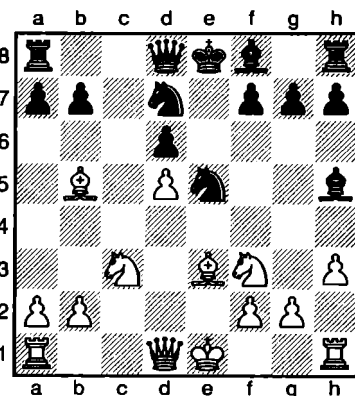
It seems to be a stereotyped, force-

less move, so it is difficult to find
previous examples of it. But it is a
quite cunning move, by my opinion
and it is worth dealing with it.

A) 6. ♘c3 ♖g4 7. exd6 cxd6

7. — exd6! =

8. ♖e3 e6 9. h3 ♖h5 10. d5! exd5
11. cxd5 ♘e5 12. ♖b5† ♘bd7



13. ♘xe5! ♖xd1 14. ♖xd7† ♘e7 15.
♘c6†! bxc6 16. dxc6 ♖a5 17. ♖xd1
♖d8 18. b4! ♖xb4 19. 0-0 ♖xc3 20.
♖d4 ♖c4 21. ♖fe1† ♖e6 22. ♖xe6
fxe6 23. ♖b1+— and White's win is
well-deserved. Zhelnin — Dyach-
kov Orel 1996

B) 6. exd6 exd6 7. d5

a) 7. ♖e3 ♖e7 8. ♖e2

8. ♘c3 ♖g4 9. h3 ♖xf3 10. ♖xf3
0-0 11. h4 ♖f6∞ Videki 12.
0-0-0 ♖e8

8. — ♖g4 9. d5 ♙xf3 10. ♙xf3 ♜e5 11. ♙e2 0-0 12. ♜d2 f5 13. f4 ♜g4 14. ♙xg4 fxg4 15. 0-0 ♞d7 16. ♞c2± Kobaliya — Nikolaev St Petersburg 1997;

B) 7. ♙e2 ♙e7 8. d5 ♜e5 9. ♜xe5 dxe5 10. 0-0 0-0 11. ♜c3 f5 12. f4 ♙c5† 13. ♜h1 e4 14. ♞b1 a5 15. b3 ♙d7 16. ♞c2 ♞e7 17. ♜d1 c6 18. dxc6 ♙xc6= Rublevsky — Morozevich Moscow 1996

7. — ♜e5 8. ♜d4

8. ♜xe5 dxe5 9. ♙d3 ♙b4† 10. ♜c3 0-0 11. 0-0 f5∞ Przewoznik — Bohm Polanica Zdroj 1980

8. — c5

8. — ♙e7 9. ♙e2 0-0 10. b3 c5!= Gurevich, V — Pogorelov USSR 1988

9. dxc6 ♜xc6=

Planning the further move d5. Pogorelov.

6. — dxe5

This is the only move which does not turn into other variation, but here White has an exciting chance sacrificing its pawn. For the line 6. — ♙g4± see the variation 4. — ♙g4.

6. — g6 7. exd6 cxd6 8. d5!?

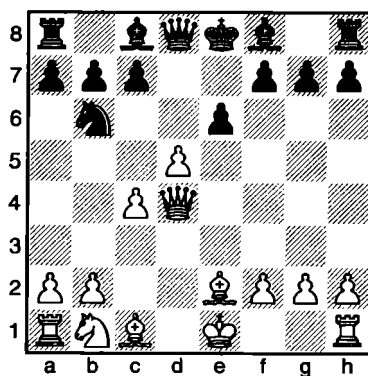
For the line 8. ♜c3 ♙g7 see the variation 4. — g6

8. — ♜e5 9. ♜xe5±

7. d5! ♜d4 8. ♜xd4 exd4 9. ♞xd4

The queen is standing in the centre marvelously. Black meets great difficulties if it wants its c8 bishop to bring into play and intends to castle.

9. — e6



10. 0-0

10. ♜c3 c6 11. ♙f3 exd5 12. cxd5 ♙e6 13. 0-0 cxd5 14. ♞el ♞d7 15. ♙g5± h6 16. ♙h4 ♞c8 17. ♜xd5 ♞c4 18. ♞xe6† ♞xe6 19. ♜c7† 1-0

Kovacevic, A — Zlatic Yugoslavia 1994

10. — c6

10. — exd5 11. c5 ♘d7

11. — ♘c4 12. c6 ♘

12. ♙b5 c6 13. ♚e1† ♙e7 14. ♜xg7 ♜f8 15. ♙g5 f6 16. ♙e2 ♘xc5 17. ♙h5† ♘d7 18. ♙g4† ♘e8 19. ♙h6 ♘

11. ♘c3 cxd5 12. cxd5 ♘xd5 13. ♚d1 f6

13. — ♙e7? 14. ♘xd5 exd5 15. ♜xg7 ♙f6 16. ♙b5† ♘e7 17. ♙g5+

14. ♙c4±

Videki

14. ♙h5†?! g6± Bronstein,L — Paglilla Buenos Aires 1985

14. — ♜b6? 15. ♘xd5 ♜xd4 16. ♘c7† ♘d7 17. ♙f4!+—

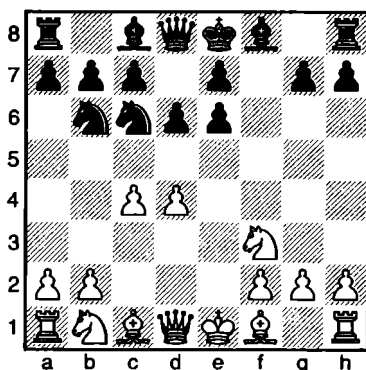
Summarizing it is rather difficult to give Black a good piece of advice what to do against 6. ♙e2. Perhaps the best reply is 6. — ♙g4.

4.3.2 — 4. ♘f3 ♘c6 5. c4 ♘b6 6. e6 fxe6 7. ♘g5

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♘f3 ♘c6 5. c4 ♘b6 6. e6 fxe6

The following diagram will show the most frequent and thus the most

popular position of this variation.



Black has an extra pawn, but its advance is rather problematical. White usually starts an attack against the weakened king side. Black places trust in its strong centre searching for counter-chances there, and it even leaves its king in the middle of the back rank intentionally a lot of times and expects shelter having its centre pawns. The main feature of this continuation is the frequently upset material balance and it is the reason of its popularity as well. White generally sacrifices more pawns, while Black gives White an exchange, sometimes its queen to avert the attack and get some chances to play.

7. ♘g5

A) 7. h4

It is premature here, it is better to

wait for the black move g6.

7. — e5 8. d5

8. dxe5 ♖g4!

8. — ♘d4 9. ♘xd4 exd4 10. ♖xd4

10. ♙d3 ♖d7=

10. — ♖d7 11. ♙e2 e5 12. dxe6

♖xe6 13. ♖h3

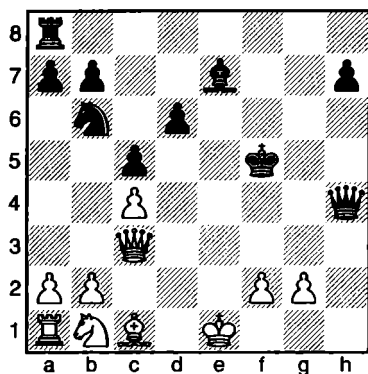
13. ♙g5 ♖e5=

13. — c5 14. ♖c3 ♙e7 15. ♗e3 ♖f7

16. ♙h5 ♖xh5 17. ♖xg7 ♖xh4 18.

♖xh8† ♘f7 19. ♖f3† ♙f5 20. ♖xf5†

♘g6 21. ♖c3 ♘xf5



This extraordinary position has already occurred in three games! Although the back monarch is in the middle of the board without its protecting pieces, which is usually not a good omen in middle games, but White's forces are entirely undeveloped, so it has nothing to fear. The endgames coming into existence are

more favourable for Black because of the active black pieces.

22. ♖d3†

a) 22. ♘d2 ♘e6 23. ♖h3† ♖xh3

24. gxf3 ♙f6= Marinkovic —

Bagirov Leningrad 1989;

b) 22. ♖f3† ♘g6 23. ♙e3 ♙f6 24.

g3 ♖xc4 25. ♘d2 ♖e6= Nei —

Honfi Zalaegerszeg 1969

22. — ♖e4† 23. ♖xe4† ♘xe4 24.

♘a3 ♙f6 25. f3† ♘f5= Silva — Dix

cr 1990;

B) 7. ♙d3 e5 8. d5 ♘b4 9. ♙e4

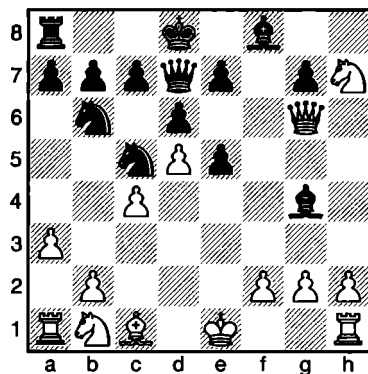
9. ♘g5 ♘xd3† 10. ♖xd3 e6 11.

♘xh7 ♖e7= Bagirov

9. — ♙g4 10. a3 ♘a6 11. ♖c2 ♖d7

12. ♘g5 ♘c5 13. ♙xh7 ♖xh7 14.

♖g6† ♘d8 15. ♘xh7



15. — ♖f5 16. ♖xf5 ♙xf5 17. ♘xf8

♘b3=

Van der Wiel — Bohm The Netherlands 1981;

C) 7. ♙e3!? g6 8. h4 ♙g7 9. h5 e5 10. hxg6 exd4

10. — ♙g4 11. ♖xh7 ♖xh7 12. gxh7 exd4 13. ♖d3 ♙xf3 14. ♖g6† ♘d7 15. gxf3 ♘e5 16. ♖xg7 dxe3 17. f4± Herbrechtsmeier — Kindl corr. 1985

11. ♘xd4 ♘xd4 12. ♙xd4 e5 13. ♙xb6 axb6 14. gxh7± Bagirov

7. — e5 8. ♙d3

This is the sharpest line. It is analyzed very well thanks to Marcinkiewicz chess correspondence player. Black also seems to be OK.

A) 8. ♖f3?! ♘xd4 9. ♖f7† ♘d7 10. ♙e3 h6! 11. ♙xd4 hxg5 12. ♙xe5 ♖e8 13. ♖f3 ♘d8 14. ♘c3?

14. ♙c3±

14. — dxe5 15. c5 ♘d7±

White has not got enough play for the piece. Bondar — Komarov USSR 1984;

B) 8. d5 ♘d4 9. ♙d3 g6!? 10. h4!?

10. ♘h7 ♙f5∞

10. — ♙f5 11. h5 ♙g7 12. hxg6 ♙xg6 13. ♘c3!? c6 14. ♙e3 e6 15. ♙xg6† hxg6 16. ♖xh8† ♙xh8 17. dxe6 ♖e7 18. ♖d3↑

Drozдов — Nosenko Kharkov 1988

8. — ♘xd4

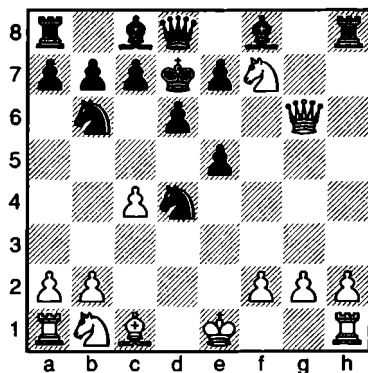
8. — g6? 9. ♘xh7±

9. ♙xh7

A) 9. ♖h5† g6 10. ♙xg6† hxg6 11. ♖xg6†

11. ♖xh8? ♘c2† 12. ♘d1 ♙f5! 13. ♘e6 ♙xe6 14. ♘xc2 ♖d7±

11. — ♘d7 12. ♘f7



12. — ♘xc4!±

It would be a difficult decision behing the board during a game!

a) 12. — ♖e8 13. ♘xh8 ♖xg6 14. ♘xg6 ♘c2†!?

14. — ♙g7 15. ♘a3 ♘xc4 16. ♘xc4! ♘c2† 17. ♘d1 ♘xa1 18. ♙g5 ♙e8 19. ♘e3!

19. ♘d2? ♘c2! Marcinkiewicz,J

19. — e4 20. ♘c1 ♙e6 21.

♘b1+- *Marcinkiewicz* — ♔d3†+
Kretschmar corr. 1988

15. ♘d1

15. ♘d2 ♖xa1 16. ♖xf8† ♘e8
 17. b3 ♘xf8 18. ♔b2 ♖xb3† 19.
 axb3 ♔f5+

15. — ♖xa1 16. ♖xf8† ♘e8 17.
 ♔h6

13. ♖xd8

13. ♖xh8 c6

13. — ♘xd8 14. b3 ♔f5 15. ♖f7
 ♖b6 16. ♔e3

16. ♔b2 ♔e6 17. ♖g6 ♔h6 18.
 ♖g3 ♖c2†

16. — ♔h7! 17. ♖g8 ♖c2† 18. ♘e2
 ♘d7 19. ♔xb6 axb6 20. ♖c3 ♔g7
 21. ♖c4 ♔g4+

Of course White can also choose
 other moves but the queen sacrifice
 seems to be correct. Wydrowski-
 Marcinkiewicz corr. 1997 Marcin-
 kiewicz;

B) 9. ♖xh7?! ♔e6+

9. — ♔xh7 10. ♖xh7 ♔f5 11. ♖a3
 ♖xc4!? 12. ♖xc4

12. ♖a4† b5 13. ♖xb5 ♔d7 14.
 ♖xc4 ♔xb5 15. ♖g8 ♘d7

12. — ♖c2† 13. ♘f1 ♖xa1 14.
 ♖xf8 ♘xf8 15. ♖e3 ♖d7 16. ♔d2

16. ♖f3? g6 17. g4 ♖c6 18. ♖xc6

16. — ♖c2

16. — ♔d3† 17. ♘g1 d5 18. ♖xa1
 d4 19. ♖f1 e4

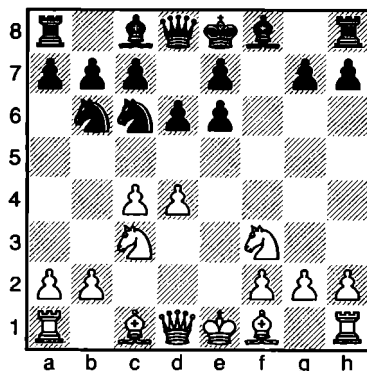
Van der Tak

17. ♖xc2 ♖a4 18. ♖e3 ♔d3† 19.
 ♘g1 ♖xa2

Van der Tak

4.3.3 — 4. ♖f3 ♖c6 5. c4 ♖b6 6.
 e6 fxe6 7. ♖c3

1. e4 ♖f6 2. e5 ♖d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♖f3
 ♖c6 5. c4 ♖b6 6. e6 fxe6 7. ♖c3!



White does not pledge itself making
 it dependent on Black's reply that it
 starts the king side attack or tries to
 get the advantageous position in the
 centre.

7. — g6

7. — e5 8. d5 ♘d4 9. ♘xd4 exd4 10. ♘xd4 e5 11. ♘d1!?

This line has no much “theory”, but if White can keep the e4 point it will expect a small but solid benefit.

11. dxe6 ♙xe6 12. ♙e2 ♘f6!

12. — ♘e7?! 13. 0-0 ♘f7 14. ♙g5 ♘xc4 15. ♙fe1!±

13. ♘xf6 gxf6 14. b3 d5! 15. cxd5 ♙b4 16. ♙d2 ♘xd5 17. ♘xd5 ♙xd2† 18. ♘xd2 0-0-0 19. ♘c3 ♙xd5

The move 19. — ♙xd5 is better.

20. ♙hd1 ♙xd1 21. ♙xd1± Kudrin — Segal Reno 1994

11. — ♙f5 12. ♙d3±

8. h4 ♙g7 9. ♙e3

9. h5?! e5 10. d5 ♘d4 11. hxc6 ♙g4!± 12. gxh7 ♘d7 13. ♙d3 0-0-0 14. ♙e3 ♙d8 15. ♙xd4 exd4 16. ♘e4 ♙xf3 17. gxf3 e6 18. dxe6 ♘xe6 19. ♘e2 d5

19. — ♘d7!= Fleck

20. c5 dxe4 21. cxb6 ♘xb6 22. ♙xe4 d3

22. — ♙h6 23. ♘f1± Campora — Bischoff Bad Aibling 1982

23. ♘xd3 ♙d8 24. ♘c4 ♘xb2 25. 0-0±

Kindermann — Fleck FRG 1983

9. — e5

For the line 9. — 0-0 10. h5 e5 11. d5 see the current variation.

9. — d5 10. c5 ♘d7

10. — ♘c4? 11. ♙xc4 dxc4 12. ♘a4±

11. h5 e5 12. h6 ♙f6 13. ♘xd5 exd4 14. ♘xd4 ♙xd4 15. ♙xd4 ♘xd4 16. ♘xd4 e5 17. ♘c4 c6 18. ♘c3±

White has the advantage without taking risk. (18. ♘c7†!? ♘xc7 19. ♘e6† ♘d8 20. 0-0-0 Nunn)

10. d5 ♘d4

10. — ♘b4 11. a3 ♘a6 12. h5 ♙f5

12. — gxh5 13. ♘g5 ♙g4 14. f3 ♙f5 15. ♙d3↑

13. hxc6 hxc6 14. ♙xh8† ♙xh8 15. ♘g5± ♘c8

15. — c6 16. g4 ♙d7 17. ♘d3+—

16. ♙e2 c6 17. g4 ♙d7 18. ♘d3 ♘d8 19. c5!↑

It does not let the black monarch escape. Korneev — Diachkov Elista 1996 Ftacnik

11. ♘xd4 exd4 12. ♙xd4 ♙xd4

12. — e5 13. ♙e3 ♘e7 14. ♘e4

14. ♘d2!±

14. — ♙f5 15. ♙d3 0-0 16. ♙cl ♘d7 17. h5 gxh5 18. ♘xh5 ♙g6 19. ♘h4 ♙ae8 20. ♘e2±

Kudrin — Behrhorst Lugano 1983

4.4 — 4. ♖f3 ♜b6

13. ♖xd4 0-0 14. h5 e5! 15. dxe6
 ♖f6 16. ♖xf6 ♜xf6 17. hxc6 hxc6
 18. ♜b5

18. ♜e4 ♜f4∞

Lau — Fleck FRG 1984

18. — ♜xe6†

18. — ♜xe6! 19. ♜xc7 ♜af8!

19. — ♜c8 20. ♜xe6 ♜xe6† 21.
 ♜d2 ♜xc4† 22. ♜xc4 ♜xc4 23.
 ♜ae1±

20. f3! ♜xc4 21. ♜xc4† ♜xc4 22.
 0-0-0 ♜e3 23. ♜d5±

Bosch

19. ♜d2 ♜e7 20. ♜d3 a6 21. ♜d4
 ♜g7 22. ♜ae1!

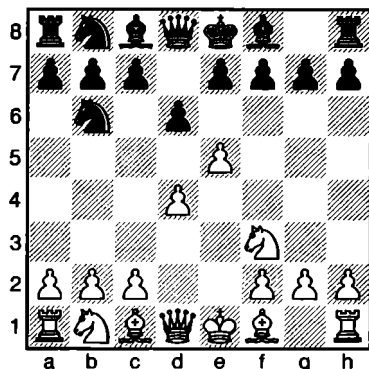
22. ♜h4 c5!±

Bosch — Pajeken Gelsenkirchen 1997

22. — ♜xe1 23. ♜xe1 ♜f7 24. b3
 ♜d7 25. ♜e3±

Summarizing White cannot get a considerable advantage in the 7. ♜c3 line but Black has not got the chance either to reach a promising position which queries the meaning of the move 4. — ♜c6 by itself. Bosch.

1. e4 ♜f6 2. e5 ♜d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♜f3
 ♜b6!?



Recently, in the accelerated world of chess, the openings advance extremely much, among others, because of the development of the computer programmes. The Alekhine Defence is not an exception either, and now we have arrived at a move which lives its prosperity and which perhaps have gone through a great improvement during the previous years. The basic idea of the modern treatment of this variation, which has a plenty of new strategic thoughts, is that Black avoids the dangerous systems with ♜c4 and puts pressure on the centre later on by its pieces.

5. a4

It is a consistent move which wants to pursuit the knight further on that has already made many moves.

A) 5. ♗e2

It is a frequent move maintaining the opportunity of transition to other main lines later on.

5. — g6 6. 0-0 ♗g7 7. exd6 cxd6 8. a4

The move 8. c4 is dealt with later by analyzing the main line.

8. — a5?!

It makes a hole on b5, although the other continuations are also favourable for White.

9. ♘c3 d5!? 10. ♗f4 0-0 11. ♘b5 ♘a6 12. ♗e1 ♗g4 13. c3 ♗c8 14. b3 ♘b8 15. ♖d2 ♘c6 16. h3±

Fehér — Krizsány Budapest 1994;

B) 5. ♘c3

It is a sharp and very unpleasant line in which White can have a king side attack by developing its pieces quickly.

5. — g6 6. ♗f4

By this move White is striving to exploit the weakened dark squares carrying on with the move ♖d2.

6. — ♗g7

6. — ♗g4 Black will have an inferior position very fast. 7. h3 ♗xf3 8. ♖xf3 ♘c6 9. 0-0-0 ♗g7

10. ♗b5 0-0 11. ♗xc6 bxc6 12. ♖xc6 ♗b8 13. h4+ Gobet — Landenbergue Bern 1989

7. ♖d2

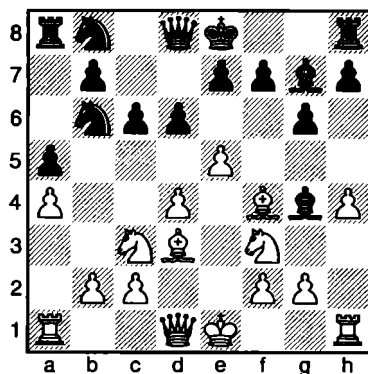
The best-known and most obvious move.

a) 7. h3 ♘c6 Black takes the e5 point under its surveillance. 8. exd6 cxd6 9. ♖d2 ♘b4

9. — ♘a5!? 10. ♗b5† ♗d7 11. ♖e2 0-0 12. ♗d3

10. a3 ♘d4d5 11. ♘xd5 ♘xd5 12. ♗h6 ♗xh6 13. ♖xh6 ♖a5† 14. ♖d2 ♖xd2† 15. ♗xd2 e6 16. ♗d3 ♘f4 17. ♗b5† ♗d7= Dobos — Gyimesi Balatonberény 1992;

b) 7. ♗b5† ♗d7 8. a4 a5 9. h4 White has a good play. 9. — c6 10. ♗d3 ♗g4



11. h5 It is the crucial position. Black must play very accurately

now. 11. — ♖xh5 12. e6! fxe6
13. ♖xh5 gxh5 14. ♜g5 ♘d7 15.
♙xh5 ♙g8?!

15. — ♖xd4

16. ♘f1 ♖a6 17. ♜xe6 ♜c7 18.
♙f5 ♜xe6 19. ♖e1 ♘c7 20. ♖xe6
♖e8 21. ♜e4± Oratovski —
Videki Gstaad 1994;

c) 7. a4 a5 8. ♖b5† c6 9. ♖d3?!

9. ♖e2!?

9. — 0-0 10. 0-0 ♖g4 11. h3
♖xf3 12. ♙xf3 The acquired
bishop pair will not be really
effective in this almost closed
position. 12. — dxe5 13. dxe5
♜8d7 14. ♙e3?! e6 15. ♖fe1 ♙e7
16. ♖ad1 ♙b4 17. ♙c1 ♜d5?!

17. — ♜c5 18. ♖g5 ♙fe8±

18. ♖d2 ♙b6 19. ♜xd5 cxd5 20.
♖c3 ♖fc8 21. ♖b5 ♖xc3! 22.
bxc3 ♜xe5± Black has consider-
able chances to play because of
its opponent's weak pawns and
powerless bishop. Tirard — Kri-
zsány Agneaux 1998

7. — 0-0

7. — h6 8. h3 ♜c6 9. e6 White
gets a dangerous initiative. 9. —
fxe6 10. ♖d3 g5 11. ♖g6† ♘d7
12. ♖g3 ♖f8 13. 0-0-0 ♜b4 14.
♜e4 ♜4d5 15. ♜c5† ♘c6 16.
♖d3 dxc5 17. dxc5 ♖xf3 18. gxf3
♜a4 19. c4 ♜xb2 20. cxd5†
exd5∞ Van Mil — Varga, Z Bu-

dapest 1993

8. ♖h6

White prevails on the king side.

8. — dxe5 9. ♖xg7 ♘xg7 10. ♜xe5
♜8d7 11. ♜g4 f5 12. ♙h6† ♘h8 13.
♜e3 ♜f6 14. 0-0-0 ♖d7 15. h3 e6
16. g4±

Veinger — Neckar Kusadasi 1990;

C) 5. exd6 cxd6

5. — exd6±

6. ♖d3

By moving 6. c4 White turns to the
variation 4. — g6 of the Alekhine
Defence, which is dealt with later.

6. d5 ♜8d7 7. ♖g5 ♜f6 8. ♜c3
g6 9. a4 a5 10. ♖b5†±;

6. — g6 7. 0-0 ♖g7 8. a4 0-0 9. a5
♜d5 10. ♖c4 ♜f6 11. d5 ♙c7 12.
♖b3 ♖g4 13. h3 ♖xf3 14. ♙xf3
♜bd7 15. ♖e1 ♖fe8 16. ♜c3 a6 17.
♖d2

White has a more active position,
but it is difficult to exploit Black's
only weakness, the e7 point.

17. — ♜c5 18. ♖c4 ♖ac8 19. ♖f1
♜cd7 20. ♖a4 ♜c5 21. ♙d1 ♜ed7
22. ♙a1±

King — Karolyi Kecskemet 1988;

D) 5. ♖f4

It is not the most accurate move
order.

5. — g6 6. ♙e2 ♙g7 7. 0-0 0-0 8. ♘bd2 ♘c6 9. c3

White was threatened by the move ♘xd4.

9. — dxe5 10. dxe5 ♙e6

Black has enough time to develop.

11. ♙b5 ♖d5 12. ♖e2 a6 13. c4 ♖d7 14. ♙xc6 ♖xc6 15. b3 ♙ad8 16. ♖e3 ♙g4?!

16. — ♙f5 17. ♘d4 ♖d7 18. ♘xf5 ♖xf5+

17. h3 ♙xf3 18. ♘xf3 ♘d7 19. ♙ad1 ♘c5 20. ♙g3 a5=

Conquest — Dunnington London 1989;

E) 5. ♙b5+

This fine intermediate move is usual after 5. a4 a5, but here it seems to be premature a little.

5. — c6 6. ♙d3

6. ♙e2

6. — ♙g4 7. 0-0 dxe5 8. dxe5 e6 9. a3

9. h3 ♙xf3 10. ♖xf3 ♘d8 11. ♙f4

9. — ♘d7 10. ♙f4 ♘c5 11. ♙e2 ♖xd1 12. ♙xd1 ♘d5 13. ♙g3 ♘e4 14. ♘bd2 ♘g3 15. hxg3 0-0-0 16. c4 ♘b6 17. ♘e4 ♙xd1+ 18. ♙xd1 ♙e7 19. b4 ♘d7 20. ♘d6+ ♙xd6 21. exd6±

Stripunsky — Cosma Bucharest

1994

5. — a5

It is the simplest reply solving the problems of the knight once and for all.

A) 5. — c6

After this move Black has to face serious difficulties.

6. a5 ♘d5 7. ♙e2 g6 8. 0-0 ♙g7 9. c4 ♘c7 10. exd6±

Sigurjonsson — Larsen Ljubljana 1977;

B) 5. — g6

This move is against the positional-ly based play.

6. a5 ♘d6 7. ♙c4 e6 8. 0-0 d5 9. ♙g5 ♙e7 10. ♙xe7 ♖xe7 11. ♙e2 0-0 12. c4 dxc4 13. ♘c3 c5 14. d5 exd5 15. ♘xd5±

Naiditsch — Varga, Z 1998

6. ♙b5+

It is a useful intermediate move which taking the place away from the knight after the only move c6.

A) 6. ♘c3

White is conducted by similar ideas as it is in the line without 5. a4 a5.

6. — g6

6. — dxe5 7. ♘xe5 ♘d7 8. ♙f4 ♘xe5 9. ♙xe5 c6 10. ♙e2 ♙f5 11. g4 ♙g6 12. h4 h5 13. gxh5

14. ♖d2 e6 15. ♜d1 ♜d5 16.
 ♜e3 ♜xe3 17. fxe3 ♙e4 18. ♜h2
 Adams — Drazic 1997

7. exd6?!

It is not too logical to give up the centre in such an easy way, but in spite of it White will get a good play.

7. — cxd6

Black endeavours to end the symmetry but it is not without taking any risks.

8. ♙b5† ♙d7 9. h4 h6 10. ♖e2 ♙g7
 11. h5 g5 12. ♜e4 ♖c7 13. c3 ♜c6
 14. 0-0 f5 15. ♜ed2 0-0 16. ♜c4

Black got a rather awkward situation because of its open king position.

16. — ♜d5 17. ♜e3 ♜b6 18. d5
 ♜e5 19. ♜xe5 dxe5 20. ♙xd7 ♜xd7
 21. g4 fxg4 22. ♜xg4±

Borocz — Krizsany Budapest 1992;

B) 6. ♙f4 g6 7. ♙b5† c6 8. ♙d3
 ♜d5 9. ♙g3 ♙g7

9. — ♖b6∞

10. 0-0 0-0 11. ♜bd2 dxe5?!

11. — ♜b4 12. exd6 exd6 13.
 ♜c4 d5 14. ♜d6 ♜xd3=

12. ♙xe5 ♜d7 13. ♙xg7 ♜xg7 14.
 ♜el ♜7b6 15. c3 ♙g4 16. h3 ♙xf3
 17. ♜xf3 e6 18. ♖d2±

Korneev — Murrey Bastia 1997

6. — c6

6. — ♙d7?! 7. e6!?!±

7. ♙d3

To bring the bishop back on e2 has to be taken into account.

7. ♙e2 dxe5 8. ♜xe5 ♜8d7 9. ♜d3
 g6 10. ♜d2 ♙g7 11. ♜f3 0-0=

7. — ♙g4

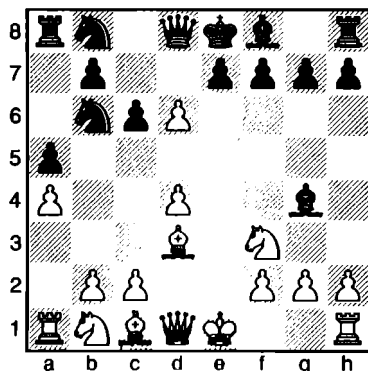
7. — g6 8. h3 ♙g7 9. ♖e2 0-0 10.
 0-0 dxe5 11. dxe5 ♜a6 12. c3

12. ♜d1 ♖c7 13. ♙e3∞

12. — ♜c5 13. ♙c2 ♙e6 14. ♜bd2
 ♖c7 15. ♜el ♜ad8 16. ♜d4 ♙d5 17.
 ♜2f3 ♙c4∞

Sherzer — Gyimesi 1996

8. exd6!?



Although this move makes the advance easier for Black, it leads to

White's solid, better position.

8. h3

White gets the bishop pair, but it has a weak pawn on e5 which can be attacked.

8. — xxf3 9. xxf3 dxe5 10. dxe5 e6 11. g3 d8d7 12. c3 c7 13. f4 0-0-0 14. 0-0 g6 15. h1 c5 16. e2 1/2-1/2

Hazai — Krizsany Kecskemét 1992

8. — exd6

8. — xd6

The queen is put into action too early getting to a bad place.

9. bd2 e6+?! 10. e2 d5?! 11. h3 f5 12. c4 d7 13. 0-0 g6 14. c3 c2

14. — xh3 15. g5! e6 16. e1 f6 17. xe6 xe6 18. g4 f6 19. g5! xg5 20. d6+—

15. d2 e4 16. g5 f5 17. g4 h6 18. gxf5 xg5+ 19. xg5 hxg5 20. xg5

With White's obvious advantage. Kudrin — Khmelnsky USA 1995

9. 0-0 e7 10. e1 d8d7

10. — 0-0

Here it is White again that has to fight to equal the game.

11. e2 e6 12. e4±

11. g5 e6 12. xe7 xe7 13. c4

13. d2!? h6 14. c3 0-0 15. e2

With the plan of further ae1±

13. — 0-0 14. c3 d8 15. b3

15. c2!? h6 16. b3± Chekhov,V

15. — g4 16. e3 f6

Siklosi — Chekhov Kecskemet 1991

Chapter 5

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♘f3 dxe5

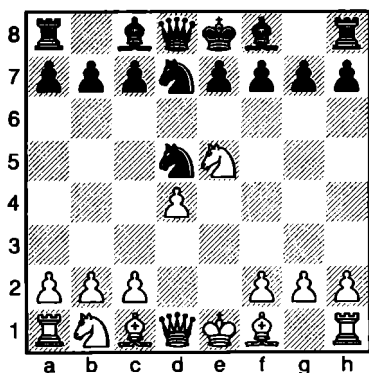
5.1.1 — 4. ♘f3 dxe5 5. ♘xe5 ♘d7
6. ♙c4

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♘f3
dxe5 5. ♘xe5

5. dxe5?!

The e5 pawn is a suitable target for Black's attack.

5. — ♘d7



It is considered one of the most provocative move in the Alekhine Defence. And that is true, for the move 6. ♘xf7 upsets the balance extremely.

6. ♙c4

A) 6. c4?! ♘xe5 7. cxd5 ♘d7! =;

B) 6. ♙e2 ♘xe5 7. dxe5 ♙f5 8. 0-0 e6 9. ♙f3 c6 10. ♖e2 ♙e7 11. ♜d1 ♖c7 =

Geller — Korneev Elista 1995

6. — ♘xe5 7. dxe5 c6

7. — ♙e6

7. — e6? 8. 0-0 ♙e7 9. ♖g4±

8. 0-0 g6 9. ♘d2 ♙g7 10. ♘f3 c6

10. — 0-0 11. ♖e2

11. ♖d4 ♘e3!?

11. — c6

11. — ♙g4!? Videki 12. ♜d1 c6

12. h3 b5 13. ♙b3 a5 14. a4 ♖b6

15. ♜d1 ♜ad8 16. ♙d2 b4 17.

♖e4 ♘c7 18. ♙e3 ♖b7 19. ♙xe6

♘xe6 20. ♘d2 ♜d5 21. ♘c4 ♜fd8

22. ♜d3 ♜xd3 23. cxd3 ♜d5 24.

f4± The g7 bishop kept out of

play. Adams — Motwani Black-

pool 1990

11. ♖d4 ♘e3!?

11. — ♖c7 12. ♜e1 ♜d8 13. ♙b3

♖b6 14. ♖h4 h6 15. ♘d4 ♙c8

16. c3 e6 17. ♙d2 ♘e7 18. ♜ad1

♖c7 19. ♘f3 b5 20. c4 bxc4

21. ♖xc4 0-0 22. ♙b4± Benja-

min,J — Kaidanov,G Philadel-

phia 1992

12. ♖xd8† ♜xd8 13. ♙xe6 ♜xc2
14. ♙xf7† ♜xf7 15. ♜b1=

Videki;

8. ♖f3

A) 8. ♜c3?! ♙e6 9. ♖f3 ♜b4! 10.
♙xe6 ♜xc2†;

B) 8. 0-0 ♙f5!

This is the right setup.

9. ♜d2 e6 10. a3?!

White chooses a rather sophisticated
plan in this game.

10. — ♙e7 11. ♙a2 0-0 12. ♜b3
♜c7 13. ♜e2 ♜ad8 14. ♙b1 ♖b6!

It hinders the move c4.

15. ♖f3 f6 16. exf6 ♙xf6†

Yermolinsky — Shabalov Hudson
1993

8. — ♜c7!

8. — ♙e6? 9. 0-0 ♜c7

9. — ♜c7!? (9. — g6) 10. ♙xe6
♜xe6 11. ♜c3 with the plan of
further ♙e3 and ♜e4;

10. ♜el g6 11. ♜c3 ♜d8 12. ♜xd5
♙xd5 13. e6!±

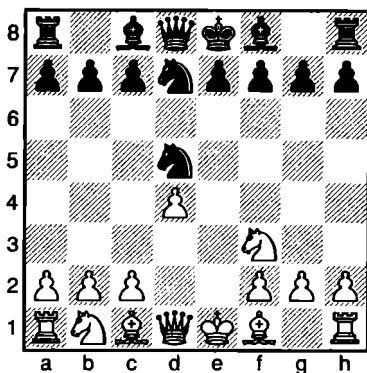
Van der Wiel — Pliester 1990

9. ♙f4 g5!? 10. ♙g3 h5 11. ♜c3!
♙e6 12. h4 ♜f4!?

Van der Wiel (12. — ♜a5!?)

5.1.2 — 4. ♜f3 dxe5 5. ♜xe5 ♜d7
6. ♜f3

1. e4 d6 2. e5 d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♜f3
dxe5 5. ♜xe5 ♜d7 6. ♜f3!



This move shows that the knight on
d7 only disturb interferes Black's
advance. As a matter of fact the dark
horses would cause troubles to
Black than help it.

6. — e6

A) 6. — ♜7f6?!

The d5 knight needs the square f6.

7. c4 ♜b6 8. ♜c3 ♙g4 9. h3 ♙h5
10. g4 ♙g6 11. ♜e5 e6 12. ♙g2
♜c8 13. ♜b3 c6 14. ♙f4 ♜fd7 15.
♜xg6 hxg6 16. ♜e4±

White has a superior position. Ni-
nov — Graf Odessa 1990;

B) 6. — g6?! 7. c4 ♜5f6

7. — ♖5b6 8. ♜c3 c6 9. c5 ♜d5
10. ♜xd5 cxd5 11. ♙e2 ♙g7 12.
0-0 0-0 13. ♙f4 ♜b8 14. b4 ♜c6
15. b5 ♜xd4 16. ♜xd4 e5 17.
♙e3± Reeh — Maus 1991

8. ♜c3 ♙g7 9. ♙d3 0-0 10. 0-0 c5
11. d5 ♜e8 12. ♙e1 ♜d6 13. ♙g5
♙f6 14. ♙d2 ♜b6 15. ♙f4 ♙xg5
16. ♜xg5 f6 17. ♜e6±

It turns out that Black does not play
this opening very often. Kotronias
— Topalov Elenite 1992

7. g3!?

It is a quite simple move, but the
positions coming into being after it
are awkward for Black.

7. c4 ♜5f6 8. ♙e2

8. ♜c3 c5 9. ♙e2

9. d5 exd5 10. cxd5 ♙d6 11.
♙g5 h6 12. ♙h4 0-0 13. ♙e2
♜e5 14. 0-0 ♜g6 15. ♙g3 a6
16. a4 b6 17. ♙e1 ♙b7= Benjamin
— Bagirov Manila ol 1992

9. — cxd4 10. ♙xd4 ♙c5 11.
♙h4 b6 12. 0-0 ♙b7 13. ♙g5 h6
14. ♙ad1 ♙g8 15. ♙xf6 gxf6?

*The line 15. — ♙xf6 16. ♙g3 is
better.*

16. ♙xh6 ♙e7 17. ♙f4 f5 18.
♜b5± Stefansson — Komarov
Leeuwarden 1995

8. — c5

8. — ♙e7 9. 0-0 0-0 10. ♜c3 c5
11. ♙f4! a6

A) 11. — b6 12. d5±

B) 11. — cxd4 12. ♙xd4 ♜c5
13. ♙fd1 ♙xd4 14. ♜xd4 ♜fe4
15. ♜xe4 ♜xe4 16. ♙f3 ♜g5 17.
♙e2 ♜e4 18. ♙ac1± White has
a slight advantage. Bologan —
Hauchard Oakham 1992

12. dxc5 ♜xc5 13. ♙c2 ♙b6 14.
♙ab1 a5 15. ♜e5 ♜fd7 16. ♜d3
h6 17. ♙e3 ♙c7 18. ♜b5 ♙b8
19. ♙bd1 ♜xd3 20. ♙xd3 ♜c5
21. ♙d4 e5 22. ♙c3 ♙f5 23. f4!±

In this opening position it turns
out how many black pieces are
misplaced. Dolmatov — Drum-
mond Jakarta 1997

9. 0-0 cxd4

9. — ♙d6 10. ♜c3 0-0 11. ♙g5
h6 12. ♙h4 g5

12. — b6 13. d5 ♙e8±

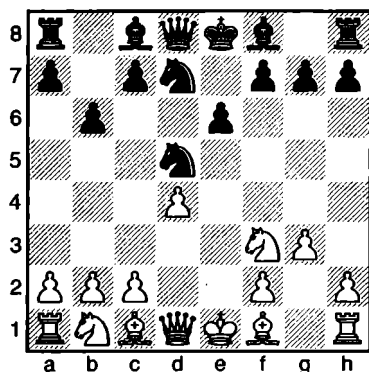
13. ♙g3 ♙xg3 14. hxg3 b6 15. d5
♙e8 16. ♙e1 a6 17. ♙f1± Lautier
— Shirov Biel 1992

10. ♜xd4 a6 11. ♜c3 ♙e7 12. ♙g5
12. ♙e3!?

12. — 0-0 13. ♙h4 ♜e5 14. ♙g3
♜g6 15. ♙f3 ♙b6 16. ♜a4 ♙a7 17.
♙c7 e5 18. ♙b6 ♙b8 19. ♜c2 ♙e6
20. ♙d5 ♜xd5 21. cxd5 ♙d7 22.
♜e3 ♙b5 23. ♙e1 ♙b4 24. ♜c3
♙d6 25. ♙b3∞

Tiviakov — Yakovich Elista 1994

7. — b6



A) 7. — c5 8. ♟g2 ♟e7 9. 0-0 0-0 10. c4 ♟5f6 11. ♟e2 cxd4 12. ♟xd4 ♟c5 13. ♟d1 ♟b6 14. ♟c3 ♟d7 15. ♟e3 ♟ad8 16. ♟a1 a6 17. h3 ♟fe8 18. ♟c2±

Boudre — Hauchard Strasbourg 1992;

B) 7. — ♟e7 8. ♟g2?!

8. c4!±

8. — b5! =

8. c4 ♟5f6 9. ♟g2 ♟b7 10. 0-0 ♟e7

10. — ♟d6 11. ♟e1 0-0 12. ♟c3±

11. ♟c3 0-0 12. ♟f4±

With the plan of moving ♟b5 and attacking the c7 pawn.

12. — ♟d6

12. — c5 13. d5 exd5 14. cxd5 ♟h5 15. ♟e3±

And in the case of 15. — ♟e8? White can carry on by 16. ♟d2! ♟hf6 17. d6+.

13. ♟e5

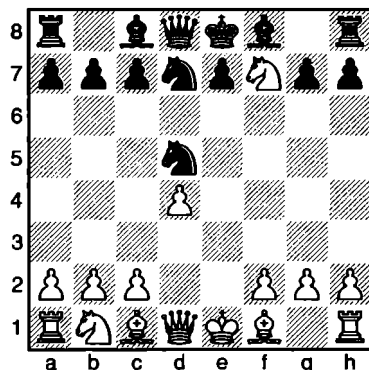
With further ♟c6.

13. — ♟xg2

13. — ♟c8 14. ♟c6 ♟h8 15. ♟c2 ♟xf4 16. gxf4 ♟e8 17. ♟fe1±

5.1.3 — 4. ♟f3 dxe5 5. ♟xe5 ♟d7 6. ♟xf7

1. e4 ♟f6 2. e5 ♟d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♟f3 dxe5 5. ♟xe5 ♟d7 6. ♟xf7



That is why this variation is being analyzed by so many chess players.

Recently a very good piece of work was published about it by Van der Tak in the New in Chess. His analyses are also used in this chapter.

6. — ♖f7 7. ♖h5†

In return for the piece sacrificed the Black monarch gets stuck in the middle of the board.

7. — ♖e6 8. c4

A) 8. ♖g4†

The flaw of the variation is that White can keep perpetual checks already after the eighth move.

8. — ♖f7

8. — ♖d6? 9. c4±

9. ♖h5† ♖e6=;

B) 8. ♖c4? ♗f6 9. ♖e5† ♖f7†;

C) 8. g3

In my opinion it is equivalent with the move 8. c4 but it is not so over-analyzed.

8. — b5

The only move.

8. — ♗f6? 9. ♖h3† ♖d6 10. ♖e5† ♖c6 11. ♖g2 b5 12. a4 b4 13. c4 bxc3 14. bxc3 ♖a6 15. ♗d2±

9. a4

a) 9. ♗c3? ♗f6 10. ♖h3† ♖d6

11. ♖e5† ♖c6 12. ♖g2 e6†;

b) 9. b3 White's plan is to move c4 after 8. g3 too. 9. — b4 10. c4

10. a3?! g6 11. ♖h3† ♖d6 12. ♖e2 c6†

10. — bxc3 11. ♖a3!?

11. ♗xc3 ♗f6 12. ♖h3† ♖d6

13. ♖f4† ♖c6 14. ♖e2 a6 15.

♖xc8 ♖xc8 16. ♖xa6† ♖d7 17.

♗xd5 ♗xd5 18. ♖c1 ♖e8†

11. — ♗7b6 12. ♖g2 g5!? 13. ♖c5

13. ♖xg5 ♖f7†

13. — ♖f6=

c) 9. ♖xb5? ♗f6†

9. — c6

9. — b4!? (Burgess) 10. c4 bxc3

11. bxc3

11. ♗xc3 ♗f6 12. ♖h3† ♖d6

13. ♖f4† ♖c6 14. ♖e2 a6†

11. — ♗f6 12. ♖h3† ♖d6 13.

♖e5† ♖c6 14. ♖g2 ♖a6 15. ♗d2

e6 16. c4 ♖e8!=

10. axb5

10. ♖h3† ♖d6 11. axb5 cxb5 12.

♗d2 ♗f6 13. ♖e5† ♖c6 14.

♖g2 e6 15. 0-0 ♖d6 16. ♖e2 a6

17. c4!? bxc4 18. ♗xc4 ♖b7†

10. — g6!

Black gives White the material advantage back to have enough time

to put its king on safe place.

11. ♖e2+ ♜f7 12. bxc6 ♜7b6 13. ♙g2

13. c4?! ♜b4 14. ♙e3 ♙f5 15. ♜a3 ♜d3+ ♚

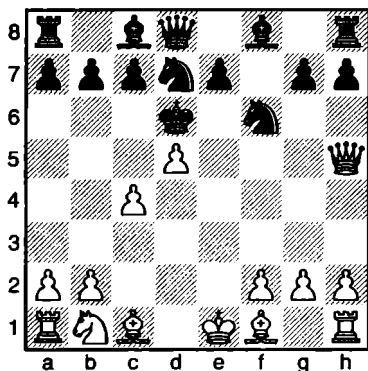
13. — ♙g7!

13. — ♜f6 14. c3 ♙g7 15. ♜d2 ♙e8 16. ♜f3+ Ernst — Komarov Dortmund 1992

14. c4 ♜b4 15. d5 ♙f5 16. ♙e4 ♙xe4 17. ♖xe4 ♜4xd5! 18. cxd5 ♖xd5 19. ♖f4+ ♙f6=

Anand

8. — ♜5f6 9. d5+ ♜d6



It is an extremely unusual position!

10. ♖f7

A) 10. c5+ ♜xc5 11. ♙f4+ ♜d7 12. ♙b5+ c6 13. dxc6+ bxc6 14. ♖xc5 ♖b6! 15. ♖xb6 axb6 16. ♙e2 ♜d5=

Bagirov;

B) 10. ♖f5? ♜c5 11. ♙f4+ e5 12. ♙xe5+ ♜e7 13. ♖f4 ♜f7 14. ♜d2 ♙d6+ ♚

Garrido — Nataf Bratislava 1993;

C) 10. ♙f4+? e5 11. c5+ ♜e7 12. ♙g5 ♖e8+ ♚

10. — ♜e5!

A) 10. — ♜b8?! 11. c5+ ♜d7 12. ♙b5+ ♚

12. ♙f4 ♖e8 13. ♖e6+ ♜d8 14. ♖e5 ♖d7 15. ♜c3 ♜g4 16. ♖e2 ♖f5 17. ♙g3 g6 18. h3 ♜f6 19. ♖c4 ♙h6 20. ♙d3 ♖g5 21. 0-0 ♜h5 22. ♜e4 ♖f5 23. d6! ♜xg3 24. dxe7+ ♜xe7 25. fxg3 ♖e6 26. ♖c3! ♙f8 27. ♙xf8 ♙xf8 28. ♙e1 ♜d8 29. ♜f6!+ Maier — De Veij 1985 corr.

B) 10. — ♜b6?! 11. ♜c3 ♙f5 12. ♙f4+! ♜d7

12. — ♜c5 13. a3+ ♚

13. c5+ ♚

11. ♙f4 c5 12. ♜c3

A) 12. b4

It is only a change of the move order in the case of Black's accurate play.

12. — ♖b6! 13. ♜c3

For the line 13. bxc5+ ♖xc5 14. ♜c3 a6!∞ see the variation 12.

12. c3.

13. — ♖xb4? (13. — a6!? By this move Black turns to the line 12. c3.) 14. ♖c1 g5

14. — ♗d7!?

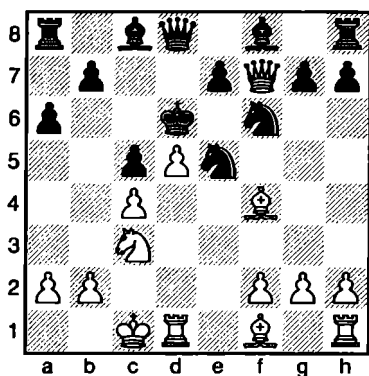
15. ♗xe5† ♜xe5 16. ♗d3 ♜d6 17. 0-0 with further ♖f1±†

B) 12. ♗d2 g5 13. ♗g3 g4 14. 0-0-0 ♗h6 15. ♖e1 ♖f8 16. ♗xe5† ♜d7 17. ♖e6† ♜e8 18. ♖d6 exd6! 19. ♗xf6† ♜d7 20. ♗xd8 ♜xd8

Having the bishop pair and the advantage in the advance are enough compensation for the pawn. Kallai — Horvath, Cs Budapest 1990

12. — a6 13. b4

13. 0-0-0?



It is interesting that three well-known grandmasters fell into the same trap in a relatively short time.

13. — g6!±

White is threatened by ♗h6.

14. ♗xe5† ♜xe5 15. d6 ♗h6† 16. ♜c2 ♖e8!± 17. ♗d5† ♗xd5 18. ♖xd5† ♜f6 19. ♗e4†

19. ♗d3 exd6 20. ♖xd6† ♜f7 21. ♗e4 ♖c6 22. ♖e5 ♗d8 0:1 Rozentalis — Sokolov, A Bern 1992

19. — ♜g7 20. ♖e5† ♜f7 21. ♗d3 ♗g7

21. — ♗f5 22. g4 ♗xe4 23. ♗xe4 e6 24. ♖e1 ♖a4† 25. ♜d3 ♖he8 26. h4 0-1 De Firmian — Rhode USA 1989

22. ♖f4† ♜g8 23. ♖e1 ♖f8 24. ♖g5 exd6 25. ♖d5† ♖f7 26. ♗xd6 ♖xd5 27. ♖e8† ♗f8 28. cxd5 c4 29. ♗xc4 b5 30. ♗b3 ♜g7 31. ♗xc8 ♗c5 32. ♖e7† ♜h6 0-1

Rublevsky — Hauchard Oakham 1992

13. — ♖b6! 14. 0-0-0!?

A) 14. bxc5† ♖xc5 15. ♗d1 ♖a3! 16. ♗d3 ♖c1†!± 17. ♗xc1 ♗xf7 18. c5† ♜c7!;

B) 14. ♖c1 g6!

14. — g5 must also be taken into account.

15. ♗e2 ♖c7! 16. bxc5†

16. ♗a4?! ♗h6! 17. bxc5† ♜d7 18. ♖e6†

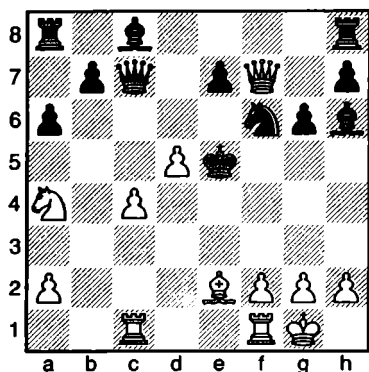
18. ♘b6† ♙xb6!

18. — ♖e8 19. ♙xe5 ♙xf4 20.
 ♙xc7 ♙xc7+ Prie — Nataf
 Andorra 1997 Van der Tak

16. — ♙xc5 17. 0-0

17. ♘a4 ♙d4†

17. — ♙h6 18. ♙xe5† ♖xe5 19.
 ♘a4 ♙c7



It is a position appearing often in this variation. The “most active” dark piece is the king, while the white queen is placed “beautifully”, but it is just unable to move.

20. f4†!

20. ♖cel ♖f8 21. ♙f3† ♖f5 22.
 ♙xe7 ♙xe7 23. ♖xe7 ♖e8† De la
 Riva Aguado

20. — ♙xf4 21. ♖cel ♙e3† 22.
 ♖h1∞;

C) 14. ♖b1? cxb4 15. ♘a4 ♙d4†

14. — cxb4

14. — g6 15. ♙xe5† ♖xe5 16. d6!
 ♙f5 17. g3 ♙h6† 18. f4† ♙xf4† 19.
 gxf4† ♖xf4 20. ♙xf6!+
 Stavrinovs — Aleksandrov Lithu-
 ania 1991

15. ♘a4 ♙xf2!? 16. c5†

16. ♙xe5†!? ♖xe5 17. ♙d3∞ Gips-
 lis

16. — ♖d7 17. c6†

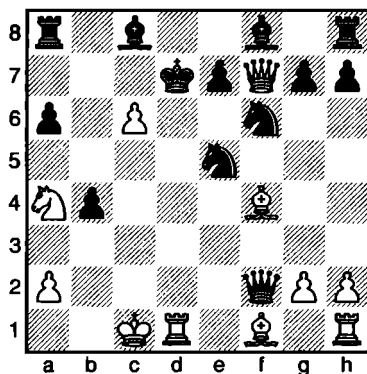
17. ♙xe5 ♙e3† 18. ♖b1 ♙xe5 19.
 ♘b6† ♖c7 20. d6† ♖b8 21. d7
 ♙xd7∞ 22. ♖xd7 ♖a7 23. ♖d1 ♘e4
 24. ♘xa8 ♘c3† 25. ♖c1 ♘xd1 26.
 ♖xd1 ♙xc5 27. ♙d3 ♖xa8+

17. — bxc6!?

17. — ♖d8 18. c7†!±

Grasis — Stavrinovs Riga 1994

18. dxc6†!



18. ♙xe5 ♙e3† 19. ♖b1 ♙xe5 20.

d6

20. ♖b6† ♜c7 21. ♜xa8† ♜b7†

20. — ♜d5! 21. ♖b6† ♜d8†

18. — ♜xc6 19. ♜xe5 ♜e3† 20. ♜d2 ♜e1†

The only move

A) 20. — ♜xe5?? 21. ♜c4†;

B) 20. — ♜a3† 21. ♜b2 ♜xa4 22. ♜c4† ♜b7 23. ♜e2±] 21. ♜d1 [21. ♜c2? ♜f5† 22. ♜d3 ♜xe5 23. ♜e1 ♜xd3† 24. ♜xd3 ♜b5 25. ♜c1 ♜b7—

Parmentier — Nataf Agde 1996

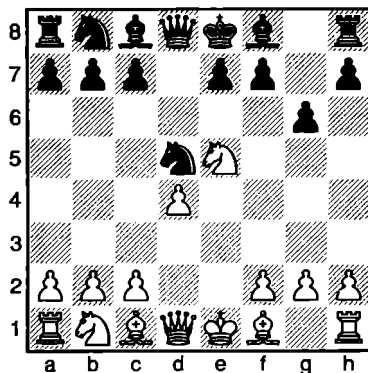
21. — ♜e3† 22. ♜d2=

The fantastic complications are finished by only a draw with perpetual checks. Summarizing, I think, that the variation 5. — ♜d7 has been shown one-sided by the articles and books so far. They analyzed the knight sacrifice only but the moves 6. ♜c4 or 6. ♜f3, which I consider to be the best, are dealt with in an offhand manner, saying, that Black equalizes easily. But the analyses result in something else. After the move 6. ♜f7 White is endangered more than Black, while in the line beginning with 6. ♜f3 White usually has a slight but lasting advantage. As far as the tactics of a tournament is concerned this sacrifice seems to

be a fault, since White has to vary accurately in this variation which is obviously work out deeply by Black waiting the unsuspecting opponent to fall into some of its traps. It is no accident that the opportunity of this sacrifice was offered White by such players as Shirov, Komarov and Bagirov from one side while Lautier, Dolmatov, Yudasin and Psakhis said thanks for it, but did not play that making the simpler move ♜f3. Shortly it is worth dealing with the line 5. — ♜d7 for it is playable by Black. And it is recommended to add 6. ♜f3 to the repertoire against it.

5.2.1 — 4. ♜f3 dxe5 5. ♜xe5 g6 6. ♜f3

1. e4 ♜f6 2. e5 ♜d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♜f3 dxe5 5. ♜xe5 g6



Nowadays it is one of the most pop-

ular variations in the Alekhine Defence.

6. ♖f3

A) 6. g3

The cautious “debauchee”.

6. — ♖g7

6. — ♖d7 7. ♖g2

7. ♖f3 ♖g7 8. ♖g2 c5=

7. — ♖xe5 8. dxe5 c6 9. 0-0 ♖g7
10. ♖e2 ♖e6 11. b3 ♖c8 12. ♖b2
♖h3 13. ♖d2 ♖xg2 14. ♖xg2
0-0 15. c4 ♖c7 16. ♖e4 ♖f5 17.
f4 ♖e6

17. — ♖ad8 18. g4

18. ♖f3 h5 19. h3 ♖h6 20. ♖ael=

Wolff — De Firmian New York
1996;

7. ♖g2 0-0 8. 0-0 c6 9. ♖e1 ♖f5 10.
c3 ♖d7 11. ♖f3 ♖e8 12. ♖bd2 e5!

12. — ♖7f6?! 13. ♖c4± Anand
— Adams PCA 1994

13. ♖c4 ♖g4! (Ftacnik) 14. dxe5

14. ♖d6 ♖e6 15. ♖xb7 ♖b6 16.
♖b3 ♖xf3 17. ♖xf3 exd4=

14. — ♖xe5 15. ♖cxe5 ♖xe5 16.
♖xe5 ♖xe5 17. ♖b3 ♖xf3 18. ♖xf3
♖b6=;

B) 6. h4?!

White should rather have moved 6.
♖f3 if it wanted to play chess

aggressively by all costs.

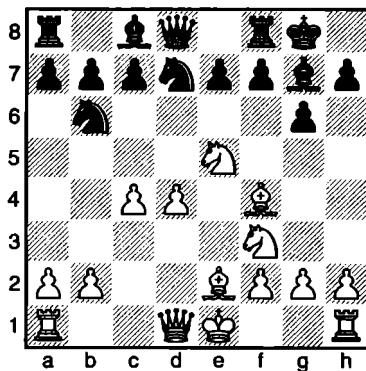
6. — ♖d7 7. ♖xd7 ♖xd7

7. — ♖xd7 8. h5 ♖g7 9. ♖d3 c6
10. c3 ♖c7 11. ♖f3 0-0 12. h6
♖h8 13. 0-0 e5=

8. h5 ♖g7 9. c3 c5 10. dxc5 ♖c6 11.
♖d2 ♖f5 12. h6 ♖f6 13. ♖f3 0-0
14. g4 ♖c2 15. ♖g2 ♖xc3 16. ♖xc6
bxc6 17. ♖h3 ♖d5=

Reeh — Loeffler Amstelveen 1994;

C) 6. ♖d2 ♖g7 7. ♖df3 0-0 8. c4
♖b6 9. ♖e2 ♖8d7 10. ♖f4



10. — c5!

Not long ago in the Informator
grandmaster Miles leading the light
pieces pointed out convincingly
how White can win in this line
played very seldom. (6. ♖d2!!
Miles.) Now he succeeded in prov-
ing, that it is Black that wins in this

variation. I think his latter analysis will be valid for a longer period. The point is that you must not take everything for granted what is said by the "grands".

10. — Qxe5 11. Qxe5 c5!

11. — Qd7 12. Wd2 Qxe5 13. Qxe5 Qxe5 14. dxe5 Wxd2 15. Qxd2 Qe6 16. Qc3 f6 17. Qf3 c6 18. Qhe1 Qf7 19. $\text{a4}\pm$ Miles — *Pons Andorra 1996*

12. dxc5 Qd7 13. Qxd7 Qxd7 14. 0-0 Qc6 15. Qf3 Qxb2 16. Qb1 Qd4 17. Qxb7 Qxb7 18. Qxb7 Qxc5 19. Qxa8 Wxa8= Czebe — Horvath, Cs Budapest 1997

11. d5

The move 11. dxc5 is better.

11. — Qxe5 12. Qxe5 Qxe5 13. Qxe5 Wd6 14. Qf3 e6 15. dxe6 Wxe6 16. Wc1!

16. $\text{0-0}\bar{f}$

16. — Qd7 17. Qg5 We7 18. Qf1 Qfe8 19. Qd3 Qad8 20. Qgl Qa4+ Kofidis — Miles Agios Nikolaos 1997

6. — Qe6 7. c4

It is a very scarce move.

7. Qc4

Almost everyone carries on in this way. (See 6. Qc4 . for details.)

7. — Qb4 8. Wxb7!

They played in this way in the heroic age of chess. First Black is threatened by a mate in one, then White captures the b7 pawn. The whole thing is very shady. The king gets stuck in the middle, the queen on the a8 square. But the remedy is not known yet, so Black's situation is not easy either. The material drawback is guaranteed, the horse often gets to a1 from where the return is uncertain. In short both sides have a losing position.

8. — Qc2

8. — Wxd4 9. Wxa8 Qc2 10. Qe2 Wxe5 11. Qd1 Wd4 12. Qd2! (Burgess) Qxa1

12. — Wxb2 13. Qc3 Qg4 14. f3 Qe3 15. Qe1 Qc2

15. — Wc1 16. Qe2 Wc2 17. Qd2 Wxc3 18. Qb1+

16. Qe2! Qd4 17. Qd1 Wc2 18. Qe1 Qg7 19. Wxb8 Qd7 20. Wb2 Wxb2 21. Qxb2 Qxf3 22. gxf3 Qxb2 23. $\text{fxg4}\pm$

13. Wxb8 Qd7 14. c5 a6

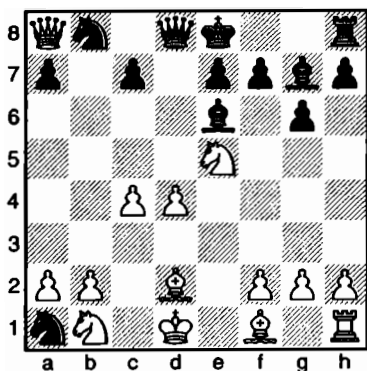
A) 14. — Wxc5 15. $\text{Qb5}\pm$;

B) 14. — Qf5 15. Qb5 16. Wxc7 Qf6 17. Qc1 e5 18. Qe3 We4 19. $\text{Qa3}\pm$

15. c6 16. Wxc6 17. Wxa8 Qd6

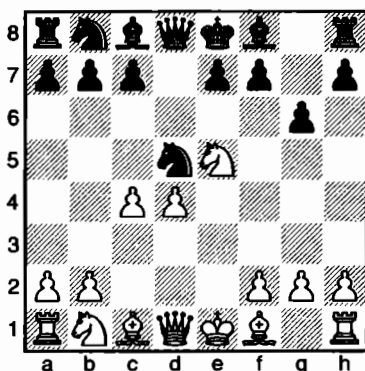
xa6±

9. d1 xa1 10. xa8 g7 11. d2



5.2.2 — 4. f3 dxe5 5. ex5 g6 6. c4

1. e4 f6 2. e5 d5 3. d4 d6 4. f3 dxe5 5. ex5 g6 6. c4



11. b7 0-0

11. — c5!?

11. — 0-0 12. xa7 d6

12. xa7

A) 12. f4 f5 13. c1 cxd4;

B) 12. c6?! xc6 13. xc6 d7 14. xc5 xd4

12. — cxd4 13. f4

13. a5 c8 14. f4 0-0 15. xd4 f6 16. f3 c6

13. — 0-0

13. — f5 14. d3±

14. d3 f6 15. f3±

It came out of fashion. Black can equalize easily, but it is true, that it does not count on more.

6. — b6

It attacks the c4 pawn and leaves the long diagonal open for the bishop.

6. — f6 7. c3 g7 8. e2 0-0 9. 0-0 c6 10. f4±

Kindermann — Wolf 1984

7. c3

A) 7. e3 g7 8. f4 c5 9. dxc5 xd1 10. xd1 d6d7 11. d3 a6 12. c3 0-0 13. e2 d8 14. e1 e5 15. fxe5 dxe5 16. dxe5 xe5 17. f2 e6 18. acl ac8

Aseev — Kengis Podolsk 1990;

B) 7. c5?! ♖d6 7 8. ♖f3 ♙g7 9. ♙c4 0-0 10. 0-0 b6 11. ♖g5 ♙b7 12. ♙b3 ♙e8 13. ♙h3 h6 14. ♖f3 h5 15. ♙g3 ♙a6 16. ♙xa6 ♖xa6 17. cxb6 cxb6 18. a3 ♖f6 19. ♖c3 ♙c8= Sax — Maus 1994

7. — ♙g7 8. ♙e3

8. ♙f4 0-0 9. ♙e2 a5!? 10. h4?!

10. 0-0

10. — ♖c6! 11. ♖xc6 bxc6 12. ♙e5 ♙xe5 13. dxe5 ♙e6 14. b3 ♙xd1† 15. ♙xd1 a4 16. ♖e4!? axb3 17. axb3 ♙f5 18. ♖c5 ♙a5 19. ♖d3! ♙xd3 20. ♙xd3! ♙xe5††

Gallagher — Kengis Bern 1992

8. — c5

It obviously is the best move which equalizes the game. It only backward is that most of the pieces will be exchanged.

8. — ♙e6 9. f4 c6 10. ♙b3 0-0 11. ♙e2 ♖d8 12. 0-0 ♖f6

12. — ♙c7 13. ♙ad1 ♙ad8=

13. ♙ad1 ♙c7 14. d5 cxd5 15. cxd5 ♙d7 16. ♖xd7 ♖fxd7 17. d6±

Black has to fight for the equalization. Bode — Kengis 1992

9. dxc5 ♙xd1† 10. ♙xd1

10. ♖xd1 ♙xe5 11. cxb6 axb6 12. ♙xb6 ♙xc3 13. bxc3 ♙f5!? 14.

♖d2! ♖c6 15. ♙d3 ♙a4 16. ♙hb1 ♙xd3 17. ♖xd3 ♖d7!±

It is a strong move. The king will defend the b7 pawn. Vitolinsh — Kengis Latvia 1990

10. — ♙xe5 11. cxb6 ♙xc3†

11. — axb6 12. ♙d2

12. bxc3 axb6 13. ♙d2 ♖d7 14. ♙e2 ♖c5 15. 0-0 ♙f5 16. ♙f3 0-0

16. — ♙e4?? 17. ♙xc5+

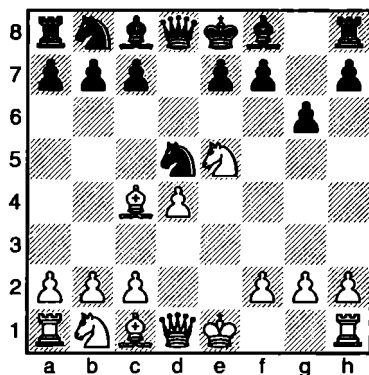
Ernst — Bagirov Helsinki 1992

17. ♙b2 ♙a6 18. ♙xc5 bxc5 19. ♙xb7 e6=

A draw is almost unavoidable. (19. — ♙d3=)

5.2.3 — 4. ♖f3 dxe5 5. ♖xe5 g6 6. ♙c4

1. e4 ♖f6 2. e5 ♖d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♖f3 dxe5 5. ♖xe5 g6 6. ♙c4



Black is threatened by 7. ♖f3.

6. — ♗e6

It is not a bad move, but cannot be recommended either. Black has to move the main line by 6. — c6 sooner or later. It is practical to start with the move c6 keeping the mobility of the bishop. That is true, that it usually is a change of moves. In this part such cases will be analyzed when the bishop move has its own considerable meaning.

6. — ♗g7?? 7. ♘xf7 ♘xf7 8. ♖f3†+—

7. ♘c3

A) 7. ♗b3 ♗g7 8. 0-0 0-0 9. ♘f3!? ♗g4 10. ♘bd2 a5

10. — ♗xd4?? 11. h3!+—

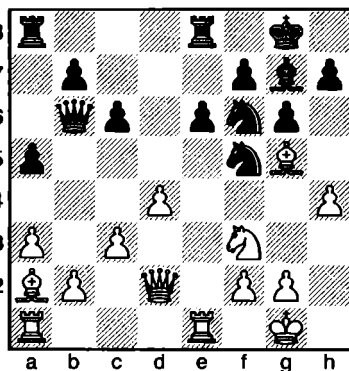
11. a3 c6 12. h3 ♗xf3 13. ♘xf3 e6 14. ♗g5 ♘e7 15. ♖d2 ♘d7 16. ♗fe1 ♗e8!?

16. — ♘f6 17. ♖f4! ♘fd5 18. ♖h4↑

17. h4

17. ♖f4 ♖b8!

17. — ♘f6 18. c3 ♖b6 19. ♗a2 ♘f5



20. h5! c5! 21. h6 ♗h8 22. ♖f4 cxd4 23. g4 ♘xg4 24. ♖xg4 dxc3 25. bxc3 ♗xc3 26. ♗ab1 ♖c5 27. ♗e2 b5 28. ♖f4!?

With the plan of further move ♘e5.

28. — ♗a6?! 29. a4!±

Psakhis — Vaganian Rostov na Donu 1993 Psakhis;

B) 7. ♘d2 ♘d7 8. ♘df3 ♗g7 9. ♘g5?! ♘e5 10. ♘xe6 fxe6 11. dxe5 ♗xe5 12. 0-0 ♖d6 13. h3 0-0-0 14. ♖e2 ♗hf8 15. c3 ♘b8 16. ♗h6 ♗f5 17. ♗ad1 ♗h2† 18. ♘h1 ♗f4 19. ♗xf4 ♖xf4 20. ♗d4 ♗e5 21. ♖d3 ♖f8±

Van den Doel — Bagirov, R Rimavská Sobota 1996

7. — ♗g7?!

For the line 7. — c6 8. ♘e4 ♘c7!

see the variation 6. — c6

8. $\Delta e4!$

For the line 8. $\mathbb{W}f3$ c6 see the variation 6. — c6

8. — $\Delta xe5$

8. — 0-0 9. $\Delta g5$ $\mathbb{W}d6$ 10. 0-0 c6
11. f4±

9. dxe5 $\Delta c6$ 10. b3!

One of the tactical motifs of this variation occurred frequently is that when the bishop is unprotected on c4 and is threatened by different battery exploitings.

A) 10. $\Delta c5$ $\Delta e3=$;

B) 10. $\Delta b3$ $\Delta db4$ 11. $\Delta xe6$ fxe6 12. a3 $\mathbb{W}xd1\uparrow$ 13. $\Delta xd1$ 0-0-0 \uparrow 14. $\Delta d2$ $\Delta d5$ 15. $\Delta g5$ $\Delta xe5$ 16. $\mathbb{K}e1$ $\Delta c4$ 17. $\Delta f7$ $\Delta de3\uparrow\mp$

Kuijf — Nijboer Wijk aan Zee 1983;

C) 10. $\Delta h6?$ $\Delta e3$;

D) 10. $\Delta b5$ Vlasak

10. — $\Delta xe5$

10. — 0-0 11. $\Delta h6$ $\mathbb{K}e8$ 12. $\Delta c5$

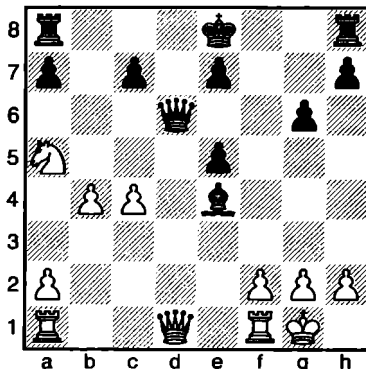
11. $\Delta b2$ f6 12. $\Delta xe5$ fxe5 13. $\Delta c5$ $\Delta f7$ 14. $\Delta xb7\pm$ $\mathbb{W}d7$ 15. 0-0

15. $\mathbb{W}e2!?$ 0-0 16. 0-0-0

15. — $\mathbb{W}c6$ 16. $\Delta a5$ $\mathbb{W}c5$ 17. $\Delta xd5!$
 $\Delta xd5$

17. — $\mathbb{W}xd5$ 18. $\mathbb{W}xd5$ $\Delta xd5$ 19. c4
 $\Delta e6$ 20. $\mathbb{K}fe1!$

18. b4 $\mathbb{W}d6$ 19. c4 $\Delta e4$



19. — $\Delta e6$ 20. $\mathbb{W}f3$

20. $\mathbb{W}e2$

20. $\mathbb{W}a4\pm\pm$

20. — $\Delta f5$

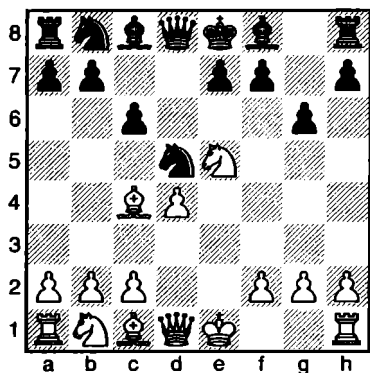
20. — $\Delta d3!?$ 21. $\mathbb{W}f3$ e4∞

21. c5 $\mathbb{W}f6$ 22. $\mathbb{K}ae1$ e4 23. f3 exf3
24. $\mathbb{K}xf3$ $\mathbb{W}d4\uparrow$ 25. $\Delta h1$ 0-0 26.
 $\Delta c6!$

Black's position entirely falls to pieces. 1-0 Vlasak — Pletanek corr. 1990

5.2.4.1 — 4. ♘f3 dxe5 5. ♘xe5 g6
6. ♙c4 c6 7. ♖f3

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♘f3
dxe5 5. ♘xe5 g6 6. ♙c4 c6



7. ♖f3

A) 7. ♘c3 ♙e6

7. — ♙g7 8. 0-0 0-0 9. ♖e1 ♙e6
10. ♘e4 ♘c7 11. ♙b3 ♙xb3 12.
axb3 ♘e6 13. c3 ♘d7 14. ♘xd7
♖xd7 15. b4 ♖fd8 16. ♖f3 ♖c7=
Black has the plan to move a5
which equalizes easily. Polgar, J
— Akopian Spain 1997

8. ♘e4

For the line 8. ♖f3 see the main
variation beginning with 7. ♖f3.

8. — ♘c7! 9. ♙b3

9. ♙xe6 ♘xe6 10. ♖f3 f6 11.
♖b3 ♖d5 12. ♖xb7 ♖xe4† 13.
♙e3 ♙g7 14. ♖xa8 fxe5 15.
♖xb8† ♙f7 16. ♖b4 ♖xg2 17.

0-0-0 exd4 18. ♙d2 ♖d5 19.
♖b3 ♖d8= Godena — Vaganian
Reggio Emilia 1994

9. — ♙g7 10. 0-0 0-0 11. ♙e3
♙xb3 12. axb3 ♘d7 13. ♘xd7
♖xd7 14. ♖d2 ♘e6 15. ♖fd1 ♖fd8=

Black has a position without prob-
lems. Arakhamia — Lalic Rother-
ham 1997;

B) 7. h4

White is rather a danger to itself
having an open centre. Of course
Black has to be ready to take the
appropriate steps in the centre.

7. — ♘d7 8. ♘xd7 ♙xd7 9. h5 ♙g7
10. c3 ♖c7

10. — ♙f5

11. ♘d2 0-0-0 12. ♘e4 h6!∞

12. — e5?! 13. h6 ♙f8 14. ♙g5
♖e8 15. 0-0∞ Reeh — Maus 1993

7. — ♙e6

7. — f6?!

Although this move proved to be
good in this game it is not recom-
mended to copy.

8. ♘d3 ♘b6 9. ♙b3 ♖xd4 10. 0-0=

11. ♙e3!? ♖g4? 12. ♙f7†

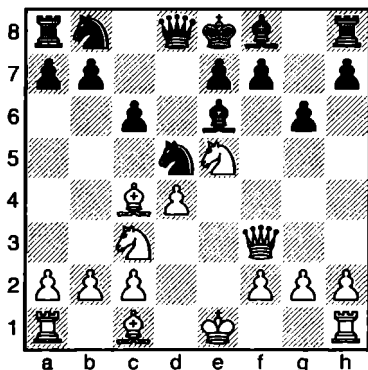
11. — ♙f5 12. ♘c3 ♘c7 13. ♖d1
♖e5 14. g4?! ♙e6 15. ♘xg6?

15. ♘d3=

15. — hxg6 16. ♙f4 ♖h3!†

Boersma — Van der Werf Enschede
1993

8. ♖c3



This position can be reached by the most different move orders. White's setup looks dangerous, but the analyses showed that there is no real power in the attack. White has to choose a more positional way to get the advantage.

8. 0-0 ♠g7 9. ♖e1 0-0 10. c3 ♘d7
11. ♘xd7 ♙xd7 12. ♘d2

12. ♠g5 ♜fe8 13. h3 ♘c7 14.
♘d2 ♠d5 15. ♠xd5 cxd5 16. ♠f4
♘e6 17. ♠e5 f6! 18. ♠h2 ♜ac8
19. h4?! ♘d8 20. ♘f1 ♘c6 21.
♘e3 ♜cd8 22. ♖e2

22. ♜ad1=

22. — e5 ♣ Luther — Bagirov
Leningrad 1989

12. — ♘c7 13. ♠f1 ♜fe8 14. ♙g3
b6 15. ♘f3 f6 16. b3 ♠f7 17. ♠b2

a5 18. c4 a4=

Rowley — Ibragimov Philadelphia
1992

8. — ♠g7 9. 0-0

9. ♘e4 ♘d7 10. ♘g5 ♠xe5 11.
♘xe6 fxe6 12. dxe5 ♘xe5 13. ♙e2
♘xc4 14. ♙xc4 ♙a5† 15. ♠d2 ♙b5
16. ♙d4 ♘f6 17. c4 ♙f5=

White has not got enough compensation for the pawn. Luther —
Horvath, Cs Budapest 1992

9. — 0-0 10. ♘e4

10. ♜e1 ♘d7 11. h3 ♘xe5 12. dxe5
♘xc3 13. ♙xc3 ♠xc4 14. ♙xc4
♙d5=

Hort — Panchenko Bern 1992

10. — ♘c7

10. — ♘d7 11. ♘xd7 ♠xd7 12. c3
♠f5 13. ♜e1 ♠xe4 14. ♙xe4 e6 15.
a4 a5 16. ♠d2 ♙d7 17. ♜ad1 b5 18.
♠b3 ♘b6 19. ♙c2 bxa4 20. ♠xa4
♘xa4 21. ♙xa4 ♙b7 22. ♠c1 ♙b5
23. ♙c2 a4=

Georgiev — Donchev Bulgaria
1988

11. ♠xe6 ♘xe6 12. c3 ♙d5 13.
♘d3 ♘d7 14. ♘f4 ♘xf4 15. ♠xf4
e5! 16. dxe5 ♘xe5 17. ♠xe5 ♙xe5
18. ♜ad1 ♜ad8=

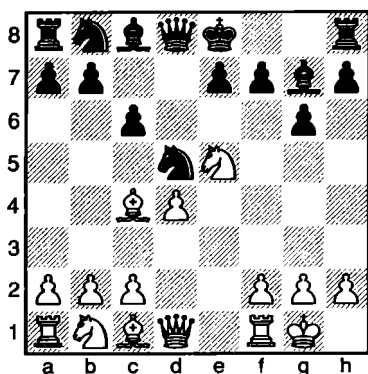
Having the bishop Black's situation
is favourable to a hair. Anka —
Horvath, Cs Zalakaros 1992

5.2.4.2.1 — 4. ♘f3 dxe5 5. ♘xe5
g6 6. ♙c4 c6 7. 0-0 ♙g7 8. ♚e2

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♘f3
dxe5 5. ♘xe5 g6 6. ♙c4 c6 7. 0-0

This is the right continuation. As we could see in the previous part, the aggressive moves like 7. h4 or 7. ♗f3 do not give White any advantages. (For the line 7. ♘d2 see the variation 7. 0-0 ♙g7 8. ♘d2.)

7. — ♙g7



Now we are at the key-position of the whole 4. — dxe5 system. It is worth examining this setup more thoroughly. White has a slight space advantage, so it has to avoid the exchanges of the pieces as much as possible. First of all it must strive to control the centre and prepare for Black's possible intentions to

explode the centre moving c5 or e5. There is a tiny weakness in Black's position, it is the e7 pawn, so White can combine the play against it (♙e1) with a well-prepared attack on the king side. Black comes on the queen side (a5, b5) and endeavours to make the above mentioned moves (c5, e5) at the right time. To make the latter one is almost impossible in the case of White's accurate play. Black often offers pieces to exchange, which would be favourable for it. (For example moving ♘d7 here.) Usually it has the better positions in the endgame as well. This variation is basically a positional one and it requires both sides to be very patient and prepared for long manoeuvring. There is another difficulty in this line, namely, it has got incredibly many chances of changing of moves. The principle, which peculiar to the positional setups, is especially true here, that is, it is more important to know and understand the schemes and motifs than to swot up the variations. So far it was Black that can perform tricks moving, for example, first g6 and capturing the e5 later, or choosing the move ♙e6 first and then the move c6. It is White's turn now; it can change four moves (♙e1, ♘d2, ♙b3 and c3) without any problems. This book follows the most frequent and

accurate move order, but it by no means is the only way.

7. — ♖d7?!

In the case of the line 7. — ♖g7 8. ♖d2 0-0 9. ♖df3 ♖d7 the move 10. ♖d3 is an interesting but not in the least the only or decisive opportunity for White to continue. Black would like to avoid this variation making this early knight move. But it has more drawbacks than advantages. To bring the c8 bishop in play Black has to move the knight again. In addition, it stands better on d7 than on its possible new place, b6. If White adheres to the setup shown above, it has to move 7. ♖d2 first and Black has no chance to deviate from the line. This is the only difference between 7. ♖d2 and 7. 0-0.

8. ♖f3

8. ♖c3 ♖xe5 9. dxe5 ♖e6 10. ♖e4 ♖g7 11. ♖g5 ♖d7 12. ♖e1 0-0 13. ♖d4 ♖f5 14. c3 ♖d8 15. ♖f3 h6 16. ♖f4 g5 17. ♖g3 e6 18. ♖ad1 ♖e7 19. ♖d2 ♖fd8 20. ♖e2 ♖d7 21. h4∞ Tiviakov — Vaganian Moscow 1991

8. — ♖g7

8. — ♖7b6 9. ♖b3 ♖g4 10. ♖bd2 ♖g7 11. h3 ♖xf3 12. ♖xf3 0-0 13. ♖e1 a5 14. a4 ♖d7 15. ♖g5 ♖e8 16. ♖h4 ♖c8 17. c3± Almasi,Z — Videki Kecskemet

1993

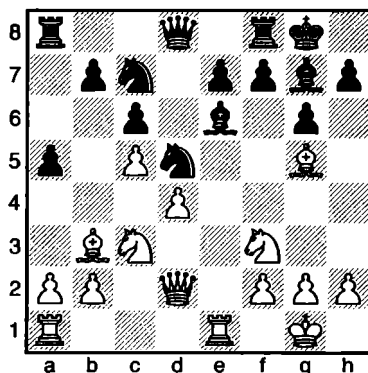
9. ♖b3 a5! 10. c4

10. c3!?

10. — ♖c7 11. ♖c3 0-0 12. ♖e1 ♖b6 13. ♖g5 ♖e6 14. c5

14. ♖e2 a4!

14. — ♖bd5 15. ♖d2



15. — ♖f6!?

15. — ♖e8?! 16. ♖h6 ♖g4 17. ♖e5 ♖f5 18. h4 f6 19. ♖f3 ♖h8 20. ♖xg7† ♖xg7 21. h5 gxh5!∞ Ulybin — Bagirov Moscow 1992

16. ♖h6 ♖xb3 17. axb3 ♖cd5= Bagirov

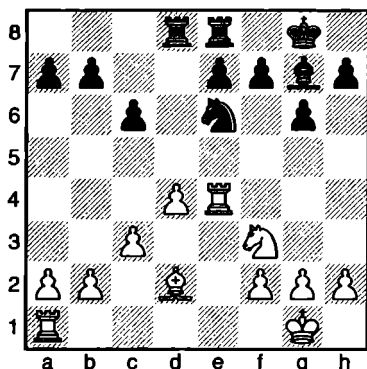
8. ♖e2

White should have put the rook on the e-file. The role of the queen should be specified later.

8. — 0-0 9. ♖b3

A) 9. c3 ♖e6 10. ♖b3 ♖d7 11.

fxd7 ♖xd7 12. d2 f4 13. ♖e4
 ♙xb3 14. ♙xb3 ♖e6 15. ♚el ♖d5
 16. d2 ♙ad8 17. f3 ♙fe8 18.
 ♙d2 ♖xe4 19. ♙xe4



19. — c5 20. dxc5 ♖xc5 21. ♙e2
 ♖d3 22. ♙e3 b6

Tokovic — Golubovic Hradec
 Kralove 1992;

B) 9. ♙d1 ♙e6 10. ♙b3 ♖d7 11. c4
 ♖5b6 12. f3 a5 13. a4 ♙g4 14. h3
 ♙xf3 15. ♖xf3 e5 16. c5 ♖d5 17.
 dxe5

17. ♙xd5 cxd5 18. dxe5 d4!

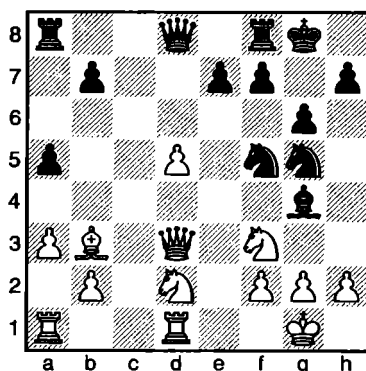
17. — ♖xe5 18. ♖g3 ♖e7 19.
 ♖c3 ♙ Yoseliani — Arakhamia
 Groningen 1997

19. ♙xd5?! cxd5 20. ♙xd5
 ♖f3

9. — a5 10. a4

10. a3 ♖d7 11. f3 ♖7f6 12. c4
 ♖c7 13. ♙f4 ♙g4 14. ♙e5 ♖e6 15.
 ♙d1 ♖h5 16. ♙xg7 ♖hxg7 17. d5

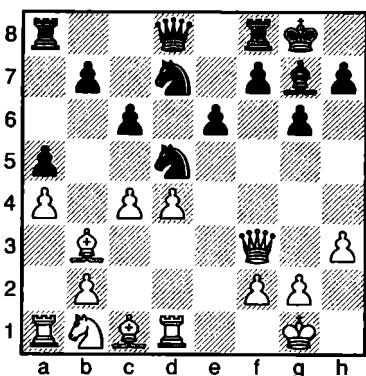
cx5 18. cxd5 ♖g5 19. ♖bd2 ♖f5
 20. ♖d3



20. — e5 21. ♖xg5 ♙xd1 22. ♖xf7
 ♙xf7 23. ♙xd1 ♖d6
 Los,Sander — Horvath,Cs Leeu-
 warden 1995

10. — ♙e6 11. ♖a3

11. ♙d1 ♖d7 12. f3 ♙g4 13. h3
 ♙xf3 14. ♖xf3 e6 15. c4



15. — ♖e7 16. ♙c2 ♖b6 17. ♖a3

♙fe8 18. ♖e3 ♗f5 19. ♙xf5 exf5
20. d5 c5 21. ♗c3 ♖b4=

Madl — Horvath,J Balatonbereny
1992

11. — ♗d7 12. ♗ac4 ♗xe5 13.
♗xe5 ♗c7

13. — ♖b6 14. ♙xd5 cxd5 15. c3
f6?! (15. — ♙fe8=) 16. ♗d3 ♖a6
17. ♖e1 ♙f7 18. ♗c5 ♖xe2 19.
♙xe2 e5 20. ♗xb7 exd4 21. cxd4 f5
22. ♙e3±

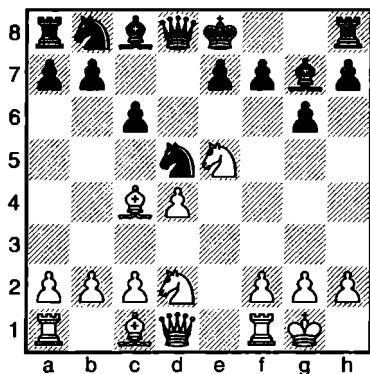
Rade — Horvath,J Solin 1994

14. ♙xe6 ♗xe6 15. c3 ♖d5 16. ♗c4
♖d8 17. ♙e3 ♗c7 18. ♙f4 ♗d5 19.
♙e5=

Gurevich,V — Bagirov Jyvaskyla
1996

5.2.4.2.2 — 4. ♗f3 dxe5 5. ♗xe5
g6 6. ♙c4 c6 7. 0-0 ♙g7 8. ♗d2

1. e4 ♗f6 2. e5 ♗d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♗f3
dxe5 5. ♗xe5 g6 6. ♙c4 c6 7. 0-0
♙g7 8. ♗d2



8. — 0-0

8. — ♗d7 9. ♗ef3

For the better move 9. ♗df3 see
the main line 8. — 0-0

9. — b5!?

9. — 0-0 10. ♖e1 ♗5b6

10.— ♗7b6 11. ♙b3 ♙g4 12. h3
♙xf3 13. ♗xf3 e6 14. ♖e2 ♖c7
15. ♖e4 c5 16. c4 ♗f6 17. ♖h4
cxd4 18. ♗xd4 ♗bd7 19. ♙f4
♖a5 20. ♖ad1 a6 21. ♙d2 ♖c7
22. ♗f3 ♙fe8 23. ♙a4± Rabiega
— Joecks 1997

11. ♙b3 c5 12. a4 a5 13. ♗e4
cxd4 14. ♗xd4 ♗e5 15. c3 ♙g4
16. f3 ♙f5= Maus — Vaganian
1992;

10. ♙b3 a5 11. a4 ♗7b6 12. ♗e5
bxa4 13. ♗xc6 ♖d6 14. ♙xd5
♖xd5 15. ♖f3 ♙e6 16. c3 ♖c8 17.
♖xd5 ♙xd5 18. ♗a7 ♖b8 19. ♖e1
♗d7=

Nunn — Loeffler 1994

9. ♗df3

9. ♗e4?!

It only would make sense if the
bishop already stood on e6.

9. — ♙f5 10. ♗c5 a5! 11. ♖e1

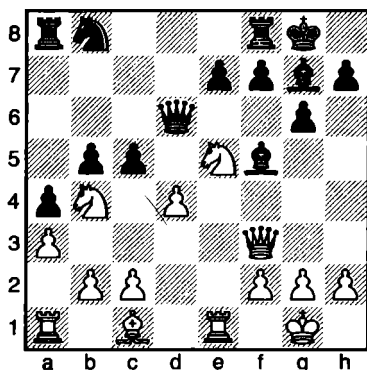
11. a4= Kengis,E

11. — b6 12. $\text{d}cd3$ b5 13. $\text{b}b3$ a4

13. — $\text{d}xd3$ 14. $\text{w}xd3$ a4 15. $\text{d}xd5$ $\text{w}xd5$ 16. $\text{d}f4$ $\text{d}d8$ 17. $\text{d}f3$ e6 18. $\text{d}c7$ $\text{d}e8$ =

18. — $\text{d}c8$ Ernst — Kengis Haninge 1992

14. $\text{d}xd5$ $\text{w}xd5$ 15. $\text{d}b4$ $\text{w}d6$ 16. a3 c5 17. $\text{w}f3$



17. — cxb4 18. $\text{w}xa8$ $\text{d}xc2$

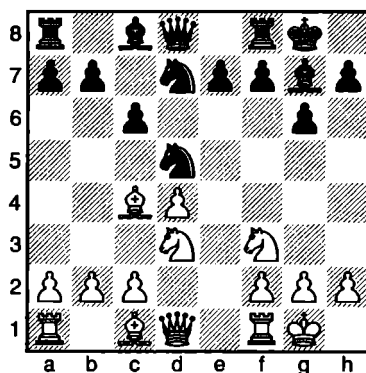
9. — $\text{d}d7$

A) 9. — $\text{d}f5$ 10. $\text{d}e1$ $\text{d}d7$ 11. c3 $\text{d}xe5$ 12. $\text{d}xe5$ $\text{w}c7$ 13. $\text{w}f3$ $\text{d}ad8$ 14. $\text{d}b3$ $\text{w}c8$ 15. $\text{d}d2$ f6 16. $\text{d}c4$ $\text{d}h8$ 17. $\text{d}e3$ $\text{d}xe3$ 18. $\text{d}xe3$ b6 19. $\text{d}f4$ $\text{d}de8$ 20. $\text{w}g3$ ±

Rublevsky — Brachenko Kazan 1995

B) 9. — $\text{d}e6$ 10. $\text{d}g3$

10. $\text{d}d3$



White does not let the d7 knight exchange, so Black can only make one of the white knights “disappear” by handing over its c8 bishop.

10. $\text{d}e1$ $\text{d}xe5$ 11. $\text{d}xe5$

11. dxe5 $\text{d}g4$ 12. h3 $\text{d}xf3$ 13. $\text{w}xf3$ e6 14. $\text{d}b3$ $\text{w}c7$ =

11. — $\text{d}e6$

11. — $\text{d}b6$ 12. $\text{d}b3$ c5 13. dxc5 13. c3!? Kuporosov, V

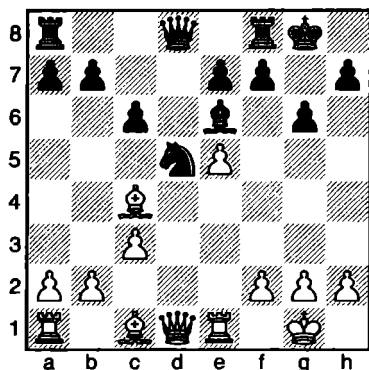
13. — $\text{d}xe5$ 14. $\text{w}xd8$ $\text{d}xd8$ 15. cxb6∞ Moiseev — Panchenko Budapest 1991

12. $\text{d}b3$

A) 12. $\text{d}f1$ $\text{w}c8$ 13. $\text{d}d2$ $\text{d}d8$ 14. c3 a5 15. $\text{w}f3$ a4 16. $\text{w}g3$ $\text{d}f6$ 17. $\text{d}c4$ $\text{d}a6$ 18. $\text{d}e5$ b5 19. $\text{d}d3$ $\text{d}a7$ = Conquest — Maus Copen-

hagen 1990;

B) 12. c3?! ♖xe5 13. dxe5



13. ♖xe5? ♜xc3 14. bxc3
♜xc4+ Siklosi — Horvath, Cs
Kecskemet 1992

13. — ♜xc3 14. ♖xd8 ♖axd8 15.
♙h6

15. ♙e6 ♜e2+ 16. ♜f1 ♜xc1+
15. — ♙xc4 16. ♙xf8 ♜e2+ 17.
♖xe2 ♙xe2 18. ♙xe7=

12. — a5

12. — ♖c7!?

13. c3 ♖c7

a) 13. — ♖c8 14. ♙d2±;

b) 13. — ♜c7 14. ♙xe6 ♜xe6 15.
♖b3 ♖c8 16. a4 ♜c7 17. ♙g5
♜d5 18. c4 ♜f6 19. ♖ad1± Ku-
porosov — Panchenko Budapest
1991

14. ♙xd5

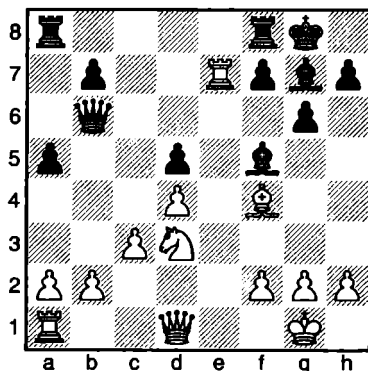
a) 14. ♙g5 ♖fd8 15. ♙h4 c5 16.
♙g3 ♖c8 17. ♖cl ♙h6 18. ♖c2
b5 19. a4 c4 20. ♙a2 f6 21. ♜f3
b4 22. cxb4

22. ♙xc4 ♖xc4 23. ♖xe6 bxc3
24. bxc3 ♖xa4=

22. — ♜xb4+ Stefansson —
Kengis Gausdal 1991;

b) 14. ♜d3 ♙f5 15. ♙g5

15. ♙xd5 cxd5 16. ♙f4 ♖b6 17.
♖xe7



17. — ♖fe8! 18. ♖xe8+ ♖xe8 19.
♖a4 ♖f8 20. ♜e5 ♖xb2 21. ♖cl
♖a8+ Sherzer — Horvath, Cs
Budapest 1992

15. — ♖fe8 16. ♖d2 a4 17.
♙xd5?!

a) 17. ♙d1 a3 18. b3 ♙xd3 19.
♖xd3 e5 20. c4 ♜b4 21. ♖d2
♖d6;

b) 17. ♖c2 a3 18. b3 ♖ad8;

c) 17. ♖c4? (*Ftacnik*) 17. —
d3b6

17. — cxd5 18. d3b4 ♖ad8

18. — e6

19. ♖f4

19. ♖e3? (*Ftacnik*) 19. — f6 20.
♖h4 ♖h6

19. — ♖c4! 20. ♖e3 f6 21. ♖ael
d3f7 22. b3

a) 22. ♖d1 e5 23. b3 axb3 24.
axb3 ♖c7? 25. dxe5 fxe5 26.
♖g5;

b) 22. ♖e2! (*Ftacnik*) 22. —
♖xe2 23. ♖3xe2

22. — axb3 23. axb3 ♖xb3
Adams — Agdestein Oslo 1994

14. — ♖xd5 15. ♖f4 ♖d8 16. d3
♖e8 17. ♖d2 ♖c8 18. h3 b6 19.
♖h6 ♖h8 20. ♖e3 c5=

Borocz — Horvath, J Budapest 1995

10. — d3b6

For the line 10. — a5 11. a4 d3b6
12. ♖b3 see the main variation 10.
— d3b6

11. a3 b6

11. — d3b6 12. ♖a2

12. ♖e1 ♖a6 13. ♖a2 ♖xd3=
Nijboer — Van der Werf 1993

11. ♖b3 a5

11. — ♖g4 12. c3

For the line 12. a4! a5 see the
main variation 11. — a5

12. — e6 13. h3 ♖xf3 14. ♖xf3
d3d7 15. ♖e1

15. a4 King

15. — b5 16. g3 a5=

Kruppa — Panchenko Simferopol
1990

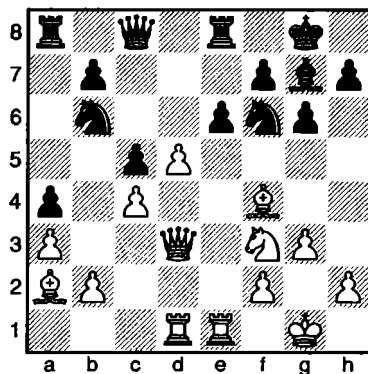
12. a4

It is better than allowing Black to
move a4.

12. a3 a4 13. ♖a2 ♖f5

The d3 knight is more dangerous
than its colleague on f3 because it
controls the e5 and c5 squares.

14. ♖e1 ♖xd3 15. ♖xd3 ♖c7 16. g3
♖fe8 17. c4 d3f6 18. ♖f4 ♖c8 19.
♖ad1 c5 20. d5 e6=



Ernst — Agdestein Reykjavik 1995

12. — ♖g4

12. — ♙f5

13. c3 ♘d7 14. h3 ♙xf3 15. ♖xf3
e6 16. ♖e1 ♗b6

16. — ♖e8 17. ♙d2 ♗b6 18. ♙c4
♗c7 19. ♖ad1

19. ♖e2!? with the plan of the
further move ♖ae1

19. — ♗d6 20. ♙g5

With the plan of the further moves
♙h4 and ♙g3.

20. — ♙f6 21. ♙c1 ♙g7 22. ♗e4
♗f8

With further ♙h6.

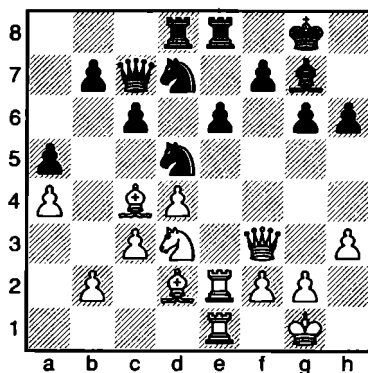
23. ♗h4 ♖ac8 24. ♙b3 ♙f6 25.
♗g3 ♙g7 26. h4 ♙h6?

26. — h5±

27. ♙g5!±

Adams — Horvath, J Debrecen 1992
(Adams)

17. ♙c4 h6 18. ♙d2 ♖ad8 19. ♖e2
♖fe8 20. ♖ae1 ♗c7



21. h4!

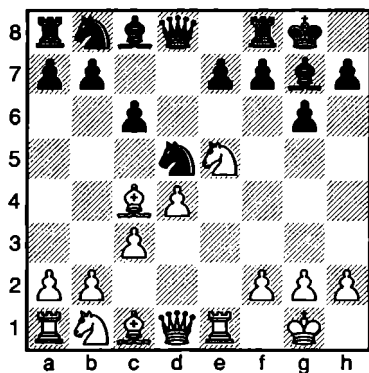
White is playing the middle game
ideally. He strengthens his position
bit by bit and pushes its opponent
off.

21. — ♗c8 22. g3 b6 23. ♘g2 ♗b7
24. ♙b3 ♗a6 25. ♙c1 ♖f8±

Almasi, Z — Kengis Bern 1996

5.2.4.2.3 — 4. f3 dxe5 5. xe5
g6 6. c4 c6 7. 0-0 g7 8. e1
0-0 9. c3

1. e4 f6 2. e5 d5 3. d4 d6 4. f3
dxe5 5. xe5 g6 6. c4 c6 7. 0-0
g7 8. e1 0-0 9. c3



9. — d7

9. — e6 10. d2 d7 11. dxd7

A) 11. f3 g4

11. — c7 12. f1

12. b3 b6 13. xe6 dxe6

14. e4 d5 15. fg5 xg5

16. xg5 fe8 17. f4 xb3

18. axb3 d5 19. g3 a5 20.

d5 b6 21. d3 ac8=

Black equalized the game. Rausis — Kishnev Lublin 1993

12. — c5?!

12. — g4

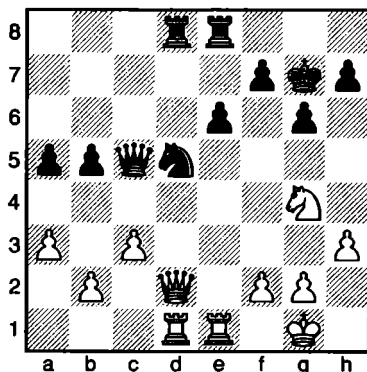
13. b3 cxd4 14. dxd4 a5 15.
a4 d5 16. g5 f6 17. b5! It

is a strong intermediate move.
17. — e6 18. f4 xb5 19.
axb5 a4 20. c4 axb3 21. xa8
xa8 22. cxd5 e5 23. e3 f5 24.
xb3± Milov, L — Van Der
Werf Berlin 1993

11. — g4 12. h3 xf3 13. dxf3
e6 14. g5

14. a4 c7 15. g5 fe8 16.
d2 a5 17. e2 d6 18. ael
f8 19. b3 d7b6 20. c1
ac8 21. h4 c5 22. d1 h6 23.
d2 cxd4 24. dxd4 d4=

Ivanov, A — Kengis Pavlodar
1987
14. — c7 15. d2 fe8 16.
ad1 b5 17. b3 a5 18. a3 d7b6
19. h6 ad8 20. e5 c5 21.
xg7 xg7 22. dxc5 xc5 23.
xd5 dxd5 24. d4



24. — f6 25. h6† h8 26. d4
e7 27. d2 d7 28. d1 ed8

29. ♖e3 ♘b6 30. ♜xd7 Now the positions are already equal. White stood more promisingly earlier. ½-½ Klován — Kengis Latvia 1990;

B) 11. ♘df3 ♘xe5 12. ♘xe5 ♘c7=

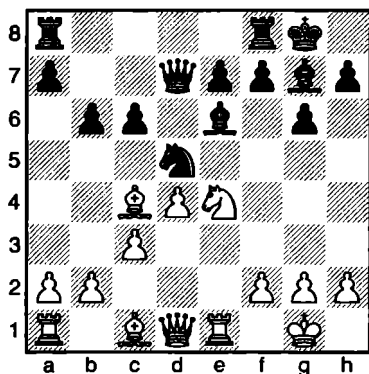
11. — ♜xd7 12. ♘e4

12. ♖b3 ♜ad8 13. ♘f3 ♜c7 14. ♜e2 ♜fe8 15. ♖g5

15. ♖d2 ♖g4 16. h3 ♖xf3 17. ♜xf3 e6 18. ♜ad1 b5 19. ♖g5 ♜d7 20. h4 a5 21. a3 ♜c8 22. h5 h6 23. ♖c1 g5= Panbukchian — Kengis Pula 1990 ·

15. — h6 16. ♖h4 ♘f4 17. ♜e3 ♘d5 18. ♜e2 ♘f4 19. ♜e3 ♘d5 ½-½ Panchenko, A — Kengis Gausdal 1991

12. — b6



13. ♘g5

13. h3 ♘c7 14. ♖f1 h6 15. ♖f4 ♜fd8 16. ♘d2 c5!?=

13. — ♖f5 14. h3 f6 15. ♘f3 ♜ae8 16. ♖f1 ♖e6 17. c4 ♘c7 18. ♖f4 ♖f7 19. ♜a4 ♘e6 20. ♖e3 ♜c8 21. ♜ad1 ♜fd8 22. b4±

Van der Wiel — Bagirov Yerevan 1996

10. ♘f3

10. ♘xd7

The capturing on d7 usually loses the advantage acquired in the opening.

10. — ♖xd7 11. ♘d2 ♘b6

11. — a5 12. a4 ♖e6 13. ♖f1 ♜b6 14. ♘e4 ♜ad8 15. ♜f3 ♖f5 16. h3 ♜fe8 17. ♘d2 ♜c7 18. ♘c4 c5= Handoko — Conquest Dhaka 1995

12. ♖b3 a5 13. a4 ♘d5 14. ♜f3 ♘c7 15. ♘e4 ♖e6 16. ♖c2

16. ♖d1? ♖d5 17. ♜e2 ♜e8 18. f4± Morovic — Adams Santiago 1997

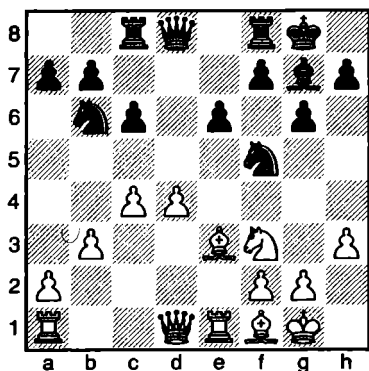
16. — ♖f5 17. ♖g5=

10. — ♘7f6

10. — ♘7b6 11. ♖f1 ♖g4 12. ♘bd2 e6 13. h3 ♖xf3 14. ♘xf3 ♜c8

With the plan of the further move c5.

15. c4 e7 16. b3 f5 17. e3



17. — ex3!?

17. — c5 18. g5! f6 19. xxf6
xf6 20. dxc5 xc5 21. d2
d8 22. f4± Ostojic — Bagirov
Neu Isenburg 1992

18. fx3 c5=

Bagirov

11. bd2 b6!?

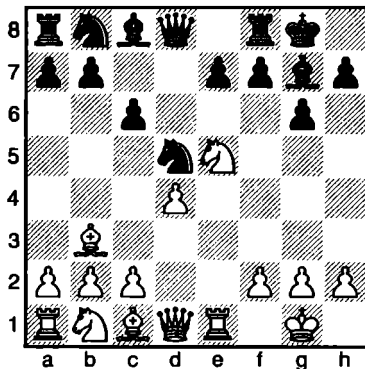
Developing the bishop on the long
diagonal is an idea deserving atten-
tion.

12. e5 b7 13. df3 e6 14. g5
h6 15. d2?! c8 16. f1 c5 17.
a4 cxd4 18. xd4 a6 19. ad1
b5 20. c2 d7 21. df3 xe5
22. xe5 c7 23. g4 g5 24. c1
h5 25. e3 f4

Kholmov — Onoprienko Smolensk
1997

5.2.4.2.4 — 4. f3 dx3 5. xe5
g6 6. c4 c6 7. 0-0 g7 8. e1
0-0 9. b3 d7

1. e4 f6 2. e5 d5 3. d4 d6 4. f3
dx3 5. xe5 g6 6. c4 c6 7. 0-0
g7 8. e1 0-0 9. b3



9. — d7

9. — a5!?

The position coming into being is
similar to those which have the a4
a5 pair of moves in the main line.
Perhaps it is more favourable for
Black.

10. a4

10. c3 d7

10. — f5 11. h3

11. d2

11. — d7 12. f3 d7b6

12. — e8!?

13. a3 c7 14. bd2 a4 15.

♠a2 c5 16. dxc5 ♖xc5= Short
— Agdestein Isle of Lewis 1995

11. ♖f3 ♜7b6 12. a4 ♖c7 13.
♠g5

13. h3

13. — ♠g4 14. ♜bd2 c5 15. h3
♠xf3 16. ♖xf3 e6 17. c4?! ♜b4
18. ♠f4 ♖c6 19. ♖xc6 bxc6 20.
dxc5 ♜d7 21. ♠d6 ♜d3 22. ♠xf8
♜xf8 23. ♜e2 ♜b8 24. ♜b1
♜7xc5 25. ♠c2 ♜xb2= Black has
already have a pawn for the
exchange and the positions of
other two are uncertain. Korchnoi — Vaganian Horgen 1995

10. — ♠e6 11. c3 ♖c7 12. ♜d3
♜d7 13. ♜d2 ♜fe8 14. ♜e4 h6 15.
♖f3 ♠f5 16. ♠d2 ♖b6 17. ♠c2
♜ad8 18. ♜e2 ♜7f6=

Godena — Kveinys Debrecen 1992

10. ♖f3

10. c3?! ♜xe5 11. dxe5 ♠f5=

10. — ♜7f6

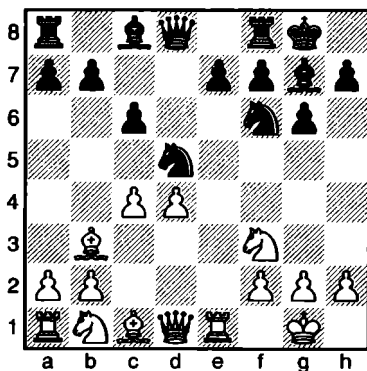
A) 10. — b5? 11. ♠xd5! cxd5 12.
♜c3±;

B) 10. — ♜7b6 11. c4 ♜c7!?

11. — ♜f6?! 12. h3 ♠f5 13. ♜c3
♖c7 14. ♠g5 ♠e6 15. ♖e2±
Gallegher — Lukasiewicz Bern
1990

12. ♠e3=

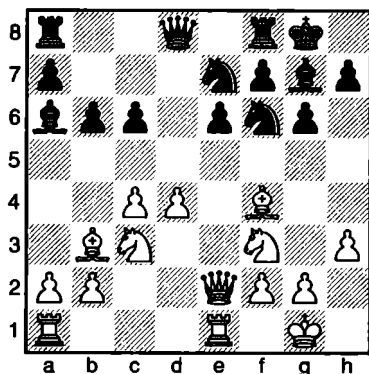
11. c4!



It is more accurate than 11. h3 when
Black can choose from among sev-
eral plans.

A) 11. h3 b5

11. — e6 12. c4 ♜e7 13. ♜c3 b6
14. ♠f4 ♠b7 15. ♖e2 ♠a6



16. ♖c2!?

16. \mathcal{Q} ad1? \mathcal{Q} ed5 17. \mathcal{Q} e5 \mathcal{Q} xc3
18. bxc3 \mathcal{W} e7 \mathcal{Q} Short — Va-
ganian Riga 1995

12. \mathcal{Q} g5 \mathcal{Q} e6 13. \mathcal{Q} bd2 \mathcal{Q} c7 14. c3
 \mathcal{Q} d5 15. \mathcal{Q} e5 \mathcal{Q} e6 16. \mathcal{Q} h4 c5 17.
dxc5 \mathcal{Q} xc5 18. \mathcal{Q} xd5 \mathcal{W} xd5 19.
 \mathcal{Q} b3 \mathcal{Q} xb3 20. axb3 \mathcal{W} b7=

Lau — Bjerring Munich 1993;

B) 11. \mathcal{Q} g5 a5 12. c3 \mathcal{Q} g4 13. \mathcal{Q} bd2
h6 14. \mathcal{Q} xf6 \mathcal{Q} xf6 15. a4 e6 16. h3
 \mathcal{Q} xf3 17. \mathcal{W} xf3 \mathcal{Q} g7 18. \mathcal{Q} e4 \mathcal{W} c7
19. g3 \mathcal{Q} ad8 20. h4 \mathcal{W} b6 21. \mathcal{Q} c4 h5
22. \mathcal{Q} e2 \mathcal{Q} d7 23. \mathcal{Q} ae1 \mathcal{W} d8 24. \mathcal{Q} b3

To make headway is not easy one of
the sides either. $\frac{1}{2}$ – $\frac{1}{2}$ Van der Wiel
— Gausel Slough 1997

11. — \mathcal{Q} c7

11. — \mathcal{Q} b6?!

This move would only hinder
Black's play on the queen side.

12. h3!? c5

12. — b5!?

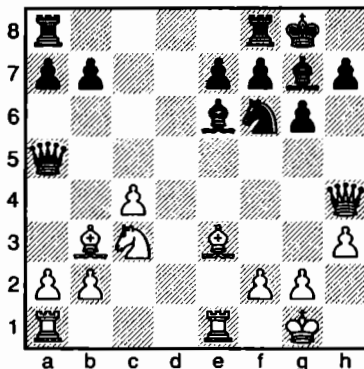
13. \mathcal{Q} c3 cxd4 14. \mathcal{Q} xd4 \mathcal{Q} e6 15.
 \mathcal{Q} e3 \mathcal{Q} xd4 16. \mathcal{W} xd4!

White would exchange the queens
with pleasure, for the endgame is
more favourable for it.

16. — \mathcal{Q} e6

16. — \mathcal{W} xd4 17. \mathcal{Q} xd4 Δ \mathcal{Q} e6 18.
 \mathcal{Q} b5 \uparrow

17. \mathcal{W} h4 \pm \mathcal{W} a5



18. c5! \mathcal{Q} xb3?!

18. — \mathcal{Q} d7!? 19. \mathcal{Q} d4 \mathcal{W} fe8 \pm

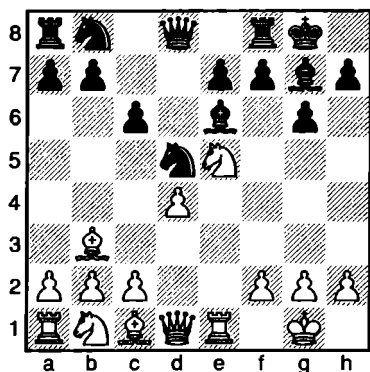
19. axb3 \mathcal{W} c7 20. b4 a6?! 21. \mathcal{Q} f4!
 \mathcal{W} c6 22. \mathcal{Q} xe7 \mathcal{Q} d5 23. \mathcal{Q} xd5 \mathcal{W} xd5
24. \mathcal{W} g4! \mathcal{Q} ae8 25. \mathcal{W} d7!+—

Kasparov — Adams Linares 1997
(Psakhis)

5.2.4.2.5 — 4. \mathcal{Q} f3 dxe5 5. \mathcal{Q} xe5
g6 6. \mathcal{Q} c4 c6 7. 0–0 \mathcal{Q} g7 8. \mathcal{Q} e1
0–0 9. \mathcal{Q} b3 \mathcal{Q} e6

1. e4 \mathcal{Q} f6 2. e5 \mathcal{Q} d5 3. d4 d6 4. \mathcal{Q} f3
dxe5 5. \mathcal{Q} xe5 g6 6. \mathcal{Q} c4 c6 7. 0–0

8. ♖e1 0-0 9. ♗b3



This is the most popular position in the system 4. — dxe5.

10. ♖d2

A) 10. c3 ♖d7 11. ♖f3

The exchange of the knight is obviously favourable for Black because it has the less space.

11. — ♖c7

11. — ♗g4 12. ♗g5

12. h3 ♗xf3 13. ♖xf3 e6 14. ♖d2 b5 15. ♖e4 a5 16. a4±

12. — ♗e8 13. ♖bd2 a5 14. h3 ♗xf3 15. ♖xf3 ♖f8 16. a3 ♖c7 17. ♖c2 ♖e6 18. ♗h4 ♗ad8 19. ♗ad1 ♖c8 20. ♗d2 ♗f6 21. ♗g3 ♖g5 22. ♖e5 ♖e6 23. ♗a2 ♖g7 24. ♖a4± Novik — Simonenko St. Petersburg 1993

12. ♗xe6 ♖xe6 13. ♖b3 ♖b6 14. ♖c4 c5 15. d5 ♖c7 16. ♗xe7 ♖d6

17. ♗e1 ♖xd5 18. ♖a3 ♖b6!

18. — ♖xc4 19. ♖xc4 ♖f6 20. ♗f4 ♖e6 21. ♗d6 ♗fd8 22. a4± Tseshkovsky — Kengis USSR 1981

19. ♖xd5

19. ♖h4 ♗fe8!±

19. — ♖cxd5 20. ♗g5

20. ♗d2!?

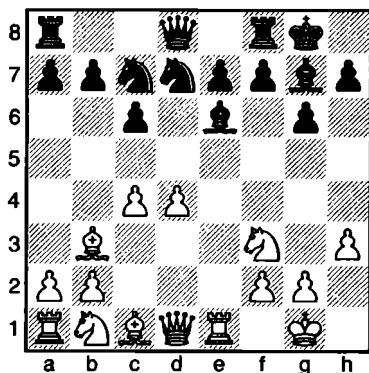
20. — h6! 21. ♗d2 ♖a4!± 22. ♗ab1 ♗fe8 23. ♖f1 a6 24. ♖c4 ♗xe1!±

24. — b5?! Howell — Kengis London 1991

25. ♖xe1 b5 26. ♖e3 ♗d8!±

Black has a superior position. Kengis

B) 10. h3 ♖d7 11. ♖f3 ♖c7 12. c4!



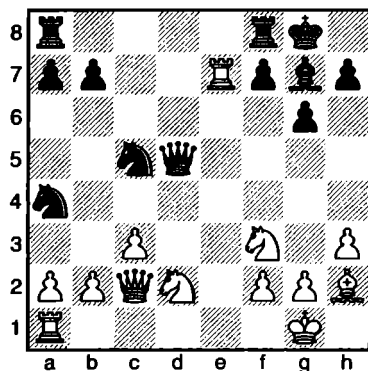
It is better and more logical than 12. c3. It does not allow the e6 bishop to be exchanged and Black is threatened by the move d5 too.

12. c3 ♙d5! 13. ♙g5

a) 13. ♙f4 ♘e6 14. ♙h2

14. ♙g3=

14. — ♘b6 15. ♘bd2 c5 16. dxc5 ♘xc5 17. ♙xd5 ♖xd5 18. ♖xe7 ♘ba4 19. ♖c2



19. ♘b3 ♘d3!??

19. — ♖ae8 Ostoja — Kengis Godesberg 1992;

b) 13. ♘bd2 ♘e6±

13. — c5?! 14. ♙xd5 ♘xd5 15. ♖b3±

13. — ♘e6 14. ♙e3 ♘b6=

14. — b5? 15. ♙xd5! cxd5 16. ♖b3 ♘c7 17. ♙f4! e6 18. a4!± Kengis

18. ♙xc7?! ♖xc7 19. ♖xb5 ♖ab8 20. ♖e2 ♖b6 Polgar, S — Kengis Vienna 1991

12. — ♘b6

12. — b5 13. d5 cxd5 14. cxd5 ♙f5 15. ♘d4 ♙xd4 16. ♖xd4 ♘f6 17. ♙h6 ♖e8 18. ♘c3 a5 19. ♖e5 b4 20. ♘e2 ♖a6 21. ♖e1 ♖d6 22. ♘f4 ♘e6?? (It is a blunder. 22. — ♙c8±) 23. ♘xe6 ♙xe6 24. dxe6 1-0 Markovic — Pajkovic Niksic 1997

13. ♖e2 a5 14. a4 ♘e8

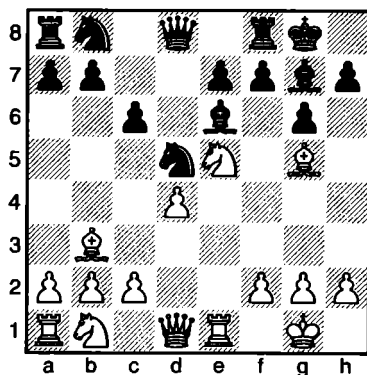
14. — ♖e8?! 15. ♘c3 ♘c8 16. ♙e3 ♘d6 17. ♖ad1 ♖c8 18. ♙f4 b5 19. axb5 ♘cxb5 20. ♘a4± Titov — Panchenko Moscow 1991

15. ♘g5

15. ♙f4!? ♘d6? 16. d5 cxd5 17. c5±

15. — ♙xd4 16. ♘xe6 fxe6 17. ♖xe6 ♗h8 18. ♙e3!? ♙xb2 19. ♖a2 Videki;

C) 10. ♙g5!?



It is a new move deserving attention in this frequently occurred position. It hinders the exchange of the pieces not moving h3 too early.

10. — d7 11. f3 c7 12. c4 b6
13. c1 e8 14. h3 a5 15. a3

15. a4

15. — a4 16. a2 a5 17. e3 c8
18. c3 d6 19. d5 cxd5 20. b6
 a6 21. cxd5 f5 22. d4 ±

Ulybin — Bae Stockholm 1997

10. — d7 11. ef3

11. df3 xe5 12. dxe5

12. xe5 a5 13. c3 c7 14. d3
 f5 15. g5 fe8 16. d2 xd3
17. xd3 a4 18. c4 a3 19. bxa3
 xa3 20. b3 e6 ½-½ Kholmov

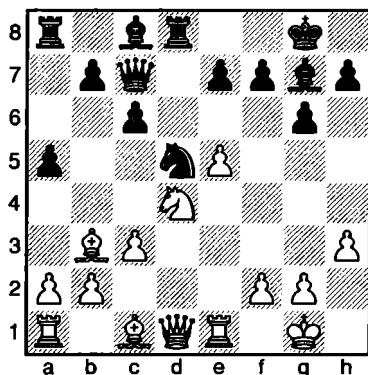
— Bagirov Brno 1991

12. — a5 (12. — c7 ; 12. — c7)

13. c3 c7

13. — g4

14. h3 fd8 15. d4 c8



16. $\text{e6!?$ f5 17. f3 a4 18. xd5
 xd5 19. f4 d8 20. ad1 xd4
21. cxd4 a6 22. h4

White's attack is supported by the remaining bishops of opposite colour.

22. — c5 23. dxc5 xe6 24. h6
 f7 25. c3+ f6 26. xd5 xd5
27. d1 f7 28. e5 e6 29. xe6
1-0

De Firmian — Tal Moscow 1990

11. — c7

11. — g4 12. h3 xf3 13. xf3 e6

13. — a5 14. g5 e8 15. c4
 5b6 ∞

14. g5 c7 15. c4 5f6 16. d2
 a5 17. f4!

17. a4 fe8 18. f4 b6 19. a2
 c5 20. e3 ac8 21. ad1 e5! =
Ulybin — Bagirov Moscow 1991

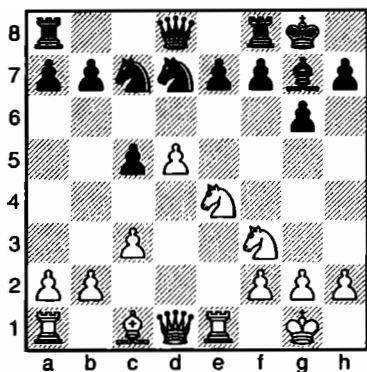
17. — b6 18. d6 fd8 19. c5 ±
Bagirov

12. e4

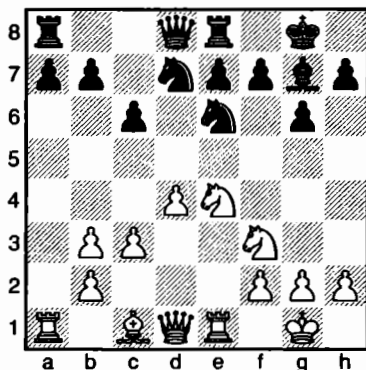
A) 12. c3 c5

12. — d5 13. e4 e8 14. g5
 e6 15. h4 b6 16. c2 a5 17.
 a4 c4 18. a2 b6 = Yudasin
— Agdestein Moscow 1994

13. ♖xe6 ♖xe6 14. d5 ♖c7 15. ♖e4 12. — ♖d5!?



12. — ♖xb3?! 13. axb3 ♖e6 14. c3 ♖e8



15. — ♖f6! 16. c4

16. ♖xc5 ♖cxd5 17. ♖b3 ♖c7=

16. — ♖xe4 17. ♖xe4 e6 18. ♖g5?! f6 19. d6?!

19. ♖f4 e5∞

19. — ♖e8 20. ♖xe6 fxe5

Christiansen — Kengis Manila 1992 Kengis;

B) 12. ♖c4 a5 13. a4 ♖d5 14. c3 ♖e6 15. ♖fe5 ♖xe5 16. ♖xe5 ♖xb3 17. ♖xb3 ♖d6 18. ♖d2 c5 19. ♖e2 ♖xe5 20. ♖xe5 cxd4 21. ♖d5 ♖c6

21. — ♖a6?! Milos — Llanos San Luis 1995

22. cxd4 ♖fd8 23. ♖xa5 ♖xa5 24. ♖xa5 ♖xd4

Burgess

15. h4

15. ♖c2!?

15. — ♖f6 16. ♖eg5 ♖xg5 17. hxe5 ♖d7

17. — ♖d5

18. ♖f4 e6 19. ♖c2 a6 20. ♖e2 ♖c8 21. ♖ae1?!

21. b4 with further ♖a5

21. — ♖a5 22. ♖d2 ♖f5 23. ♖xf5 gxf5 24. ♖c4 ♖f8 25. b4±

Black is pushed entirely off without any chance to play. Adams — Tu Yerevan 1996 Adams

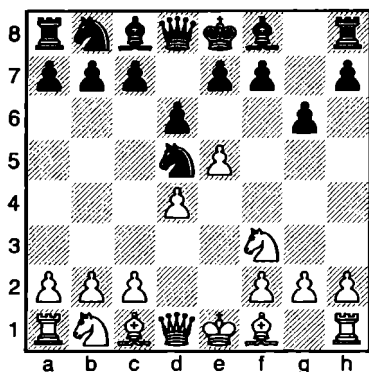
13. c4 ♖xe4 14. ♖xe4 c5 15. d5 ♖f6=

Chapter 6

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♗d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♗f3 g6

6.1 — 4. ♗f3 g6 5. ♗g5

1. e4 ♗f6 2. e5 ♗d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♗f3 g6



In the following we are dealing with the variation 4. — g6 of the Alekhine Defence, which together the move 4. — ♗b6 has become popular recently, and the authors of the present book are in favour of it as well. It is not accidental that the line 4. — ♗b6 is mentioned here, since the continuations often fall into each other by the means of change of moves. The opportunities are divided into three different groups. The first group, analyzed here, contains those ways of playing when White does not make the move c4, either

immediately or later, except for the special ♗g5 line. These variations belong to the system 4. — g6 as sublines deserving less attention.

5. ♗g5

It is an interesting idea which is not preferred. Besides there are the following lines possible:

A) 5. ♗c3 ♗xc3

The move 5. — ♗b6 has already been mentioned earlier.

6. bxc3 ♗g7 7. ♗b5† c6 8. ♗d3 dxe5 9. ♗xe5 0-0 10. 0-0 ♗d7 11. f4 ♗xe5 12. fxe5 ♗e6 13. ♗e3 b5= Faibisovich — Hudecek Pardubice 1996;

B) 5. g3

It does not count to be a too dynamic move nowadays.

5. — ♗g7 6. ♗g2 0-0 7. 0-0 ♗c6 8. exd6 cxd6 9. c3 h6 10. ♗bd2 e5 11. dxe5 dxe5 12. ♗c4 e4 13. ♗d4 ♗xd4 14. cxd4

Because of the blocked isolated pawn Black has the more promising opportunities.

14. — f5 15. f3 exf3 16. ♗xf3 ♖h7

16. — f4!? 17. d5 fxg3 18. hxg3
e7

17. d5 e6 18. e1 b6 19. h1
ad8 20. d2

Suetin — Vaganian Yerevan 1994;

C) 5. exd6 cxd6 6. e2 g7 7. 0-0
0-0 8. e1 c6 9. c3 h6 10. dbd2

It does not set Black a big task.

10. — e5 11. f1 d6 12. dxe5
dxe5 13. c4 xdl 14. xdl xc4
15. xc4 e4 16. d4 dxd4 17.
xcd4 d8

17. — g4 18. e1=

18. e3 g4 19. d2 ac8 20.
b3=

Borgo — Vaganian Reggio Emilia
1993

5. — c6

5. — dxe5

It is the introductory move of a
sharp position.

6. dxe5 h6 7. c4 hxg5 8. cxd5 g7
9. xg5 xe5 10. c3 d6 11.
e2 xc3

11. — xh2!? 12. xh2 xh2

12. bxc3 h5

White is attacking aggressively, but
Black is defending itself resource-
fully.

13. h4 f6 14. e3 xd5 15. h5

e5 16. d4 xe2 17. xe2 gxh5
18. xh5 f8 19. f3 g5 20.
e3 g8 21. 0-0-0?!=

White would have carried on better.
Stripunsky — Kravtsenko Karvina
1992

21. h7 f5 22. xb7 xh7 23.
xa8±

6. c4

After this move Black must be care-
ful having certain difficulties. The
following lines were possible too:

A) 6. f4!? g7 7. c4 0-0 8. 0-0
a6!? 9. b3 ac7 10. c4 d6 11.
c3 dxe5 12. fxe5

It is the crucial position.

12. — c5?

Black has a disadvantageous posi-
tion very soon.

12. — f6! Khmelnitsky, I

13. dxc5 xdl 14. xdl d7 15.
e6±

Kosikov — Khmelnitsky Kiev
1989;

B) 6. c4

It leads to a difficult position.

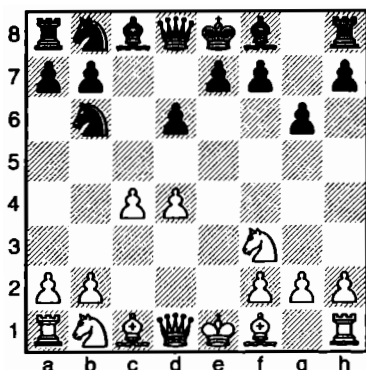
6. — d7 7. f3 f6 8. exf6 exf6 9.
e3

9. d4 f5 10. dec3 g7 11. d5
0-0 12. e2 cxd5 13. cxd5 d7=

- Ivanov — Kakageldyev USSR 1979
9. — ♖e7
9. — ♖e7 10. ♜e4 ♜f7 11. c5±
10. ♜f3
10. ♜e4 Now Black can quickly equalize. 10. — 0-0 with further f5 and d5
10. — 0-0 11. ♖d3 ♜e8
11. — d5 12. 0-0 ♜e8
12. 0-0 d5
12. — ♖f8 13. ♜d2! ♖g4 14. ♜f4 f5!? 15. d5∞ c5 16. ♜c3± Tal,M
13. ♜c3 ♖f8
13. — ♖e6 14. b3
14. ♜d2 dxc4 15. ♖xc4† ♖e6 16. ♜d3 ♜ba6?
16. — ♜d7= 17. d5 ♜c5
17. a3± Ljubojevic — Tal Brussels 1988
6. — ♖g7
6. — f6?
- It is obviously less effective than after c4 and ♜c7.
7. exf6 exf6 8. ♜e4 f5 9. ♖xd5 cxd5 10. ♜g3 ♖g7 11. ♖e3 ♜f6 12. ♜f3±
- Kupreichik — Lutikov USSR 1969
7. ♜e2
7. exd6?!
- White cannot count on having advantage.
7. — ♜xd6 8. 0-0 0-0 9. c3 ♖f5 10. ♜d2 ♜d7 11. ♜de4 ♖xe4 12. ♜xe4 ♜c7 13. ♖g5 h6 14. ♖d2 b5 15. ♖b3 a5 16. a3 a4 17. ♖a2 e5± Schroeder — Akopian Berlin 1996
7. — 0-0
- Black can be satisfied with the opening.
7. — h6 8. ♜f3 ♖g4=
8. 0-0 e6?!
8. — dxe5
- With mutual chances.
9. dxe5 h6 10. ♜f3 ♖g4 11. ♜bd2 ♜c7 12. h3 ♖xf3 13. ♜xf3 e6= Chekhov
9. ♜c3!
- White gets a dangerous initiative.
9. — ♜xc3 10. bxc3 d5
- Black does not give up the e4 point.
10. — dxe5 11. dxe5 ♜a5 12. f4 ♜xc3 13. ♖e3↑ Chekhov
11. ♖d3 c5 12. ♜g4!±
- Vasiukov — Larsen,B Moscow 1959

6.2.1 — 4. \mathcal{Q} f3 g6 5. c4 \mathcal{Q} b6 6. exd6 cxd6 7. \mathcal{K} e2 \mathcal{K} g7 8. 0-0 0-0 9. h3

1. e4 \mathcal{Q} f6 2. e5 \mathcal{Q} d5 3. d4 d6 4. \mathcal{Q} f3 g6 5. c4 \mathcal{Q} b6 6. exd6 cxd6



In the second part of the Alekhine Defence's 4. — g6 system divided into three we are dealing with those variations in which White makes the move c4, and it still does not choose the setups applied the most frequently.

7. \mathcal{K} e2

7. \mathcal{Q} c3 \mathcal{K} g7 8. h3

It has not been ascertained so far if the move h3 is essential or White can let the black bishop move on g4. It is a matter of taste to choose one of them.

8. — 0-0 9. \mathcal{K} e3

9. \mathcal{K} e2 \mathcal{Q} c6

9. — e5?! *An advancing move would give Black more opportunities.* 10. \mathcal{K} g5 f6 11. \mathcal{K} e3 \mathcal{K} e6 12. d5 \mathcal{K} f7 13. 0-0 \mathcal{Q} a6 14. \mathcal{K} c1 h6 15. \mathcal{Q} e1 f5 16. f4 exf4 17. \mathcal{K} xf4 \mathcal{K} e8 18. \mathcal{W} d2 g5 $\overline{\mathcal{W}}$ Rechel — Mowsziszian 1995

10. 0-0 \mathcal{K} e8

10. — d5 11. c5 \mathcal{Q} c4 12. \mathcal{K} xc4? *It is a serious mistake, White should rather have moved b3 instead.* 12. — dxc4 13. d5 \mathcal{Q} b4 14. \mathcal{K} e3 \mathcal{K} f5 15. a3 \mathcal{Q} c2 16. \mathcal{K} c1 \mathcal{Q} xe3 17. fxe3 \mathcal{K} d3 18. \mathcal{K} f2 \mathcal{K} xc3 $\overline{\mathcal{W}}$ Arkell — Regan Blackpool 1990

11. \mathcal{K} e3 e5 12. d5 \mathcal{Q} e7 13. c5 dxc5 14. \mathcal{K} b5 \mathcal{Q} d7 15. \mathcal{Q} e4 \mathcal{Q} f5 16. \mathcal{K} xc5 \mathcal{Q} xc5 17. \mathcal{Q} xc5 \mathcal{K} f8 18. \mathcal{W} b3 \mathcal{Q} d6 $\overline{\mathcal{W}}$ Markun — Rogulj Bled 1992

9. — \mathcal{Q} c6 10. \mathcal{K} c1

It is a good idea to give up castling in the short term.

10. — e5

It seems to be a logical move, since White's king is still in the middle.

10. — d5 11. c5 \mathcal{Q} c4 12. \mathcal{K} xc4 dxc4 13. 0-0 \mathcal{K} f5 14. \mathcal{W} a4 e5

14. — \mathcal{K} d3 *The bishop is not placed well on d3, and although it saves the pawn it stands in*

need of defence itself, so this is the basic deficiency of this whole system. 15. ♖fd1 e5 16. d5 ♖e7 17. d6 ♖f5 18. ♖e1±

15. dxe5 ♖xe5 16. ♖xe5 ♙xe5 17. ♖fd1 ♙d3 18. b3 ♖h4?? 19. ♖xd3+ Joecks — Movsziszian Hamburg 1993

11. d5

The centre become rigid and a long-winded manoeuvring starts.

11. dxe5 dxe5

11. — ♖xe5 12. ♖xe5 ♙xe5 Black's pawn structure is whimsical a little, but if it can get the chance to make the move g5, its problems will disappear. 13. ♙e2 ♙e6 14. b3 d5 15. cxd5 ♙xc3† 16. ♖xc3 ♖xd5 17. ♙d3 ♖xe3 18. ♖xd8 ♖xd1 19. ♖xa8 ♖xa8 20. ♖xd1= Serper — Yermolinsky Tilburg 1994

12. c5 ♖d7 13. ♙c4 It is the crucial position when a slight inaccuracy can be fatal. 13. — ♖a5 14. a3 White takes the risk of having the material disadvantage to land Black in a difficulty in return for it. 14. — e4 15. ♖d2 ♖xc5 16. b4 ♖xa3 17. ♙xc5 ♙xc3 18. ♙xf8 ♖xf8 19. b5 e3 20. fxe3± And White keeps the advantage having a better position. Zagrebely — Remizov St

Petersburg 1994

11. — ♖e7 12. ♙e2 h6

12. — ♖f5 13. ♙g5 ♙f6 14. ♙xf6 White's prospects are more favourable because of the space advantage and the weakened dark squares. 14. — ♖xf6 15. ♖e4 ♖d8 16. 0-0± Serper — Yermolinsky Tilburg 1994

13. 0-0 ♖f5 14. ♙d2 ♖d7 15. b4 b6 16. ♙e1 a6 17. ♙f1 ♙b7 18. ♖b3 ♙b8 19. a3 ♖h7±

Taking the space advantage into account White stands better. Kvein — Bagirov Manila 1992

7. — ♙g7 8. 0-0

8. ♖c3 0-0 9. ♙g5 h6

As it was mentioned and shown earlier the forced pawn move h6 is good for Black.

10. ♙e3 ♖c6 11. d5!?

It is a confused move leading to a difficult position.

11. ♖d2±

11. — ♖a5 12. ♙d4 ♖axc4 13. ♙xg7 ♖xg7 14. ♖d4† ♖e5 15. ♖xe5 dxe5 16. ♖xe5† f6 17. ♖e4 ♙f5 18. ♖f3 ♙c8 19. 0-0 ♖c4 20. ♙xc4 ♖xc4= Polgar — Varga, Z Hungary 1995

8. — 0-0

8. — ♙g4 9. ♙e3 ♘c6 10. ♘bd2?!
If you compares the games to each other, it will turn out, that it is better to develop the knight on c3.

10. — 0-0 11. ♖c1 e5 12. d5 ♘e7
13. h3

13. ♘e1 ♙xe2 14. ♗xe2 f5
Blatny,P

13. — ♙xf3 14. ♘xf3 h6 15. ♗b3
♘f5 16. ♖fd1

16. ♙xb6 axb6

16. — ♘d7

This move firms up Black's advance.

17. ♗xb7 ♖b8 18. ♗xa7 ♖xb2 19.
♙d3 ♘xe3 20. ♗xe3

20. fxe3 ♘c5

20. — ♖xa2

Blatny,P

9. h3 ♘c6 10. ♘c3

10. b3?!

It is a strange move not offering the bishop the best placed.

10. — e5 11. ♙b2 e4 12. ♘e1 ♙e6
13. a4 d5 14. c5?!

14. a5 ♘d7 15. ♗d2 f5 16. ♘c2=

14. — ♘d7 15. ♗d2 a5 16. ♘a3
♗h4! 17. ♘b5 ♖ab8 18. ♗c3?!

It is the ultimate inaccuracy, but White has already been going through a bad patch so far.

18. ♘c2 ♘xc5

18. — f5 19. f4 g5 20. ♙c1 ♖bc8 21.
♙e3 b6 22. ♘d6 bxc5 23. ♘xc8
♘xd4+

Szítás — Krizsány Koszeg 1997

10. — ♙f5

It is considered to be the best continuation.

10. — e5 11. ♙e3

11. ♙g5 f6 12. ♙e3 exd4 13.
♘xd4 d5? 14. cxd5 ♘xd4 15.
♗xd4 f5 16. ♗d3± Blatny,P

11. — ♙f5 12. d5 ♘e7

12. — ♘b4 13. ♖c1 ♖e8 14. a3
♘a6 15. b4±

13. a4! a5

13. — ♘bc8!? 14. a5 ♙d7

14. ♗b3 ♘ec8 15. c5±

Malakhov — Gyimesi Balatonbény 1995

11. ♙f4

It is an inaccurate attempt. The bishop must be placed on e3.

A) 11. ♙g5 h6 12. ♙f4 ♘h7?!

It indicates exaggerated cautious-

ness.

12. — e5 13. ♖e3 e4 14. ♗d2
 ♗xd4 15. ♖xd4 ♖xd4 16.
 ♗dxe4±

13. ♖c1 e5 14. ♖e3 ♖c8?!
 14. — e4!

15. d5 ♗b4 16. a3 ♗a6 17. ♗b5 ♖a8
 18. b4 ♖d7 19. ♗xd6 ♖a4 20. ♖xb6
 axb6 21. ♖xa4±

Van Mil — Karolyi Dieren 1988 21.
 — ♖xd6;

B) 11. d5?!

White's initiative does not seem to
 be sufficient for the sacrificed pawn.

11. — ♗a5 12. ♗d4 ♗axc4 13.
 ♗xf5 gxf5 14. ♖e1 ♖d7 15. a4 a5
 16. ♖d3±

Adhami — Urday Thessaloniki
 1988

11. — h6

11. — e5 12. ♖g5 ♖b8 13. d5

The position promises a slight ben-
 efit for White in a long, manoeu-
 vring fight.

13. — ♗d8 14. ♖c1 ♗c8 15. ♖d2
 b6 16. ♖h6?!

16. ♖fe1±

16. — f6 17. ♖xg7 ♗xg7 18. b4 a5
 19. a3 ♗f7 20. ♗h4 ♗e7 21. f4∞

Tompa — Dubois Capelle la Grande
 1991

12. ♖c1 ♖c8?

It is a bad move.

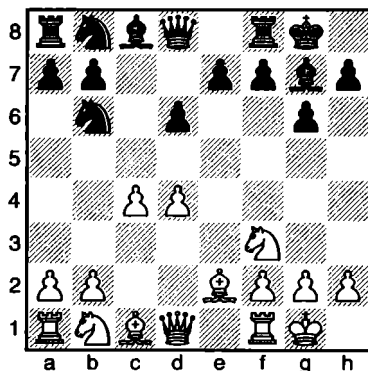
12. — e5 13. ♖e3 e4 14. ♗e1±

13. d5 ♗e5 14. b3±

Timoschenko — Rogulj Varna 1977

6.2.2 — 4. ♗f3 g6 5. c4 ♗b6 6.
 exd6 cxd6 7. ♖e2 ♖g7 8. 0-0 0-0
 9. ♗c3

1. e4 ♗f6 2. e5 ♗d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♗f3
 g6 5. c4 ♗b6 6. exd6 cxd6 7. ♖e2
 ♖g7 8. 0-0 0-0

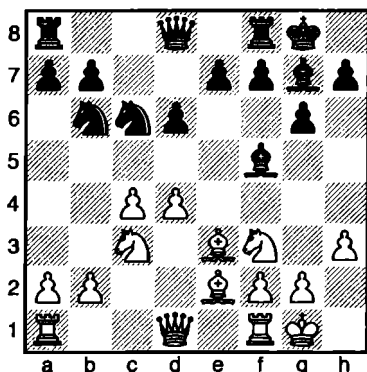


We have arrived at that part of the
 book, in which we are going to deal
 with the two more frequent varia-
 tions of the system coming into
 existence by moving 4. — g6. As a

main line it will be given the case when Black tries to spare the pawn move h3 and let Black's bishop get to g4, and another system will also be shown here in which White places its bishop on e3 after the normal advancing moves (9. h3 ♘c6 10. ♘c3 ♗f5).

9. ♘c3

9. h3 ♘c6 10. ♘c3 ♗f5 11. ♗e3



It is the most popular move. The position coming into being is regarded to be the basic setup of this variation.

11. — d5 12. c5

The typical move of the line.

12. cxd5 It does not seem to be good at first sight either. White only counts on some advantage in the case of Black's bad play. 12.

— ♘xd5 13. ♖b3 ♘xe3 14. fxe3 ♗c8?

14. — ♗h6=

15. ♗ad1 b6 16. ♘g5± Tiviakov — Timer Clichy 1991

12. — ♘c4 13. ♗c1!?

The point of White's move is that it tries to endanger the black knight after b3, but an error has crept into its calculations.

13. ♗xc4 It result in a very interesting position with mutual chances. 13. — dxc4 14. ♖a4 Black owns a bishop pair, while White has a solid centre. 14. — ♗d3∞ In this dynamic position the opportunities of both sides have not been cleared up so far.

14. — e5 After the exchanges in the centre the positions usually are equal. 15. ♗fd1 exd4 16. ♘xd4

16. ♖xc4!? d3 17. g4 ♗e6 18. ♖xd3 ♖xd3 19. ♗xd3 f5 20. ♗d6 fxg4 21. ♘h2 g3 22. ♗xe6 gxh2† 23. ♗g2 ♗e5± Oesterle — Polaczec Forli 1990

16. — ♘xd4 17. ♗xd4 ♗xd4 18. ♖xc4 ♗xf2† 19. ♗xf2 ♖f6 20. ♖d4 ♖xd4† Brzozka — Skrobek Poland 1991

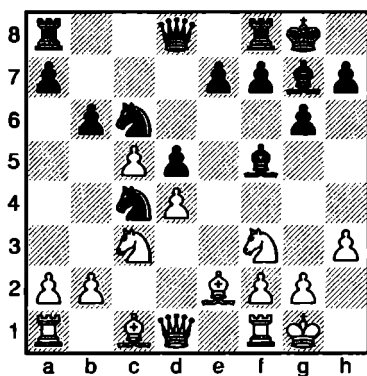
15. ♗fd1 ♖a5

A) 15. — f5 It is disadvantageous for Black. 16. d5 ♖e5 17. ♖e1 f4 18. ♗d4 f3 19. ♗xe5 ♗xe5 20. ♖xd3 cxd3 21. ♗xd3± Garofalo — Buonocore Italy 1989;

B) 15. — e5 16. dxe5 ♖xe5 17. ♖xe5 ♗xe5 18. ♗a1 f5 19. ♗h6 ♗e8 20. b3 ♗xc3 21. ♗xc3 ♖f6 22. ♗dcl ♗e2 23. ♖d7 ♗d8 Grabczewski — Jansa Lugano 1968

16. ♖xa5 ♖xa5 Exchanging the queens the c4 does not look so weak in the least, but Black's pressure decreased in the centre at the same time. 17. ♖e1 ♗f5 18. g4 ♗d7 19. b4 cxb3 20. axb3 ♖c6 21. ♗a1 f5 22. f3 fxg4 23. fxg4 h5 Krayz — Varga, Z Budapest 1992

13. — b6!



And it turns out, that moving b3 is

grist to Black's mill because of the weakened long diagonal.

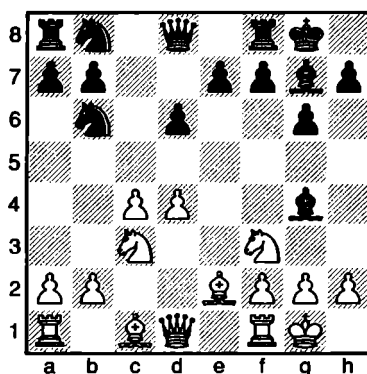
14. cxb6

14. b3 bxc5 15. bxc4 cxd4 16. ♖a4 ♗d7 17. cxd5 ♖e5 18. ♖b5 d3 19. ♖xe5 dxe2 20. ♗e1 ♗xe5→ Dunis — Krizsány Nice 1997

14. — axb6 15. b3 ♖d6 16. g4 ♗e4 17. ♗b2 ♗xf3 18. ♗xf3 e6 19. ♖e2 b5 20. a3 ♖b6

Mohd — Polaczek Manila 1992

9. — ♗g4



This position occurring also quite often in the practice is more flexible from the strategic point of view and less committing as far as the tactical aspects are concerned than the systems with h3.

10. ♗e3 ♖c6 11. b3

White was threatened by ♘xf3.

11. d5

It is an incorrect move.

11. — ♘xf3 12. gxf3 ♘e5 13. ♙d4 ♘ed7 14. ♙xg7 ♘xg7 15. ♙d4† ♘f6 16. f4 ♘bd7 17. b3 ♙b6 18. ♙e3 ♙fe8=

Krapivin — Gipslis USSR 1988

11. — d5

Black has another reliable and modern opportunity to defend:

A) 11. — e6 12. ♙d2 d5 13. c5 ♘c8 14. b4 a6 15. ♙ab1 ♘8e7 16. a4 ♘xf3 17. ♘xf3 ♘f5 18. ♘e2 h5 19. g3 ♘e3 20. fxe3 ♙g5 21. h4 ♙e7 22. ♘f4 ♙c7 23. ♘g2 ♘e7=

Beni — Braun, Austria 1990;

B) 11. — e5

It leads to a complicated, double-edged fight having the purpose to control the more important centre squares, especially the d4 point.

12. dxe5

It is a natural reply leading to an equal play after the succession of exchanges.

12. — dxe5 13. c5

a) 13. h3 ♘xf3 14. ♘xf3 f5 15. ♙xd8 ♙fxd8 16. ♘xb6 axb6 17. ♙d5† ♘f8 18. ♘b5 ♙d7 19. a4 e4

20. ♙ae1 ♙e8= Nogrady — Krizsány Budapest 1996;

b) 13. ♙xd8 ♙fxd8 14. ♙ad1 f5 15. ♘g5 ♘xe2 16. ♘xe2 ♙xd1 17. ♙xd1 ♙e8 18. ♘c3 ♘d4 19. ♘f1= Farkas — Krizsány Veszprém 1996

13. — ♘c8 14. h3 ♘f5 15. ♘g5 ♘d4 16. ♘c4 h6 17. ♘ge4 ♘e6 18. ♘xe6 ♘xe6 19. ♙e2 ♘d4=

Tiviakov — Hauchard Torcy 1991

12. c5

White has a more active position and initiative on the queen side, but its centre pawn is weak and it needs permanent defence.

12. — ♘c8 13. b4

13. ♘e1 ♘xe2 14. ♘xe2 b6 15. ♙c1 e6±

Hübner — Timman Sarayevu 1991

13. — a6

13. — ♘xf3 14. ♘xf3 e6 15. b5 ♘a5 16. ♘e2 b6 17. ♙d2?!

17. c6±

17. — a6

17. — bxc5 It is a bad move which leads to White's benefit. 18. dxc5 d4 19. ♙ad1±

18. ♙ac1 bxc5 19. dxc5 axb5 20.

♟xb5 ♞c6 21. ♞d6 ♞6e7 22. ♞xc8
♟xc8 23. c6 ♟c7 24. ♙c5 ♙e5=

Moroz — Palatnik Ukraina 1989

14. ♞b1 e6 15. a4 ♞8e7

The aim of the knight is to attack the d4 pawn from the f5 point.

16. b5 axb5 17. axb5 ♞a5

There is another weak point (c4) in White's position.

18. ♞e5

18. ♞b4 ♞f5 19. ♞el ♙xf3 20.
♙xf3 ♞c4 21. b6

21. ♞xc4 dxc4 22. ♙xb7 ♞a3 23.
♟c1 ♞a7

21. — ♞a5 22. ♞b5 ♞c6

Van Baarle — Van der Tak Gent
1986

**18. — ♙xe2 19. ♟xe2 ♞f5 20.
♞fd1**

20. f4 f6 21. ♞f3 ♞c4 22. ♙f2 ♞e8
23. ♞bc1

Oll — Wach Manila 1992

20. — ♙xe5

White has a disadvantageous position because of its weak pawn being advanced too much.

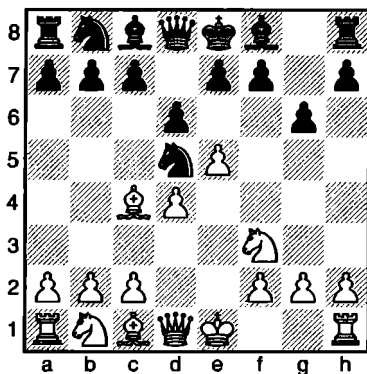
**21. dxe5 ♞xe3 22. ♟xe3 ♞c4 23.
♟d4 ♟c7 24. f4 ♞fc8**

Janosevic — Marinkovic Bled 1989

Summarizing on the basis of the previous parts it can be claimed, that in the systems introduced by 4. — g6 both sides have plenty of opportunities to attack and counter-attack beside a dynamic balance of the positions. The chances are approximately equal.

6.3.1 — 4. ♞f3 g6 5. ♙c4 c6

**1. e4 ♞f6 2. e5 ♞d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♞f3
g6 5. ♙c4**



This system belongs to the most important ways of playing in the Alekhine defence. White does not pursue the knight on moving c4, but it rather strengthens its centre and creates the right conditions for occupying it with its pieces later. It is a very solid system, so the posi-

tional approach is peculiar to it, which is based on the fact that Black's c8 bishop cannot find a good place for itself, as it is shown by several examples. It can be recommended for those chess players who are thoughtful and who are not conducted by the principle that the pieces are in order to sacrificing them. Within the system we are dealing with those continuations when the 5. ♘b6 6. ♖b3 pair of moves are omitted.

5. — c6 6. 0-0

A) 6. h3

It is a matter of taste if you make the move h3 or not. Both lines are equivalent and both moves (6. 0-0 and 6. h3) have followers in the camp of great chess players as well.

6. — ♖g7 7. 0-0

7. ♖e2 dxe5 8. dxe5 0-0 9. 0-0 ♘b6 10. ♖b3 ♘a6 11. ♖e3 ♘c7 12. ♖d1 Black's pieces get stuck. 12. — ♖e8 13. c4 ♖f5 14. ♘c3 ♘d7 15. ♖d2 ♘a6 16. g4 ♖e6 17. ♘d4± With White's obvious advantage. Sax — Depasquale Adelaide 1987

7. — 0-0 8. ♖e2

White's other moves also follow similar strategy.

8. exd6 exd6 9. ♖e1 ♘c7 10. ♖g5

♖f6 In this symmetrical position White's pieces are slightly more active, but there is no weak point in Black's position. 11. ♖h6 ♖e8 12. ♖xe8† ♘xe8 13. ♖b3 d5 14. c4 dxc4 15. ♖xc4 ♘d6 16. ♖b3 ♘f5 17. ♖d2 ♘d7 18. ♘c3 ♘xh6 19. ♖xh6 ♘f8 20. ♖d1 ♖e6= Kasparov — Ivanchuk Gran Canaria 1996

8. — a5

8. — ♖f5 9. c3 dxe5 10. dxe5 ♘d7 11. ♖e1 ♖c7 12. ♖g5 e6 13. g4 White gets the bishop pair and if it can open up the position, it will stand better. 13. — ♖xb1 14. ♖axb1 h6 15. ♖d2 ♘c5 16. b4 ♘a4 17. ♖bc1 a5 18. ♖d3 ♖fd8 19. ♖e4 ♖d7 20. ♘d4± Rayner — Baburin Capelle 1994

9. ♖e1 dxe5 10. dxe5 ♘a6 11. ♖xd5?!

It gives up the advantage.

11. ♖xa6 In closed position a bishop is not more valuable than a knight. 11. — ♖xa6 12. c4±

11. — cxd5 12. ♘c3 ♖e6 13. ♖e3 ♖c7 14. ♖d2 ♖fc8=

Lobron — Marinkovic Amsterdam 1987;

B) 6. ♘c3

It is a scarce attempt to get the advantage at the expense of having a

worse pawn structure in the end-game.

6. — ♖xc3 7. bxc3 ♙g7

7. — ♜a5!? 8. ♙d2 ♙g7= With approximately equal play.

8. 0-0 0-0 9. ♜e2 ♙g4 10. ♚e1 d5 11. ♙d3 ♖d7 12. h3 ♙xf3 13. ♜xf3 e6 14. a4 ♚c8 15. ♙a3±

Frolov — Gluckman Biel 1993

6. — ♙g7

6. — dxe5

The main point of this move is to avoid the variations in which White captures the d6 pawn.

7. ♖xe5 ♙g7

7. — ♖d7 8. ♖c3 ♖xe5 9. dxe5 ♙e6 10. ♖e4 ♙g7 11. ♖g5 The wanderings of the knight seems to be aimless, since the exchange would be favourable for Black. 11. — ♜d7 12. ♚e1 0-0 13. ♜d4 ♙f5 14. c3 ♜d8 15. ♖f3 h6 16. ♙f4 g5 17. ♙g3 e6 18. ♚ad1 ♜e7= Tiviakov — Vaganian USSR 1991

8. ♚e1

8. ♖d2 ♖d7 9. ♖ef3 If White had not made a decision to withdraw its knight, Black would have got a draw easier due to the exchanges on e5. 9. — b5 10. ♙b3 a5 11.

a4 ♖7b6 12. ♖e5 bxa4 13. ♖xc6 ♜d6 14. ♙xd5 ♜xd5 15. ♜f3 ♙e6 16. c3 ♚c8 17. ♜xd5 ♙xd5 18. ♖a7 ♚b8 The passivity of the white pieces is a sufficient compensation for the double pawns, so it can equalize the game. 19. ♚e1 ♖d7 20. ♖b5 ♚he8= Nunn — Loeffler Germany 1993

8. — ♖d7 9. ♖f3 ♖7b6 10. ♙f1 ♙g4 11. c3 0-0 12. ♖bd2 ♜c7 13. h3 ♙xf3 14. ♖xf3 e6 15. g3 ♚ad8 16. ♙g5 ♙f6 17. h4±

White stands slightly better because of the weakened dark squares. Aronson — Vaganian Moscow 1990

7. exd6

A) 7. ♚e1

In the case of Black's accurate play White does not get any advantage.

7. — ♙g4

This is the simplest way for Black to make the game equal. The line 7. — dxe5 8. ♖xe5 0-0 turns to the variation 4. dxe5.

7. — 0-0 This natural move cannot be said to be bad, but we still offer you 7. — ♙g4 instead. 8. ♖c3 dxe5!?

8. — ♖xc3 9. bxc3 ♙g4 10. exd6!? The 10. ♙f4 was also taken into account. 10. — ♜xd6

11. a4 ♖c7 12. ♕a3 ♕f6 13. h3 ♕xf3 14. ♖xf3± In the open position having the bishop pair gives White a lasting advantage. Wong Zi Jing — Kasrashvili 1993

9. dxe5 ♕e6

9. — dxc3!? 10. bxc3 d7 11. d4 g4 d6 12. ♕b3 d5 13. d6 h4 g8 14. ♖f3 ♕e6 with mutual chances.

10. d4 e4 d7 11. ♕b3

11. ♕f1!?

11. — ♕xb3 12. axb3 d6 13. c3 d7= with White's minimal benefit, but Black has good opportunities to defend. Polgar, J — Akopian Torneo Magistral 1997

8. exd6 ♖xd6 9. c3 d7 10. h3 ♕xf3 11. ♖xf3 0-0 12. b3

12. d2 e5 ½-½ Prasad — Palatnik Calcutta 1991

12. — d7b6 13. ♕f1 ♖fe8 14. ♕b2 ♖f4 15. ♖xf4 dxf4=

With equal positions. Gallagher — Baburin Switzerland 1993;

B) 7. ♕b3 0-0 8. c4?!

White's setup is contradictory; in this line the bishop should rather stand on e2.

8. — d6b6 9. exd6 exd6 10. h3 ♕f5 11. d3 d6 12. ♕f4 d5?!

12. — d6b4 This move would have led to an equal position. 13. c5 dxc5 14. dxc5 d7=

13. c5 d4 14. ♕xc4 dxc4 15. ♖a4 ♕d3 16. ♖fd1 ♖e8

16. — ♕xd4 To accept the pawn would give Black still fewer chances. 17. ♖xd3 ♕xf2† 18. gxf2 ♖xd3 19. ♕e3±

17. ♕d6 ♖c8 18. d5 ♕xe5 19. dxe5 ♖f5 20. ♖e1 f6 21. d1±

Bologan — Onishchuk Yurmala 1991

7. — ♖xd6 8. d6d2

A) 8. ♖e1

In most cases it is a change of moves only, but let us see some exceptions:

8. — 0-0

8. — ♕g4 9. h3 ♕xf3 10. ♖xf3 e6 11. d3 0-0 12. ♕g5 d7 Black is striving to finish its advance; to accept the pawn sacrifice would have been unclear.

12. — ♕xd4 13. d4 ♖b4∞ with an unclear position.

13. d4 ♖c7 14. ♖ad1 b5 15. ♕b3 a5 16. a3 ♖fe8 17. h4 h6 18.

♙c1 b4 19. c4± Chandler —
Vaganian London 1984

9. ♘bd2 ♙f5 10. ♙b3 a5 11. a4 ♘a6
12. ♘e4 ♖d8 13. ♗e2 ♙g4 14. c3
♘ac7 15. h3 ♙c8?!

Black became totally passive, it
should rather have captured the f3
knight.

16. ♘g3 ♗e8 17. ♘e5 ♙e6 18. ♙c2
♘f6 19. h4 ♘d7 20. h5±

Brinck-Claussen — Oney Novi Sad
1990;

B) 8. h3

It counts as a good move in the
given position, since it is difficult to
find a suitable place for the c8 bish-
op, and this is a heavy burden on the
shoulders of the defensive side.

8. — 0-0 9. ♙b3

It is a logical move. White main-
tains the opportunities to move c4 or
♘c4. If White plays safely on, it will
get a slight advantage.

9. ♘bd2 The light knight is try-
ing to get to e5. 9. — ♘d7 10.
♙b3 ♗c7

10. — b5 11. a4 ♙b7 12. ♘e4
♗c7 13. ♙g5 ♗fe8 14. ♗e1 b4
15. a5 ♗ad8 16. ♙a4 ♗xa5 17.
♙xc6 ♗b6 18. ♙a4± *Shcheka-*
tsev — Krivonogov Moscow

1996

11. ♗e1 e5 12. dxe5 ♘xe5 13.
♘xe5 ♙xe5 14. ♘f3 ♙g7 15. c3±
Korneev — Krivonogov Moscow
1998

9. — ♘d7

9. — b5 10. a4 b4 It renders the
position of the d5 knight stable,
but it involves weaknesses. 11.
♘bd2 ♘d7 12. ♗e1 ♙b7 13. ♘c4
♗c7 14. ♘fe5 ♗ad8 15. ♘xd7
♗xd7 16. ♘e5 ♗dd8 17. ♗e2 c5
18. dxc5 ♗xc5 19. a5± Margolin
— Baburin Linares 1996

10. c4 ♘5f6 11. c5 ♗c7 12. ♗e1 e6
13. ♘c3 b6 14. cxb6 axb6 15. ♙g5
♙b7 16. ♘e5 ♘xe5 17. dxe5 ♘d7
18. ♙e7±

And White has a better position
because of the weak dark points (d6,
f6). Korneev — Wohl Malaga 1998

8. — ♙g4

Presumably it is the most accurate
move.

8. — 0-0

With a similar position as it was
after the suitable move of the main
line.

9. ♘e4 ♗c7 10. h3

This is the right way only, otherwise

after 10. — g4 Black can get the chance to move e5 easily.

10. — h6 11. e1 d7 12. b3 e6 13. c4 d5f6 14. dxf6+ dxf6 15. e3 b6 16. c1 h7 17. f4 d8 18. c5

White has a more favourable position in the centre.

18. — d5 19. d6 e8 20. de5 xe5 21. xe5±

Imanaliev — Konopka Frunze 1987

9. e1

9. h3

It would be difficult to decide the most accurate move order. White builds up a better position in this case too.

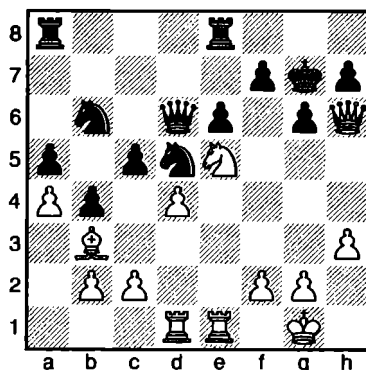
9. — xf3 10. dxf3 d7 11. b3 0-0 12. e1 e6 13. g5 b5 14. a4 b4 15. d2 a5 16. ad1 fe8 17. h6 d7b6 18. de5

A well-placed piece in the centre is especially dangerous, for it gives you the chance to accomplish tactical blows.

18. — c5

18. — xh6 19. xh6 ad8 20. d3±

19. xg7 xg7 20. h6†!



This queen sacrifice is not a complicated one but quick and highly effectual.

20. — g8 21. dxc5 xc5 22. dxf7!±

And seeing Black's breezy king position White's decisive advantage is obvious. Christiansen — Vaganian New York 1990

9. — 0-0 10. h3 xf3 11. dxf3 e6 12. f1 b5

12. — c5 13. c4 de7 14. dxc5 xc5 15. b1 c7 16. b4 d6 17. c2 d5

Black builds up a foothold on the weak d4 square for its knight.

18. c5 fd8 19. e4 d4=

Tischbierek — Vaganian Germany 1995

13. a4 b4 14. c4 bxc3 15. bxc3 ♖c7

15. — ♜xc3?

It leads to losing an exchange by the following moves

16. ♖b3 ♜d5 17. ♔a3.

16. ♔a3 ♜d8 17. c4

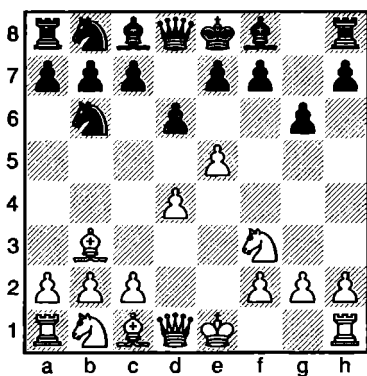
White drives the black knight away from the centre, but it hands the b4 square to Black in return for it.

17. — ♜e7 18. ♔a2 a5 19. ♜d2 ♜a6 20. g3 ♜b4=

Ivanchuk — Vaganian Manila 1992

6.3.2.1 — 4. ♜f3 g6 5. ♔c4 ♜b6 6. ♔b3 ♔g7 7. ♖e2

1. e4 ♜f6 2. e5 ♜d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♜f3 g6 5. ♔c4 ♜b6 6. ♔b3



In this part of the system those

moves will be shown which have already occurred, aside from the most frequent main moves 7. a4 and 7. ♜g5. This defence is a safe opening which can satisfy any kind of chess players, taking their styles and temperament into account, by its exceptional strategic flexibility. The strategic content becomes apparent by the effects of the pieces and pawns influenced on the centre (especially on the e5 and d4 points). In most cases White has some space advantage, while Black's c8 bishop gets stuck in, but it is a difficult task to set the course to get a considerable benefit. The aim of the defensive side is to make the position simpler mainly exchanging the pieces on the e5 square, and getting equal chances in this way. White's and Black's moves are often made in different move orders, that usually means a simple change of move, but sometimes it has got some strategic importance. Black can choose among from two different opportunities of defence: it can capture the e5 pawn relatively early or wait the finish of the advance maintaining the tension in the centre.

6. — ♔g7

6. — ♜c6

It can be considered to be a slight inaccuracy, it is better to advance

the king side first.

7. e6

This is the most aggressive continuation.

A) 7. ♗g5?! In contrast to the main line with 6. ♗g7 7. ♗g5 here Black developed its knight and it is favourable for it. 7. — e6 8. exd6

8. ♖f3 ♖e7 9. exd6 cxd6 and *White did not attain anything.*

8. — cxd6 9. 0-0 h6 10. ♗f3 ♗g7 11. d5 ♗xd5 12. ♗xd5 exd5 13. ♖e1† ♗e6 14. ♗c3 0-0 15. ♗xd5 ♖a5 16. ♗e3 d5 17. c3 d4 18. cxd4 ♗xd4± Damjanovic — Neckar Prague 1988

B) 7. exd6 ♖xd6 8. c4 ♖e6† Although White loses the chance to castle, the situation of the black queen remains awkward. 9. ♖f1 ♗a5 10. d5 ♖d7 11. ♖d4 f6 12. ♗c3 c6 13. ♗e3 ♗g7 14. ♖c5 ♗xb3 15. axb3 ♖d8 16. dxc6± Tiviakov — Neckar Kusadasi 1990

C) 7. a4 It is natural and strong. 7. — dxe5 8. a5 ♗d5?! 9. dxe5 e6 10. 0-0 The white pieces are much more active. 10. — h6 11. ♖e2 ♗g7 12. ♖d1 ♖e7 13. ♗xd5 White made up its mind to take a decisive step. 13. — exd5 14.

♗c3 ♗b4 15. b3 ♖c5 16. ♖d2 d4 17. ♗a3 ♖xc3 18. ♗xb4 ♖xd2 19. ♖xd2 ♗d7 20. ♗xd4± Sokolov, A — Neckar Bern 1993

7. — fxe6

Black has an extra pawn which can be said provisional, but its king has the troubles how to castle, and it has a structural weakness on e7 too.

8. ♗g5 ♗g7 9. ♗xe6

9. c3 This is the more solid line. 9. — d5 10. f4 ♗h6 11. h4 ♗xg5 12. hxg5 e5 13. dxe5 ♗f5 14. ♗e3 ♗c4 15. ♗xc4 dxc4 16. ♖xd8† ♗xd8 17. ♗a3± Varavin — Dyachkov Elista 1996

9. — ♖f8 10. d5 ♗d4 11. 0-0

11. ♗xc8? It is a mistake, for it decreases the tension around the king and brings the dark queen into play. 11. — ♖xc8 12. 0-0 ♖f5 13. ♗c3 h6 14. ♗e3 ♗xd5 15. ♗xd5 ♖xd5 16. ♗xd4 ♗xd4 17. ♗f3 ♖xf3± This sacrifice of exchange is the point of this line after which White has serious structural weaknesses and the rooks have not got suitable files to play. Raaste — Rantanen Helsinki 1981

11. — ♗xe6 12. dxe6 h6 13. ♖d3

It is a fine intermediate move.

13. — ♖f6 14. ♜f7±

Binham — Rantanen Helsinki 1981

7. ♖e2

7. exd6

This apparently natural move gives up the opportunity to get any advantage, for decreasing the tension is favourable for Black.

7. — cxd6 8. 0-0 0-0 9. ♖e1 ♜c6

9. — ♖g4 It is a small mistake.
10. c3 ♜c6 11. h3 ♖xf3 12. ♖xf3 d5 13. ♖f4 f6 14. ♖g3 e5 15. dxe5 fxe5 16. ♖g4± Kuzmin — Solozhenkin St. Petersburg 1997

10. h3 ♖f5

10. — ♜a5 11. ♖g5 ♖e8 12. ♜c3 h6 13. ♖h4 g5 14. ♖g3 ♜xb3 15. axb3 ♖f5 16. h4 g4 17. ♜h2 The chances are equal, Black has weak pawns on the king side, which it wants to offset by its bishop pair. 17. — h5 18. ♜f1 ♖g6 19. ♖d2= Gdanski — Varga, Z Odorheiu 1995

11. ♜c3 ♖c8 12. ♖g5 h6 13. ♖e3 d5 14. ♜e2 ♜a5 15. c3=

Anand — Timman Linares 1992

7. — ♜c6

7. — e6?

It is a serious mistake to weaken the diagonal h4-d8 fatally.

8. ♜c3 0-0

8. — h6 9. h4 with further ♖f4, 0-0-0 → Blatny, P

9. ♖g5 ♖e8

9. — f6? 10. exf6 ♖xf6 11. ♖xe6†—

10. ♜e4!±

Riegler — Zrinski Bled 1992

8. 0-0

8. ♜bd2

This continuation is not reprehensible, but the main line is considered to be better.

8. — 0-0 9. h3

9. 0-0?! ♖g4 10. ♖e3 This move was inevitable, for White was threatened by the moves ♜xd4 and dxe5 as well. 10. — dxe5 11. ♜xe5 ♜xe5 12. dxe5 ♖d7 13. ♖e1 ♖c6 14. c3 ♜d7 15. ♖g3 ♖e6= Arnason — Santo Roman Novi Sad 1990

9. — ♜a5

It is an up-to-date plan to exchange the b3 bishop and then to put the c8 bishop in the play.

10. ♜e4 ♖f5 11. ♜g3 ♜xb3 12.

axb3 ♘d7 13. 0-0 a6

13. — ♙e6=

14. ♖el ♗ac8 15. c4±

Motwani — Dam Groningen 1990

8. — 0-0

8. — dxe5

It is a move deserving attention, for by the experiences after the exchanges in the centre Black can equalize easily.

9. dxe5 ♘d4 10. ♘xd4 ♖xd4 11. ♖el

11. e6?! It is a move of doubtful value. 11. — ♙xe6 12. ♙xe6 fxe6 13. ♖xe6 White created some structural weaknesses in Black's position, but it lagged behind in the advance in the meantime. 13. — ♖c4 14. ♖xc4 ♘xc4 15. c3 0-0-0± Dolmatov — Neckar Bern 1994

11. — ♙g4

Black develops its pieces with lightning speed.

12. ♖e4

Perhaps it is the best, but White cannot get any advantage here either.

A) 12. c3 ♙xe2 13. cxd4 ♙c4 14. ♘d2 ♙xb3 15. ♘xb3 0-0-0=

Gallagher — Sutter Zug 1991;

B) 12. ♙e3 ♘d7 13. f3 ♙e6 14. ♙xb6?! It leads to a disadvantageous position, but White can also play stronger.

14. ♙f2 0-0 15. ♘c3 ♖c6 16. ♙xe6 ♖xe6 17. ♘b5 ♖c6 18. ♖ad1± Adams — Santo Roman Principe 1992

14. — axb6 15. c4?

15. ♖d1=

15. — ♘d4† 16. ♖h1 If it is 16. ♖e3, then 16. — ♙e5 wins. 16. — ♖a5± and White loses the e5 pawn. Rosito — Zarnicki Villa Gasel 1997

12. — ♖xe4 13. ♖xe4 ♙f5 14. ♖el a5 15. ♘c3 a4 16. ♙d5 0-0-0

16. — ♘xd5 17. ♘xd5 ♖a5 18. c4 c6 19. ♙d2=

17. ♙e4 ♙xe4 18. ♖xe4 f5 19. ♖e2= Antonio — Santo Roman Manila 1992

9. h3

This is the strongest move. If White wants to have some advantage, it cannot let the c8 bishop move on g4.

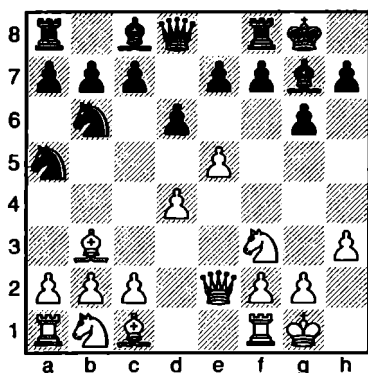
9. c3

After this move it does not cause

problems to Black to make the game equal.

9. — ♖g4 10. ♙f4 ♜d7 11. ♜bd2 ♜f5 12. ♙g3 dxe5 13. dxe5 ♜a5=

9. — ♜a5



It is a typical move in such positions.

9. — a5 10. a4

10. c3? It lets the c8 bishop out, so Black has the power over the light squares. 10. — a4 11. ♙c2 ♙e6 12. ♜a3 ♙d5 13. exd6 exd6 14. ♙e3 ♜e8 ♞ Polgar, J — Khalifman Amsterdam 1995

10. — dxe5 11. dxe5 ♜d4 12. ♜xd4 ♜xd4 13. ♜e1 e6

The most striking feature of the position is the bishop again stuck on c8.

13. — ♙e6!? This move also has

followers.

14. ♜d2 ♜d5 15. ♜f3 ♜c5 16. ♜e4 ♜b4 17. ♙c4 ♜b6 18. b3 ♜xc4 19. bxc4±

Short — Timman, Tilburg 1991

10. ♜c3

It is obvious that the knight must be placed here.

A) 10. e6 ♜xb3 11. exf7 ♜xf7 12. axb3

Similar positions come into being from the Holland Defence.

12. — h6 13. ♜c3 c6 14. ♙e3 a6 15. ♜fe1 ♙f5 16. ♜ad1 g5=

De Firmian — Alburk Estes Park 1986;

B) 10. ♙g5 d5

10. — ♜xb3 11. axb3 f6 12. ♙d2 ♙f5 13. ♜a3 g5 14. e6 Black's pieces are paralyzed and hindered in developing freely by the advanced white pawn. 14. — h6 15. c4 ♙g6 16. ♙c3 d5 17. c5± Kapengut — Sinanovic Pula 1990

11. ♜bd2 h6 12. ♙h4 f5 13. exf6 exf6

Black equalizes quickly in this symmetrical position.

14. ♜fe1 ♙d7 15. c3 ♜e8 16. ♜f1 ♜xb3 17. axb3 ♙e6=

Duarte — Vasquez, R Santiago 1997

10. — dxb3

Perhaps Black could have waited with this move.

10. — c6 11. d4e4?!

White starts a useless knight manoeuvre.

11. f4 It was the evident move.

11. — d5 12. d5 bc4 13. c3 b6 14. d3 dxb3 15. axb3 a5 16. a3=

Vehi Bach — Kindl Groningen 1990

11. axb3 f5

11. — c6 12. f4 e8 13. f6

Black is threatened by 14. exd6.

13. — e6?!

The better defensive move was 13. — d5.

14. g5 d7 15. xe6 xe6 16. exd6 exd6 17. xe6 xe6 18. xe6 fxe6 19. d6±

Grosar — Gostica Graz 1993

12. d1 c6 13. f4 f6 14. exd6 exd6 15. d5 c5 16. e1

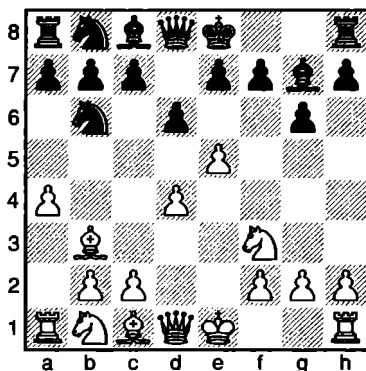
White has the open file and the better position.

16. — g5 17. g3 f7 18. h4±

Kapengut — Barkovsky 1984

6.3.2.2 — 4. d3 g6 5. c4 b6 6. b3 g7 7. a4

1. e4 d6 2. e5 d5 3. d4 d6 4. d3 g6 5. c4 b6 6. b3 g7 7. a4



Nowadays this fashionable continuation also plays a determining role in the repertoire of some of the leading grandmasters. White shakes the position of the knight placed on b6, while making the most frequent move a5 Black weakens its queen side. Following it White tries to put pressure on the centre and make its minimal space advantage solid. In the meantime Black endeavours to finish its development and to equalize the game especially by the exchanges in the centre.

7. — a5

A) 7. — d5?! 8. a5 d4

Black knight moved four times so far in this eight-move-line.

9. ♖bd2

And Black has not already got the chance to make the equal.

9. — ♖xd2

Black will not lose more tempos because of this knight.

a) 9. — c5 10. ♙xc4 dxc4 11. ♖xc4 cxd4 12. ♖xd4 0-0± Kudrin — Alburt USA 1989;

b) 9. — b5 10. axb6 ♖xb6 11. 0-0 0-0 12. ♙e1 e6

12. — ♙a6 13. c3 ♙b5 14. e6 fxe6 15. ♖g5 ♙f5 16. ♖xe6 ♙d6 17. ♙c2± Short — Alburt Farrow 1985

13. ♖f1 h6 14. ♖e3 ♖h7 15. ♖g4 ♙h8 16. ♙e3 ♖c6 17. ♙d2 ♙f8 18. ♙a3± de Firmian — Alburt USA 1988

10. ♙xd2 0-0 11. 0-0 ♙g4 12. h3 ♙xf3 13. ♙xf3 e6 14. ♙b4 ♙e8 15. ♙a4 c6 16. c3

a) 16. ♙e2 b5 17. ♙b3 ♖d7 18. ♙d2 f5 19. c3 a6 20. g4± Khalifman — Marinkovic Leningrad 1989;

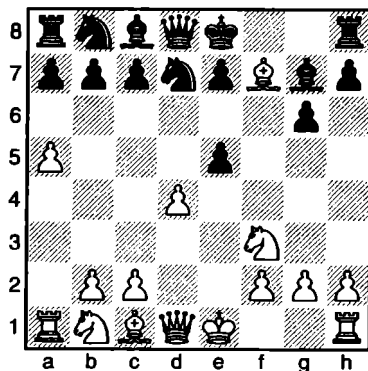
b) 16. ♙d3 b5 17. axb6 axb6 18. ♙d6 b5 19. ♙b3 ♖d7 20. ♙c3± Kaminski — Marinkovic Vrnjaka Banja 1990

16. — b5 17. ♙c2 ♖d7 18. ♙fe1 ♙c8 19. ♙d6 c5 20. dxc5±

It is the accurate move, because the opening of the position is favourable for the side having the bishop pair. Lau — Marinkovic Germany 1991;

B) 7. — dxe5 8. a5 ♖d5

8. — ♖6d7 9. ♙xf7†



It is a typical motif in such positions. 9. — ♖xf7 10. ♖g5† ♖g8 11. ♖e6 ♙e8 12. ♖xc7 ♙d8 13. ♖xa8 exd4 14. c3 If Black could get the a8 knight, it would attach hopes to the game, but it has no time to do it. 14. — ♖c5 15. cxd4 ♙xd4 16. 0-0 e5 17. ♙e3± Christiansen — Alburt USA 1990

9. ♖xe5

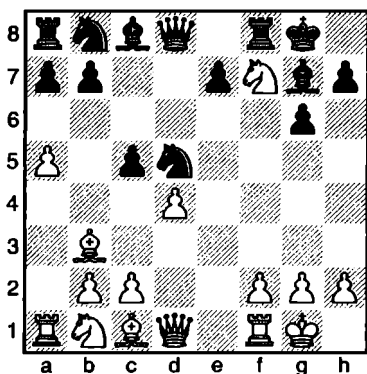
9. dxe5 c6 10. 0-0 ♙g4 11. ♙e1 0-0 12. ♖bd2 ♖d7 13. h3 ♙f5 14. a6 bxa6 15. ♖d4 ♙c7 16. ♖2f3± Rowley — Alburt Los Angeles 1991

9. — 0-0 10. 0-0 c5?

It is premature a little, so it gives White the chance to finish by a tactical blow.

10. — e6 11. ♖f3 c5 12. c4 ♗b4
13. ♕g5 ♕f6 14. ♕xf6 ♖xf6=
Hracek — Varga,Z Odorheiu
1995

11. xf7!



11. — ♔xf7

To capture by the rook is worse, since after 12. dxc5 e6 13. c4 the queen remained unprotected on d8.

12. ♔f3† ♕g8 13. ♔xd5† ♔xd5 14. ♕xd5† e6 15. ♕e4 cxd4 16. ♕g5±
Nunn — Schroll Vienna 1991

8. 0-0

A) 8. ♔e2

It avoids the opportunity of exchanging if the queens.

8. — 00

White has more space and can get a lasting initiative by a carefully considered positional play.

8. — ♖c6 Black judges the castling too early and starts an interesting plan. 9. 0-0 dxe5 10. dxe5 ♗d4 11. ♗xd4 ♜xd4 12. e6

12. $\text{f}e1$ $\text{g}4$ 13. $\text{f}7$ $\text{d}7$ 14. $\text{c}3$ $\text{xe}5$ 15. $\text{b}5$ $\text{d}7$ 16. $\text{f}4$ $\text{c}6$ 17. $\text{xe}5$ $\text{xe}5$ 18. $\text{xe}5$ $\text{cxb}5$ 19. $\text{h}3$ $\text{f}5$ 20. $\text{d}1+$
Benjamin — Santo Roman
Cannes 1992

12. — ♖xe6 13. ♖xe6 fxe6 14. ♔xe6

14. ♖d2 e5 15. c3 ♜d5 16. ♗e4
0-0 17. ♙g5 ♞f7 18. f3 ♗c4=
Palac,M—Santo Roman Cannes
1997

14. — ♖c4 15. ♜xc4 ♜xc4 16. ♜a2 ♜f8 17. b3 ♜d6 18. ♜a3 ♜f5
19. c4 ♜f6 20. ♜e2± Van der
Wiel — Santo Roman Cannes
1992

9. h3 c6 10. 0-0 dxe5

With similar ideas, as they were some pairs of moves ago.

10. — ♗f5 11. ♘c3 ♔h8

11. — ♖c8 12. e6 ♙xe6 13. d5
 ♙xc3 14. dxe6 ♙g7 15. exf7+
 ♖h8 16. ♙e6 ♜d7 17. ♖b5±

12. ♖f4 ♘b4 13. ♚fe1 ♜c8 14.
♘e4 f6 15. ♙h2 fxe5 16. dxe5
♙xe4 17. ♜xe4 d5 18. ♜h4±
Benjamin — Alburth Philadelphia
1990

11. dxe5 ♘d4 12. ♘xd4 ♜xd4 13.
♚e1 ♙d7

13. — ♙f5 14. ♘d2 ♜d7 15. ♘f3
15. ♘e4 ♜c6 16. ♘g5 h6 17.
♘f3 ♚fd8 18. ♙e3 ♜e4!∞ Al-
masi

15. — ♙e6 16. ♚d1 ♜c8 17. ♜b5
♙xb3 18. ♜xb3±

14. c3

14. ♘c3 ♙c6 15. ♘b5 ♙xb5 16.
♜xb5 c6 17. ♜e2 ♘d5 18. c3
♜b6 19. ♙c2

19. ♙c4 ♚ad8 Leko — Timman
1996 20. h4±

19. — ♚fd8 20. h4±

14. — ♜h4 15. ♘d2 ♙c6 16. ♘f3
♜h5 17. ♘d4 ♜xe2 18. ♚xe2
♙d5=;

B) 8. ♘g5

The positions coming into being are
almost the same as those were after

7. ♘g5.

8. — e6 9. ♜f3

It is an aggressive attacking move,
which is considered to be more
effective than 9. f4.

9. f4 dxe5 10. fxe5 c5 11. 0-0 0-0
12. c3 cxd4 13. cxd4 ♘c6 14.
♘f3 f6 White has to open the
position, which results in a very
sharp play. 15. exf6 This is the
right continuation.

15. ♘c3?! According to the
result of the present game White
does not get enough compensa-
tion for the sacrificed pawn. 15.
— fxe5 16. ♙g5 ♜d7 17. dxe5
♘xe5 18. ♘xe5 ♚xf1† 19. ♜xf1
♜d4† 20. ♘h1 ♜xe5 21. ♙d8!
♚a6! 22. ♜b5

22. ♚e1 ♜f5 23. ♜xf5 gxf5 24.
♙xe6† ♙xe6 25. ♚xe6 ♙xc3
26. bxc3 ♘xa4 27. c4! ♘b2†
Pushkin

22. — ♙d7 23. ♜xe5 ♙xe5 24.
♚d1 ♙xc3 25. bxc3 ♘f8 26.
♙xb6 ♚xb6 27. ♚xd7 ♚xb3 28.
♘g1 b6† Zukov — Pushkin
USSR 1991

15. — ♜xf6 16. ♙e3 ♘d5 17.
♙f2 ♘f4 18. ♘bd2 ♜f5 19. ♘h1
♜g4 20. ♙g3 ♘h5 21. ♙d6 ♚e8
22. ♘c4± Kavalek — Alburth
South Bend 1981

9. — ♖e7

9. — ♖d7 10. exd6 cxd6 11. c3 h6?

a) 11. — d6c6!? Lanka;

b) 11. — 0-0!? Lanka

12. d4e4 f5 13. d2ed2 0-0 14. ♖g3± Lanka — Reinemer Germany 1992

14. d3a3!± Lanka

10. d4e4 d5 11. d6f6† ♙xf6 12. exf6 ♖b4† 13. ♙d2 ♖xd4 14. d3c3 d4c4?

14. — c6! 15. 0-0-0 d8d7 16. ♙e3 ♖b4 17. ♗b1 ♖d6 18. ♚hel1

15. 0-0-0 dxd2 16. ♚xd2 ♖c5 Lanka — Santo Roman Cannes 1993

17. dxd5 exd5 18. ♚xd5 ♖c6 19. ♖e3† ♙e6 20. ♚hd1+ Lanka

8. — 0-0 9. h3 d6

9. — d5

It is not a very demanding line.

10. d3c3 d2a6 11. ♙f4 h6 12. ♚e1 ♙f5 13. ♖d2 g5 14. ♙g3 c5 15. dxc5 dxc5 16. ♙xd5 dxd5 17. ♖xd5±

Heinatz,T — Varga,Z Budapest 1996

10. ♖e2 dxe5 11. dxe5 d4d4 12. dxd4 ♖xd4 13. ♚e1 ♙d7

13. — e6 14. d2d2 ♙d7 15. c3 ♖c5 16. d3f3 ♙c6 17. ♙e3 ♖e7 18. ♙g5 ♖c5 19. d4d4 ♙d5 20. ♙xd5 ♖xd5 21. f4 ♖c4 22. ♖xc4±

And having the control over the d8 square White has an advantageous position. Short — Hennigen Swansea 1987

14. d3c3 e6

It is an essential move, but Black's difficulties remain.

14. — ♙c6

White chances are better getting the bishop pair without losing a tempo.

15. d5b5 ♙xb5 16. ♖xb5 c6 17. ♖e2 d5d5 18. c3 ♖b6

18. — ♖h4? 19. ♖f3 e6 20. ♙d2± Leko,P

19. ♙c2

19. ♙c4!±

19. — ♚ad8

19. — f5!=

20. h4±

Hjartarson-Egger Yerevan 1996

15. ♖g5

The biggest problem of Black's position is, that its rooks could not take part in the fight on the d-file.

15. — ♜c5

15. — h6 16. ♙e7 ♜fe8 17. ♜ad1 ♜f4 18. ♙c5±

Chetverik,M

16. ♜g4 ♙c6

After capturing the e5 pawn White would get a good play by the move ♔e4.

17. ♜e4 ♙xe4 18. ♜xe4 ♜d7 19. ♙f4 ♜b4?!

Following the exchange of the queens Black's position falls to pieces.

20. ♜xb4 axb4 21. ♜e4 c5

21. — ♜a5!? 22. ♜xb4 b6±

22. ♙c4 g5 23. ♙xg5 ♜xe5

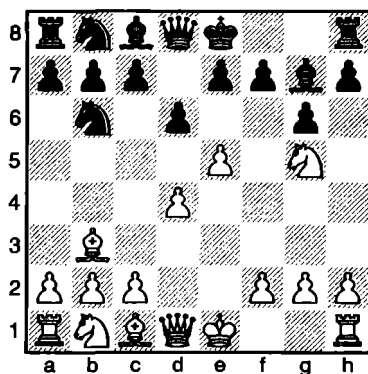
23. — ♙xe5? 24. ♜d1 ♜b6 25. ♙xe6!+-

24. ♙b5 ♜fc8 25. ♜d1±

Eismont,O — Chetverik,M Russia 1995

6.3.2.3 — 4. ♜f3 g6 5. ♙c4 ♜b6 6. ♙b3 ♙g7 7. ♜g5

1. e4 ♜f6 2. e5 ♜d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♜f3 g6 5. ♙c4 ♜b6 6. ♙b3 ♙g7 7. ♜g5



This system has existed for a long time in practice, but nowadays it occurs rather seldom. In this part mainly the variations having practical benefit will be shown. The manoeuvres in the centre have got few chances to get the initiative or the advantage for White, therefore it tries to establish tactical complications on the king side. The positions coming into being are regarded as equal by the present state of the opening theory, but there are many unclear lines need analyzing, so we think, that White has some excellent opportunities to attack, while Black has good chances of defence.

7. — e6

It is the more elastic continuation.

7. — d5

It is the introducing move of the other main system in which Black closes the centre immediately. Now White has several moves to reply. We recommend 8. f4 most of all.

8. f4

This reply has the most opportunities.

A) 8. 0-0 ♗c6

8. — 0-0 9. ♖e1 *Black makes the game equal perfectly.* 9. — f6 10. exf6 exf6 11. ♗e6 ♗xe6 12. ♖xe6 ♗d7 13. ♖e1 ♗c6 14. c3 ♖ae8= *Relange — Santo Roman Nice 1994*

9. c3 ♗f5 10. g4 ♗xb1 11. ♗f3 0-0 12. ♖xb1 ♗d7 13. ♗c2 ♗d8 14. ♗h3 h6 15. f4 hxg5 16. f5 Black evades the complications and it rather gives the piece back. 16. — ♗e6

16. — ♗c6 *This move was also taken into account.* 17. ♗xg5 ♗c8

17. fxe6 ♗xe6 18. ♗xg5± Olafsson — Larsen Reykjavik 1978;

B) 8. a4 Now it is not dangerous

at all, since the knight has an excellent place on c4. 8. — f6 9. a5 ♗c4 10. exf6 exf6 11. ♗xc4 dxc4 12. ♗e2† ♗e7 13. ♗xe7† ♗xe7 14. ♗f3 ♗c6 15. ♖a4 ♗e6 16. ♗c3 ♖hd8= Kovacevic — Chekhov Belgrade 1989;

C) 8. h4?! It is a move without threats. 8. — f6 9. exf6 exf6 10. ♗h3 ♗c6 11. ♗f4 ♗a5 12. ♗c3 c6 13. ♗ce2 ♗f7 14. c3

14. h5 ♗xb3 15. axb3 ♖e8

14. — ♗xb3 15. axb3 ♗f5 16. f3 h5 17. ♗g3 ♗d7= Braga — Hennigen Rome 1990

8. — f6

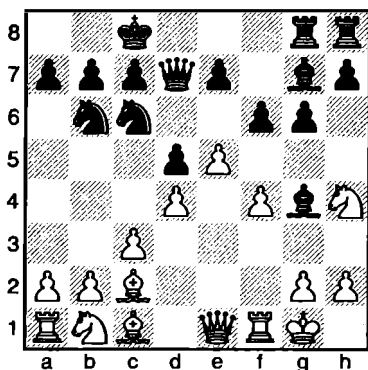
For the line 8. — 0-0 9. 0-0 f6 see the current variation. Other possibilities are the following:

a) 8. — h6 9. ♗f3 White having the space advantage in the closed position gets a lasting initiative. 9. — ♗g4 10. c3 e6 11. a4 a5 12. ♗a3 ♗f8 13. 0-0 c5 14. ♗e3± Ciocaltea — Rogulj Bucharest 1979;

b) 8. — ♗c6 This simple answer deserves attention. 9. a4

9. c3 f6 10. ♗f3 ♗f5 11. 0-0 ♗d7 12. ♗h4 ♗g4 13. ♗e1

0-0-0 14. ♖c2 ♜dg8?!



Black should have placed its rooks on the f-file following the exchanges on e5. 15. h3 ♖e6 16. a4 a5 17. ♖d2± Sokolov, A — Adrianov Moscow 1981

9. — f6 10. ♖f3 a5 11. 0-0 ♖g4 12. c3 0-0 13. ♖bd2 fxe5 14. fxe5 e6 Black has no weaknesses, so it has the same opportunities as White's. 15. h3 ♖f5 16. ♖h2 ♜e7 17. g4 ♖d3∞ Lyrberg — Escobar 1991

9. ♖f3 a5

a) 9. — ♖f5 It is an unclear move. 10. 0-0 ♖c6 11. ♖h4 Wedberg — Alburt Luzern 1982

11. c3±

11. — e6∞;

b) 9. — ♖g4 10. ♖bd2 ♖c6 11. c3 ♖h6 12. h3 ♖e6 13. ♖f1

♜d7? By castling to the king side Black would have kept all of its chances. 14. f5 ♖xc1 15. fxe6 ♜xe6 16. ♜xc1± and White retains its material advantage. Ljubojevic — Alburt Malta 1980;

c) 9. — ♖c6 It is considered to be the best reply which makes the game equal. 10. c3 0-0 11. 0-0 fxe5 It is stronger than the immediate move ♖f5.

11. — ♖f5?! 12. ♖h4 ♖xb1 The series of exchanges is favourable for the side having less space, that is for Black. 13. ♖xb1 fxe5 14. fxe5 ♜xf1† 15. ♜xf1 ♜d7 16. ♜e2= Donchev — Pribyl Bratislava 1983

12. fxe5 ♖f5 13. ♖bd2 ♜d7 14. ♜f2 ♖a5 15. ♖c2 ♖xc2 16. ♜xc2 c5 It opens the position realizing that White lagged behind in the advance.

16. — ♜f5?! 17. ♜d1 e6 18. ♖f1 c5 19. h3 cxd4 20. cxd4 ♖c6 21. b3 ♖d7 22. ♖a3± Karpov

17. ♖b3 ♖xb3 18. axb3 cxd4† Van der Tak — Nnederkoom corr 1990;

d) 9. — 0-0 10. 0-0 ♖a6?! The knight stands awkwardly on the edge of the board. 11. c3 It exploits the deficiencies of

Black's setup. 11. — c5 12. exf6
♙xf6

12. — exf6 13. dxc5±

13. ♘e5 Now the knight is missing from c6. 13. — cxd4 14. cxd4 ♘b4 15. ♘c3 ♙f5 16. a3 ♘c6 17. g4 ♙e6 18. f5± and the bishop arrives on h6 in time. Agnos — Hennigen Swansea 1987

10. a4?!

10. c3 was the adequate reply.

10. — ♙g4 11. 0-0 0-0 12. ♘bd2 fxe5 13. fxe5 ♘a6 14. h3 ♙f5 15. g4?!

It is another weakening. (15 c3)

15. — ♙e6 16. ♘g5 ♙d7 17. ♘xe6 ♙xe6 18. ♘f3 c5 19. c3 cxd4

And now the fault of the move a4 becomes clear, the a6 knight will have a safe foothold on b4.

20. cxd4 ♘b4±

Perez, FH — Barreras Garcia Cuba 1991

8. ♙f3

8. f4

By our today's knowledge the chances are equal if the sides make the best moves mutually.

8. — dxe5

8. — f6? It is a move of doubtful

value. 9. exf6 ♙xf6 10. ♙e3± Hardicsay — Honfi Hungary 1978

9. fxe5 c5

This move is the essence of Black's system.

10. 0-0

10. c3 cxd4 11. cxd4 White has more active pieces and a weak pawn on d4, but Black has to open the position on to make the game equal entirely. 11. — ♘c6 12. ♘f3 f6 It is the solution. 13. exf6

13. ♘c3 fxe5 14. ♙g5 ♙f6 15. ♙xf6 ♙xf6 16. dxe5 ♙f4 Capturing the e5 pawn would have led to an unclear situation. 17. ♙e2 0-0 18. ♙d1± Chekhov — Ponomarev Yalta 1995

13. — ♙xf6 14. ♙e3 ♘d5 15. ♙xd5 exd5 16. ♘c3 ♙e6 17. 0-0 ♙e7 18. ♙d2± Jacobs — Hauchard Capelle la Grande 1989

10. — 0-0 11. c3 cxd4 12. cxd4 ♘c6 13. ♘f3 f6

The opening of the centre serves similar purposes as in the positions without castling.

14. exf6 ♙xf6 15. ♙e3 ♘d5 16. ♙f2 ♘f4 17. ♘c3 ♘h3†

17. — ♘a5 18. ♘e5 It opens the f-file on the black queen.

18. ♖c2? ♜h3†

18. — ♜xb3 19. ♖xb3 b6 20. ♙g3 g5 21. ♙xf4 gxf4∞ with a difficult position. Pavlov — Pushkin Russia 1992

18. gxf3 ♖xf3 19. d5?!

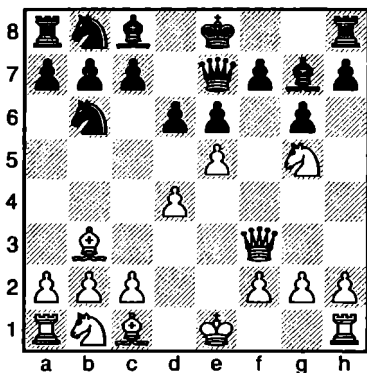
It helps Black to stop its weakness releasing the tension in the centre.

19. ♖xf3 ♜xf3 20. ♜b5 ♙h8 21. ♙g2 Black lags behind in the advance very much. 21. — ♜d3 22. ♜ad1± Sokolov — Timman Tilburg 1987

19. — ♖xd1 20. ♜axd1 exd5 21. ♙xd5† ♙h8 22. ♙g2 ♙f5=

Zapata — Timman Amsterdam 1987

8. — ♖e7



Black has to protect the f7 pawn, but it would have been very risky to

castle.

A) 8. — 0-0

It is a daring move, Black's king will have to pass through a hard period in what follows.

9. ♖h3 h6 10. ♜f3

10. ♜e4 It is the more aggressive continuation. 10. — dxe5

10. — d5 Black closes the centre, but it cannot count on equalizing because of the weaknesses of some squares in its king position. 11. ♜c5 ♙h7 12. ♜d2 ♜6d7 13. ♜xd7 ♙xd7 14. 0-0 c5 15. c3± Dzindzikhshvili — Alburt New York 1984

11. ♙xh6 ♜c6

11. — exd4∞

12. ♜g5 ♖f6 13. ♜h7 ♖f5 14. ♖xf5 exf5 15. ♙xg7 ♜d8 16. ♙f6 ♜xd4 17. ♜g5+ Klinger — Kahn Balatonberény 1992

10. — dxe5 11. dxe5 ♜c6

This is the only move.

11. — g5? It is a fatal weakening, Black practically lost the game. 12. ♖h5 f5 13. ♙xg5 hxg5 14. ♜xg5 ♜e8 15. ♜c3 ♜e7 16. ♜d1+ Kosten — Dubois France 1988 16. — ♖e8 It gives you the opportunity to know a nice motif.

17. ♖h7† ♜f8 18. ♞xf5†!! And the end of the line is a mate by a knight after capturing the queen.

12. ♙xh6 ♜xe5 13. ♙xg7

13. ♜g5 ♞f6

13. — ♜xf3† 14. ♞xf3 ♜xg7 15. ♜c3 ♞f6=

Rogers — Popov Philadelphia 1989;

B) 8. — ♞d7

It does not look good, and it is really not good.

9. ♜e4 dxe5 10. dxe5

It also leads to White's advantage.

a) 10. ♙h6 It is witty, but Black also has prepared for it. 10. — f5 11. ♜c5 ♞e7! 12. ♙xg7 ♞xg7 13. ♙xe6 ♜c6 In consequence of the exchanges the attacking forces are used up, so Black can equalize. 14. ♙xc8 ♜xd4

14. — ♙xc8 15. c3 e4 16. ♞e2 ♜d7= Anyuhin — Pushkin USSR 1991

15. ♞xb7 ♙xc8 16. ♜a3 ♞e7 17. ♜b3 0-0-0 With mutual chances. Black's weaker pawn structure is compensated by White's decentralized pieces. Solozhenkin — Dubois Capelle la Grande 1994;

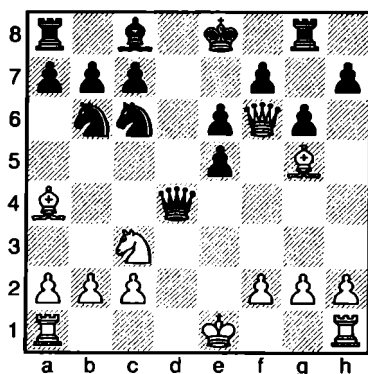
b) 10. ♜f6† It provokes the

exchange of Black's bishop moving on dark squares. 10. — ♙xf6 11. ♞xf6 ♙g8 12. ♙g5

12. dxe5?! ♞d4 Konchevsky — Pushkin USSR 1989 13. ♞f4±

12. — exd4

12. — ♜c6?! 13. ♜c3 ♞xd4 14. ♙a4!



On the immediate move ♙d1, it would follow the intermediate move ♜d7. 14. — ♞d6 15. ♙d1 ♜d5 16. ♜xd5 exd5 17. ♙xd5± Verin — Pushkin corr 1990

13. ♜d2!

13. ♜c3 h6! 14. ♙h4 g5 15. ♜e4 gxf4 16. ♞xh6 ♙g6 17. ♞h8† ♜e7 18. ♞xh4† ♜f8= And there is no more than a draw by perpetual checks.

13. — ♜c6 14. 0-0-0 ♜d5 15. ♙xd5 ♞xd5 16. ♜f3 ♞f5 17.

10. The endgame coming into existence gives Black flight just apparently. 17. — ♖xf6 18. ♙xf6 19. ♜xc6 ♙xc6 20. h4! This move blocks the black pawns on the king side getting the control over the dark squares, and the black king got stuck in the middle cuts its own forces into two. 20. — b5 21. b3 b4

21. — ♙d5 22. ♜he1 ♜f8 23. c4 bxc4 24. bxc4 ♙xc4 25. ♜d7± *Bielczyk*

22. ♜he1 ♜b8 23. ♜e3 ♜c8 24. a3 a5 25. ♜e5+ *Bielczyk — Lindarenko Czerwionka 1991*

10. — ♙xe5 11. ♜f6† ♙xf6 12. ♖xf6 ♜g8 13. ♖h4

The black squares are fatally weak.

13. — f5 14. ♜c3 ♖g7 15. ♙g5 h6 16. ♙xh6 g5 17. ♙xg7 gxh4 18. ♙f6±

Haba — Polzin Pardubice 1993

9. ♜e4 dxe5

9. — h6?!

It involves considerable loss of time, Black probably must consent to the complicated main line.

10. exd6 cxd6 11. ♖g3 e5 12. 0-0 ♙f5 13. ♜bc3 0-0 14. dxe5 dxe5 15. ♙e3

Black is incapable of controlling the dark squares (c5, d6).

15. — ♜d8 16. ♜ad1±

Ghinda — Chekhov Postdam 1985

10. ♙g5 ♖b4† 11. c3 ♖a5

It is the crucial position. White has the opportunities to make two different moves which lead to difficult plays.

12. ♜f6†

12. ♙f6

It is the more solid move with fewer complications.

12. — ♙xf6 13. ♖xf6 0-0 14. ♖xe5 ♖xe5

White has got an advantageous position because of the powerless c8 bishop and the pawns blocked on white squares.

14. — ♜c6 15. ♖xc7 ♜xd4

15. dxe5 ♙d7

15. — ♜c6 16. f4 ♜a5 17. ♜bd2

In this half-opened position the bishop has a role of less importance. 17. — ♜xb3 18. axb3 ♜d5 19. g3± *Sisniega — Albur Taxco 1985*

16. ♜bd2 ♙c6 17. f4

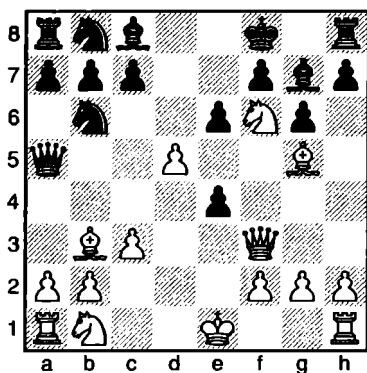
17. 0-0-0 a5 18. f4 ♜g7 19. h4±

Fedorowicz — Benjamin San Francisco 1991

17. — ♘d6d7 18. ♖c2 a5 19. 0-0-0 ♘g7 20. ♖he1 a4 21. b4 axb3 22. axb3 ♘a6 23. b4±

Khalifman — Fedorowitz WAZ 1991

12. — ♘f8 13. d5 e4!



It is a move with achieving several aims. On the one hand it deflects the queen, on the other hand it opens the fifth rank for its own queen.

14. ♖g3

The point of this move is to attack the c7 pawn and to defend the g5 bishop at the same time.

A) 14. ♘xe4? exd5 15. 0-0 ♖e6 16. ♘g3 ♘d7±

And Black retains its extra pawn after castling its king in several

moves. Gdanski — Marinkovic Biel 1989;

B) 14. ♖f4 ♘xd5 15. ♖xd5 h6 16. ♖xe4 ♖b5!

It is a brilliant protecting and attacking move.

17. ♖d4 exd5 18. ♖xd5 ♖xd5 19. ♘xd5=

14. — ♘a6

Although it seems to be a passive place, but the knight advances defending the c7 pawn as well.

14. — ♘d6d7

This move is of a doubtful value giving White the chance of a strong attack.

14. — ♘xd5? It would be a fatal mistake. 15. ♖xd5 h6 16. b4 ♖b6 17. ♖e3+ Short

15. ♘xd7† ♘xd7 16. dxe6

It can be seen now, that White did the right thing when it defended the g5 bishop.

16. — ♘c5 17. e7† ♘e8 18. 0-0 h6

18. — ♘xb3 19. axb3 ♖xa1 20. ♖xc7 f6 21. ♖d1+ and White wins.

19. ♖f4 ♘xb3 20. ♖xc7 ♖g5 21. axb3 ♖xg3 22. hxg3 ♘xe7 23. ♘d2∞

Short — Alburth Farnborough 1985

15. dxe6 ♖xe6

A) 15. — h6?!

On this move White keeps its activity.

16. e7† ♜xe7 17. ♜d5† ♜e8 18. ♜xc7†±

With a winning position. Van der Wiel — Blees The Netherlands 1990;

B) 15. — ♜f5!? 16. e7† ♜xe7 17. ♜d5† ♜f8 18. ♜e3 ♜d7±

With further f6 and g5. Short

16. ♖xe6 h6 17. ♜f4

Black is threatened by the exploiting of the battery along the f-file moving ♜d7† or ♜h7†

17. ♖h4 g5 18. ♜h5 ♜g8

18. — ♜xe6 also has to be taken into account. 19. ♜xg7 ♜xg7∞

19. ♖b3 gxh4 20. ♜xh4 ♜c5 21. ♜d2∞

Andersson — Polaczek corr 1990

17. — ♜xe6 18. ♜d5† ♜g8

This is the better direction to escape.

18. — ♜e8

In the case of this move White's attack still would show through.

19. ♜xc7† ♜xc7 20. ♜xc7 ♜xg5 21. ♜xg7±

19. ♜e7† ♜h7 20. h4 ♜d5 21. ♜xe4 ♜xe7

Black equalizes the play easily.

22. ♖xe7 ♜he8 23. ♖a3 ♜d5 24. ♜d2=

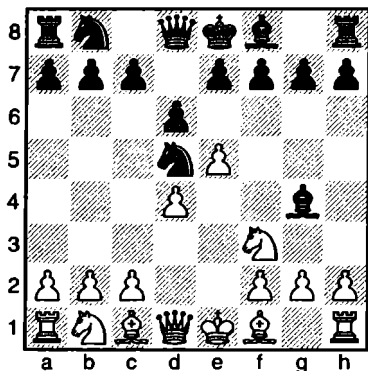
London — Alburth New York 1989

Chapter 7

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♗d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♗f3 ♕g4

7.1 — 4. ♗f3 ♕g4 5. c4

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♗d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♗f3 ♕g4



It is the main line. Its popularity decreases in the recent years, but it still the most frequent move. It pins the opponent's knight hindering it in controlling the very important e5 square. The other benefit of this move is the fact, that the move e6, which usually inevitable to develop the king side, does not preclude the possibility of bishop to play.

5. c4

For the line 5. exd6 cxd6 6. ♕e2 see the variation 5. ♕e2 later on, while for the line 5. exd6 cxd6 6. c4 ♗b6

see the current variation.

5. h3 ♕xf3!

The situation of the queen getting into play too early gives Black enough time to organize its counter-play.

5. — ♕h5?! 6. c4 ♗b6 7. g4 ♕g6
8. e6 fxe6 9. ♕d3

6. ♖xf3 dxe5 7. dxe5 e6 8. ♕c4

A) 8. ♖e4 ♗d7 9. ♕c4 ♗c5 10. ♖e2 ♗b6 11. ♕b3 a5 12. a3 ♗xb3 13. cxb3 ♕e7 Kupreichik — Bagirov Vitebsk 1970;

B) 8. a3 ♗d7 9. ♖g3 h5 10. ♗d2 h4 11. ♖b3 ♕h5

8. — ♗c6

8. — ♗d7!?

9. ♖e4 ♗de7 10. ♕e3 ♗f5 11. 0-0 ♖h4 12. ♖xh4 ♗xh4 13. ♕b5 ♗f5 14. ♕xc6† bxc6 15. ♗d2 ♗xe3 16. fxe3 ♕d8= Bagirov

5. — ♗b6 6. ♕e2

A) 6. h3 ♕xf3 7. ♖xf3 ♗c6 8. e6

8. ♕e3 dxe5 9. dxe5 e6 10. a3 ♗d7 11. ♕f4 g5 12. ♕g3 ♕g7

8. — fxe6 9. ♖e3 g6

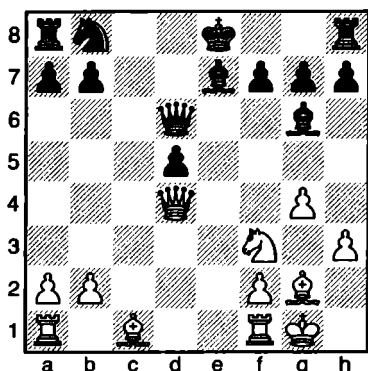
9. — ♟b4? 10. ♖a3 d5 11.
♜h5†± Rogulj — Mohr Bled
1992

10. ♜c3 ♖g7±;

B) 6. d5 e6

6. — ♜8d7 7. e6 fxe6 8. h3±

7. exd6 ♜xd6 8. ♜c3 exd5 9. cxd5
c6 10. h3 ♖h5! 11. g4 ♖g6 12. ♖g2
♜xd5 13. ♜xd5 cxd5 14. 0-0 ♖e7
15. ♜d4



15. — ♜c6 16. ♜xg7 0-0-0 17.
♜h6 ♜he8 18. ♖f4 ♜b4±
Vitolinsh — Kengis USSR 1985;

C) 6. exd6 cxd6

6. — exd6=

7. ♖e2

7. ♜bd2 e6 8. h3 ♖f5 9. ♖e2 ♖e7

10. ♜f1 0-0 11. ♜e3 ♖e4 12. 0-0 9. 0-0

d5 13. b3 ♜c6 14. ♖b2 ♖f6=
Campora — Rogers Oropesa del
Mar 1996

7. — g6

7. — e6

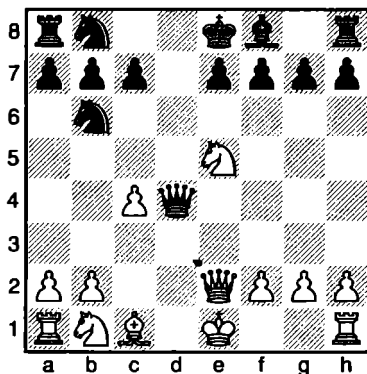
8. ♜c3 ♖g7 9. ♖e3 0-0 10. h3 ♖xf3
11. ♖xf3 ♜c6 12. ♖xc6 bxc6 13.
♜e2 d5 14. cxd5 cxd5 15. 0-0 e6±
Gerstmann — Panchenko Kassel
1994

6. — dxe5 7. ♜xe5

It is an interesting pawn sacrifice
from the ancient times. It has not got
many fans nowadays.

7. c5 e4! 8. cxb6 exf3 9. ♖xf3 ♖xf3
10. ♜xf3 ♜c6 11. 0-0 ♜xd4 12.
♜xb7 axb6 13. ♖e3 ♜b8 14. ♜e4
♜b5 15. ♜a4 ♜d7 16. ♜d1 ♜d6±
Fine

7. — ♖xe2 8. ♜xe2 ♜xd4



A) 9. d2 d8d7 10. df3 d6
11. 0-0 xe5 12. xe5 g6 13. d1
e6 14. c5 g7 15. f4 d5 16.
b5† c6 17. xxb7 0-0

Olsson — Westerinen Stockholm
1970;

B) 9. a3
Alekhine

9. — d8d7 10. f3

9. — d8d7 10. xd7 xd7! 11. a4

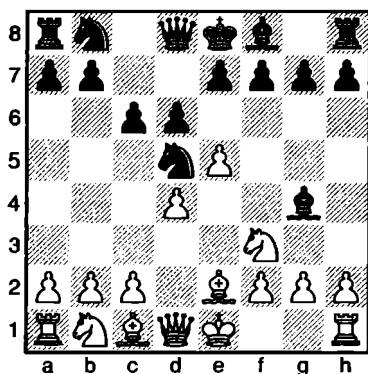
11. d1 c6 12. c3 e6 13. g5 h6
14. h4 xc4

11. — c6 12. a3 e6 13. a5 d7
14. b5

Alekhine

7.2.1 — 4. f3 g4 5. e2 c6 6.
g5 f5 7. d3

1. e4 f6 2. e5 d5 3. d4 d6 4. f3
g4 5. e2 c6



6. g5

This is the most aggressive reply.

6. — f5!

6. — xe2?!

Black exchanges the bishop on the most favourable places for White. The queen getting on e2 protects Black's most important target, the e5 pawn.

7. xe2 dxe5

7. — h6 8. e4 dxe5 9. dxe5 e6
10. 0-0 d7 11. c4 b6 12.
d1 e7 13. dxc3± Milov, L —
Pribyl Germany 1997

8. dxe5 e6 9. 0-0 d7

A) 9. — c7 10. d1 d7 11.
f3± e7? 12. bd2 g6 13.
c4 b5 14. d6† xd6 15. exd6
xb7 16. h4± Tsheskovsky —
Hort Manila 1976;

B) 9. — e7 10. e4 0-0 11.
c4±

10. c4

10. f4!? e7 11. e4 c5 12.
xc5 xc5† 13. h1 b6
13. — 0-0 is better

14. c4 e7 15. c3 f5 16.
d2± Watson — Kuijf Beer-
Sheva 1987

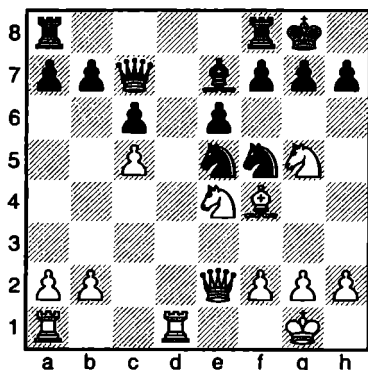
10. — ♖e7

10. — ♖5b6 11. ♖d1 ♖c7 12. f4
♙e7 13. ♖e4±

11. ♖d1 ♖f5 12. ♖c3

12. g4 ♖h4 13. ♖c3 ♙e7 14.
♖ce4 h6 ± Moroz — Sergeev, V
USSR 1985

12. — ♖c7? 13. ♖ce4 ♙e7 14. ♙f4
♖xe5 15. c5 0-0



16. ♖xh7! ♖fd8 17. ♖hg5 ♖xd1†
18. ♖xd1 ♖d8 19. ♖xf7 ♖xf7 20.
♖xd8±

Novopashin — Agzamov USSR
1976

7. ♙d3

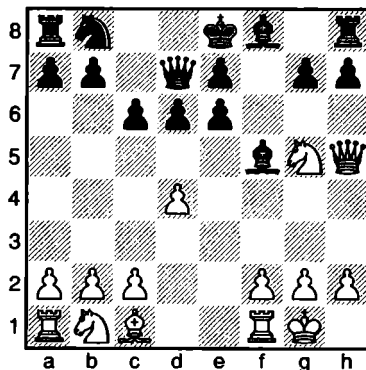
A) 7. ♙g4 ♖d7

7. — ♙xg4 8. ♖xg4 dxe5 9. dxe5
e6 10. 0-0 ♖d7 11. c4 ♖e7=

8. e6

8. ♖f3 e6

8. — fxe6 9. 0-0 ♖f6 10. ♙h5†
♖xh5 11. ♖xh5†



11. — g6!?

11. — ♙g6? 12. ♖e2 ♖a6 13.
♖xe6 ♖c7 14. ♖xc7† ♖xc7 15.
c4 0-0-0 16. d5 ♖e8 17. ♖c3 e5
18. ♙e3 c5 19. b4 a6 20. ♖fd1 b6
21. ♖b2± Golod — Pribyl Ceske
Budejovice 1994)

12. ♖e2 h6∞;

B) 7. ♙h5 g6 8. ♙g4 ♙xg4 9. ♖xg4
dxe5 10. dxe5 h6 11. ♖e4 ♖d7=

Marjanovic — Kovacevic, VI Yu-
goslavia 1984

7. — ♙xd3 8. ♖xd3 dxe5

A) 8. — h6 9. ♖e4±;

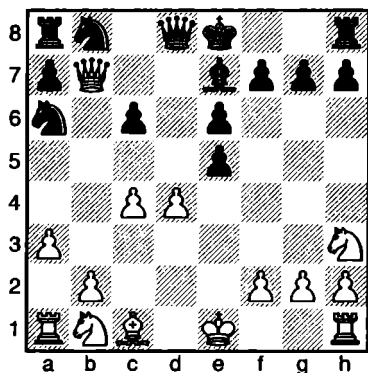
B) 8. — e6 9. ♖f3

For the line 9. 0-0! dxe5 10. dxe5

d7 see the current main variation (8. — dxe5). Other opportunities are the following:

a) 9. f3 h7?! e7;

b) 9. c4 b4 10. b3 dxe5 11. a3 e7 12. h3 d4a6 13. bxb7



13. — b6! ?;

9. f3 c7 10. c4 b4 11. exd6 xxd6 12. e4

12. c5 e4 13. exf4 fxf4 14. fxf4 d3†=

12. — d7 13. a3 d6 14. e2 e4 15. 0-0 excl 16. xcl f4 17. e3 d3=

Burgess

9. dxe5

9. f5 f6

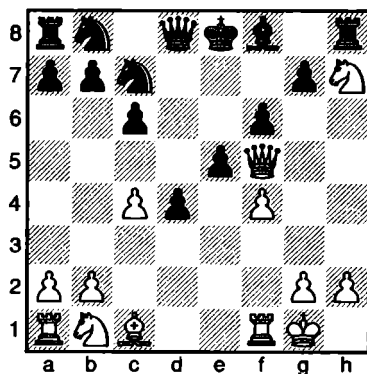
9. — f6 10. dxe5 g6 11. f4 h6

12. fxf7 fxf7 13. c3!

13. exf6? e5

13. — bd7 14. exf6 exf6 15. 0-0±

10. f3 h7 exd4 11. 0-0 e5 12. c4 d7 13. f4



13. — d7!

13. — d7? 14. g5!+ h6 15. fxe5 g6 16. f2 dxe5 17. e4 f5 18. g5 d4 19. g3 d7 20. xg4 Vasiukov — Bagirov Baku 1972

14. h5† d8 15. fxe5 e8! 16. xe8†

16. f5 e6

16. — xe8 17. xf8 x8= Bagirov

9. — h6

9. — e6? 10. c4

10. ♖f3

10. ♖h3!?

10. — e6 11. 0-0 ♗d7 12. ♖e1

A) 12. ♖e2 ♖c7 13. b3 ♙c5

13. — 0-0-0

14. c4 ♗e7 15. ♙b2 ♗g6 16. g3 0-0
17. ♘g2

17. h4 f5!∞

17. — ♖fd8 18. h4 a5 19. a3 ♙f8 20.
♗bd2 ♗c5 21. ♙d4 b6 22. h5 ♗e7
23. g4±

Mencinger — Rogulj Yugoslavia
1987 Mencinger;

B) 12. c4 ♗e7 13. ♗c3 ♗g6 14.
♖e2 ♖c7 15. ♖e1 ♗d8! 16. h4

a) 16. ♙d2? ♗dxe5±;

b) 16. a3 ♗c5±

16. — ♙b4 17. h5 ♙xc3 18. bxc3
♗e7 19. ♖b1=

With mutual chances. Smagin —
Pribyl FRG 1991

12. — ♖c7 13. c4

13. ♖e4 0-0-0 14. a3 g5 15. b4
♙g7 16. ♙b2 ♘b8 17. ♗bd2 ♖dg8
18. ♗c4 ♗b6 19. ♗xb6 ♗xb6 20.
a4=

Martinovic,S — Rogulj Vrnjacka

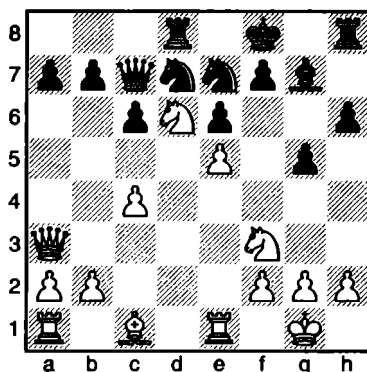
Banja 1982

13. — ♗e7 14. ♗c3 0-0-0

14. — g5?

It is a serious mistake to forget the
safety of the king.

15. ♗e4 ♙g7 16. ♖d6! ♖c8 17. ♖a3
♗d8 18. ♗d6† ♘f8



19. ♙xg5! hxg5 20. ♗xf7+—

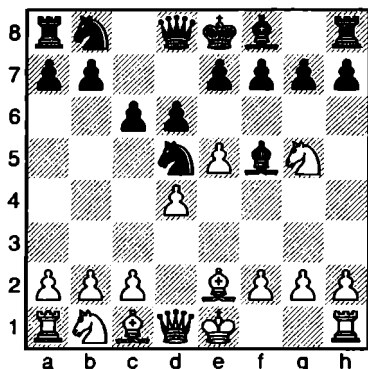
Adams — Burgess Great Britain
1990

15. ♖e2 g5=

In compliance with the basic strate-
gy of the variation 5. — c6 Black
devotes all its energies to attack the
e5 pawn, which controls the impor-
tant d6 and f6 points. The castling to
the queen side makes the move g5
possible without problems, since it
does not weaken the black king
position now.

7.2.2 — 4. f3 g4 5. e2 c6 6.
g5 f5 7. e6

1. e4 d6 2. e5 d5 3. d4 d6 4. f3
g4 5. e2 c6 6. g5 f5



7. e6!?

It tries to hinder Black in advancing
in a way which has already been
known.

7. — fxe6

7. — ex6?!

Without the bishop the weakness of
the black king and the light squares
is more obvious.

8. ex6 fxe6 9. g4

9. d3 f6 10. 0-0 bd7 11.
f4

9. — a6

9. — c7 10. e2 d7 11. 0-0

e5 12. dxe5 ex5 13. h3!

10. ex6 ac7 11. h3 g6 12.
0-0±

8. g4

A) 8. h5† g6 9. g4 xc2

9. — f6 10. gxf5 exh5 11. fxg6
11. fxe6!?

11. — hxg6 12. ex6 a5† 13.
c3 a6 14. d5! f6 15. d3
g8 16. dxc6 b4 17. e2 bxc6
18. a3 bd5 19. d2 d7 20.
0-0-0± Sisniega — Fernandez
Salamanca 1987 Sisniega

10. xc2 gxh5 11. ex6 d7 12.
f5 g8

12. — f6 13. 0-0 g8 14. g5 h6
15. el hxg5 16. fl

13. c3 f6 14. g5 f7 15. d8†
e8 16. e6 f7 ½-½

Matsuura — Segal Brazil 1988

B) 8. d3 a6 9. 0-0 ac7 10. c4
f6 11. c3 g6 12. el g7 13.
xf5 exf5 14. b3

8. — g6 9. d3 xd3 10. xd3
f6

10. — g6 11. h4!? f6

11. — h6!?

12. ex6 d7 13. e2 a6 14.

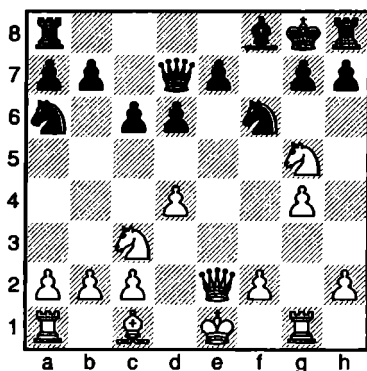
h5!? ♖g8 15. hxg6 hxg6 16. ♖c3
♜b4!?

16. — ♖c7 17. ♜xc7† ♞xc7 18.
♙g5 ♙g7 19. 0-0-0 0-0-0 20.
♞de1±

17. ♜d1!±

Both kings got stuck in the middle,
but the black monarch's situation is
more worrying. Vereshchagin —
Sergeev Kiev 1995

11. ♜xe6 ♞d7 12. ♞e2 ♜f7 13.
♜g5† ♜g8 14. ♞g1 ♜a6 15. ♖c3



15. f4? h5! 16. h3 hxg4 17. hxg4
e5! F C

15. — ♞e8

15. — ♖c7 16. ♙e3 ♜cd5 17. ♙d2
♞e8 18. 0-0-0 e5 19. dxe5 ♞xe5 20.
♞f3 h5 21. ♜xd5 ♞xd5 22. h3 hxg4
23. hxg4 ♞h4 24. ♞e3 ♞xg4 25. f4±
de Firmian — Szmetan Buenos

Aires 1995

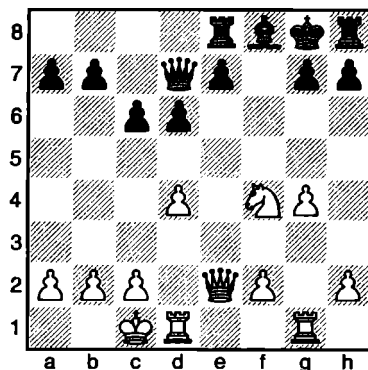
16. ♖e6 ♜f7 17. ♜g5†

17. ♜xf8 ♞hx8 18. g5 ♖d5 19.
♜xd5 cxd5 20. ♞h5† ♜g8 21. g6
♞e6†!

21. — hxg6 22. ♞xd5† e6 23.
♞b3± de Firmian — Burgess
Gausdal 1995

22. ♙e3 h6 23. 0-0-0 ♞f5±

17. — ♜g8 18. ♙f4 ♖c7 19. 0-0-0
♜cd5 20. ♜xd5 ♜xd5 21. ♖e6
♜xf4 22. ♜xf4



22. — e5!

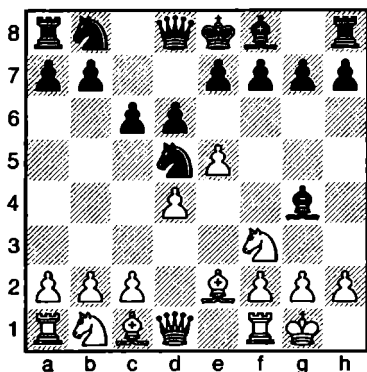
The tables are turned. Black takes
over the initiative.

23. dxe5 ♞f7 24. ♖d3 ♞xa2±

Aseev — Murashko St Petersburg
1998

7.3.1 — 4. Δ f3 Δ g4 5. Δ e2 c6 6. 0-0

1. e4 Δ f6 2. e5 Δ d5 3. d4 d6 4. Δ f3 Δ g4 5. Δ e2 c6 6. 0-0



Black is threatened by Δ g5.

6. — Δ xf3

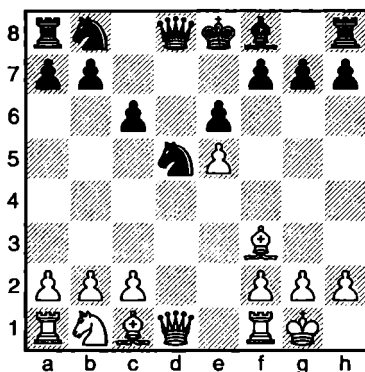
Black gives up having a bishop pair in order to get the chance of playing against the e5 pawn in return for it.

6. — dxe5 7. Δ xe5 Δ xe2 8. Δ xe2±

7. Δ xf3 dxe5 8. dxe5 e6

From these moves and the diagram shown in the next column Black's play can be understood easily: to move Δ d7, Δ c7 then 0-0 or 0-0-0 depending on White's setup. The only difficult question is where to

develop its f8 bishop.



White's situation is more complicated. It has got several ways to advance protecting its e5 pawn in the meanwhile.

9. Δ d2

For the line 9. Δ e1 Δ d7 10. Δ d2 see the current main variation (9. Δ d2). The other possibilities are the following:

A) 9. Δ e2 Δ d7 10. Δ e1

a) 10. a4 Δ c7 11. Δ e1 a5 12. Δ a3 Δ b4 13. c3 Δ xa3

13. — Δ e7?! 14. Δ xd5 cxd5 15. Δ b5 Δ b8 16. Δ g4± Kalugin — Baburin USSR 1987

14. Δ xa3∞ Kalegin;

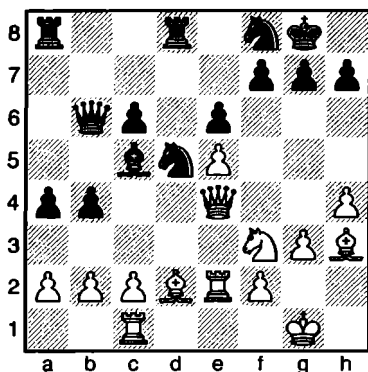
b) 10. Δ d1 Δ c7 11. c4 Δ e7 12. Δ f4 Δ g6 13. Δ g3 0-0-0 14. Δ c3 Δ b4 15. Δ e4 Δ dxe5 16. c5 f5 17.

♟d6† ♞xd6 18. cxd6 ♠xd6 19.
♠xe5 ♞xe5 20. g3 Kuzmin —
Pribyl Ceske Budejovice 1995

10. — ♞c7 11. g3

11. ♞d2 ♠c5 12. ♞b3 ♠b6 13.
♠g5 h6 14. ♠d2 0-0-0 15. a4
a5= Dolmatov — Bohm Amster-
dam 1979

11. — ♠c5 12. ♞d2 0-0 13. ♠g2 a5
14. ♞f3 b5 15. ♞e4 ♞fb8 16. ♠d2
a4 17. h4 b4 18. ♠ad1 ♞b6 19. ♠e2
♞f8 20. ♠h3 ♠d8 21. ♠c1†



White's play on the king side has
been stopped. Now it can try on the
other side. ½-½ Leko — Onischuk
Wijk aan Zee 1995;

B) 9. b3 ♞d7 10. ♞e2

10. ♠b2 ♞c7=

10.— ♞g5 11. ♠e1 ♠b4 12. ♠e4

h5 13. h4 ♞f5 14. a3 ♠a5 15. b4
♠c7 16. ♞e2 ♞f4 17. ♞e3 ♞d5
18. ♞e1 0-0-0 19. ♞d2 f6 20.
exf6 gxf6 21. g3 ♞e5 22. ♠g2±
Plachetka — Popov Stara Pa-
zova 1988

10. — ♞c7 11. ♠b2 ♞f4 12. ♞e4
♞g6 13. ♠e1

13. ♠h5?! ♞dx5 14. f4 ♞d7 15.
f5 0-0-0! This move can easy be
overlooked. 16. ♠g4

16. fxf6?? White would commit
a suicide. 16. — hxg6 17. ♠f3
♠c5†+

16. — exf5 17. ♞xf5 ♠b8 18.
♞d2 ♞ge5† There is no compen-
sation for the pawn. de Firmian
— Cramling,D Gausdal 1980

13. — 0-0-0 14. a4 a5

14. — ♠e7 15. ♞a3 ♞dx5?! 16.
♠xe5 ♞xe5 17. ♞xe5 ♞xe5 18.
♠xe5 ♠f6 19. ♞c4± Mokry —
Sergeev,Vl Czechia 1995

15. ♞a3 ♠b4 16. ♠e3 ♞b6 17. c3
♠c5 18. ♠e2 ♠d5 19. c4 ♠d7=
Sax — Kovacevic,Vl Sarajevo
1982;

C) 9. c4

It is true that this move drives the d5

knight away, but so another piece takes aim at the e5 pawn. Does White need it?

9. — d7! 10. e2

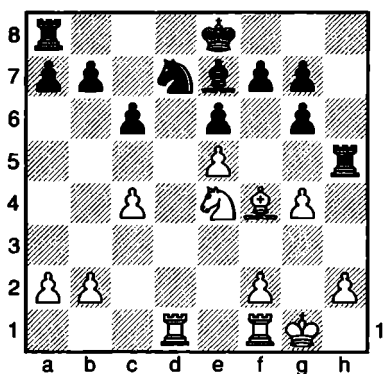
10. xxd8?! White's chances are good in the middle game, not in the endgame. 10. — xd8 11. e4 d7 12. f4

12. f4? d5=

12. — d6 13. xg6 hxg6 14. c3 e8! 15. ad1 e7 16. e4

16. fe1 is better

16. — h5 17. g4



17. — xe5! You can also play chess without queens! 18. xe5 dxe5 19. b3 dxc4 20. fe1 g5 21. d3 e5 22. h3 d6 23. g3 f6 24. d1 d8 25. xxd8+ xd8 26. f1 e5 27. d3+ c7

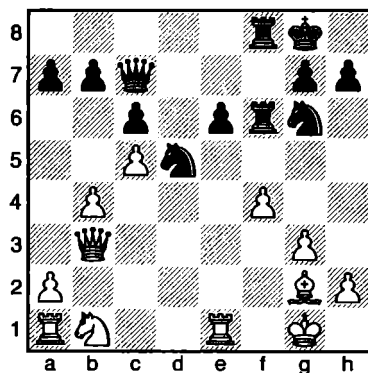
28. d3 d4 29. d1 a5 30. e2 e6+ This endgame can be won by Black only. Kaidanov—Ivan-chuk Lvov 1987;

10. — d7 11. b3

a) 11. d2 d6 12. c3 c7 13. e1 d8! 14. b4

14. d2 dxe5

14. — e7 15. b2 0-0 16. g3 b6 17. b3 f6!= The opening f-file is a plenty of compensation for the weakened e6 pawn. 18. exf6 xxf6 19. xxf6 xxf6 20. c5 d5 21. g2 df8 22. f4

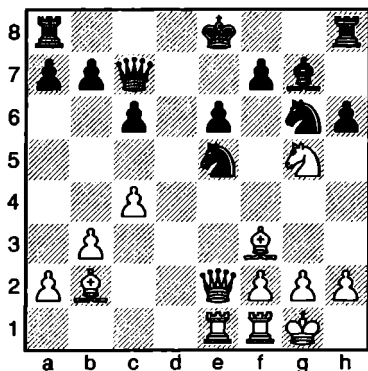


22. — dxc4! 23. gxf4 xxf4 24. a3 h6 25. g3 xxb4 26. e4 c3 27. c2 xc5+ 28. e3 e4 0-1 Day — Segal Dubai 1986;

b) 11. ♖h5 g6 12. ♖g4 h5=

11. — ♖c7 12. ♖b2 ♖g6

12. — g5 It is a little too optimistic. 13. ♖d2 ♖g7 14. ♖e4! ♖xe5 15. ♖xg5 h6 16. ♖ae1 ♖7g6



17. ♖xf7!? The punishment does not fail to come about. 17. — ♖xf3†

17. — ♖xf7 18. ♖h5+—

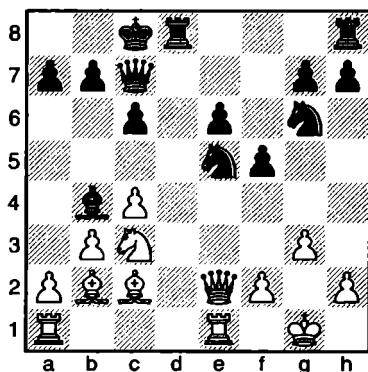
18. ♖xf3 0-0 19. ♖xh6† ♖h7 20. ♖e2 ♖xh6 21. ♖xe6± Acs — Varga Budapest 1995

12. — ♖g6 13. ♖e4

a) 13. ♖h5?! ♖dx5 14. f4 ♖d7 15. f5 0-0-0!† It is a motif coming back; the g6 knight cannot be captured because of the opening

h-file. 16. fxe6 fxe6 17. ♖xe6 ♖d6 18. ♖xg7 ♖hg8 19. ♖h6 ♖xh2† 20. ♖h1 ♖e5 Mestrovic — Knezevic Yugoslavia 1981;

b) 13. ♖e1? ♖b4 14. ♖c3 ♖dx5† 15. ♖e4 0-0-0 16. g3 f5 17. ♖c2??



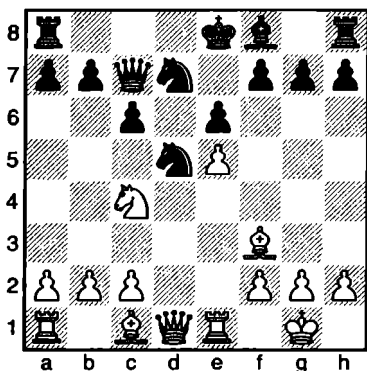
17. — ♖d2+ Tseitlin, Ma — Murashko St Petersburg 1997

13. — ♖gx5

13. — 0-0-0 14. f4 f5 15. exf6 ♖xf4 16. ♖f3 gxf6?? 17. ♖xf4+ Dolmatov — Fernandez Sevilla 1993. I wonder what did Dolmatov plan on 13. — ♖gx5? Does not he know, that this is a bad variation for White by the theory. Or does he know more than the books? It is worth analyzing such lines.

14. f4 ♘g6 15. f5 ♘f4 16. ♖f3 e5
Thorsteinsson — Westerinen Reykjavik 1976

9. — ♖c7 10. ♖e1 ♘d7 11. ♘c4



This is the most difficult position of the variation 6. 0-0. Black has to study it very thoroughly before it would make the move 5. — c6.

11. — ♘b6

There is nothing else. Now it is White's turn to think about the suitable continuation.

A) 11. — b5?

This move helps White.

12. ♖xd5 cxd5 13. ♘d6† ♖xd6
14. ♖xd5! ♖c8 15. exd6 ♖c4 16. ♖b7+

Gufeld — Goh Penang 1991;

B) 11. — ♖e7?! 12. ♘d6† ♖f8

12. — ♖xd6? 13. exd6 ♖xd6 14. c4 +

13. ♖xd5 cxd5 14. ♖f4 ♖b6 15. c4
15. ♖h5±

15. — ♘xe5 16. ♖xe5 ♖xd6 17. cxd5 ♖xe5 18. ♖xe5†

The black monarch will have some awkward minutes.

12. ♖e2

A) 12. ♘d6†!?

It is a promising pawn sacrifice.

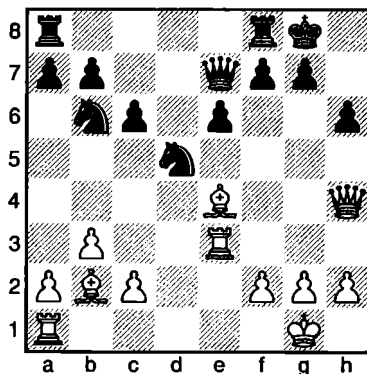
12. — ♖xd6 13. exd6 ♖xd6 14. b3

a) 14. c4!? ♘xc4 15. ♖d4 ♘cb6
16. ♖xg7 ♖f8 17. ♖e5±;

b) 14. ♖d4? 0-0 15. c4 ♖b4±

14. — ♖c7 15. ♖d4 0-0 16. ♖b2
♘f6 17. ♖h4± ♖e7 18. ♖e4 h6 19. ♖e3 ♖fd8!

19. — ♘fd5?



a) 20. ♖g3! e5 21. ♖xh6 f5 22. ♖xd5† ♘d5 23. ♖e1± Haba —

Ratolistka Czechia 1993

b) 20. ♖g3 ♜f8∞;

B) 12. ♜xb6 ♜xb6 13. ♖e2 ♙e7 14. b3

14. ♙d2

14. — ♙b4 15. ♙d2 ♙xd2 16. ♖xd2 0-0 17. ♙ad1 ♜fd8 18. ♖a5 ♜ac8 19. c4 ♜xd1 20. ♜xd1 ♜d7 21. ♖xa7 ♜xe5 22. ♙e2±

Sandor — Khromov Czechia 1996;

C) 12. ♖d4!

Black's opportunities to answer are restricted by the threat ♜d6.

12. — ♜xc4 13. ♖xc4

For the continuation see the current main line (12. ♖e2 ♜xc4.)

12. — ♜xc4

12. — ♙c5!? 13. c3 a5∞

Ginzburg — Baillo Argetina 1995

13. ♖xc4 0-0-0 14. a3 ♙e7

14. — h6 15. b4±

15. b4↑

15. ♖e2=

Arnason — Agzamov Stara Pazova 1983

15. — ♜d7 16. ♖b3 ♜hd8 17. c4

♜b6 18. ♙e3 g6 19. ♖c2 c5

19. — ♜b8 20. ♙ab1

20. a4 cxb4 21. a5 ♜xc4

21. — ♜d5? 22. ♙xa7± ♙c5 23. cxd5 ♙xa7 24. ♖a4 ♙d4 25. ♜ecl ♙c3 26. dxe6 fxe6 27. a6 ♜b8 28. axb7 ♖b6 29. ♖xd7 1-0

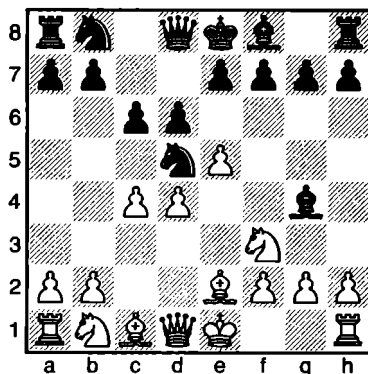
It is a spectacular ending. Moiseev — Floegel BL 1995

22. ♙xa7 ♜d2 23. ♖e4∞

I think the ball now is on Black's half. It must improve its play in order that this variation can be played without problems.

7.3.2.1 — 4. ♜f3 ♙g4 5. ♙e2 c6 6. c4 ♜b6 7. exd6

1. e4 ♜f6 2. e5 ♜d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♜f3 ♙g4 5. ♙e2 c6 6. c4



6. — ♘b6

A) 6. — ♘c7

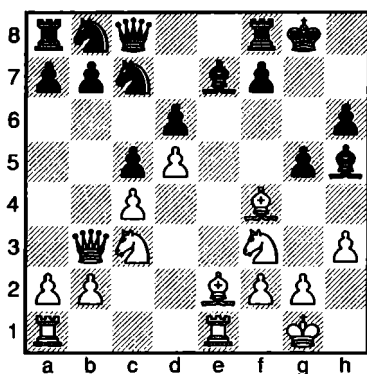
It avoids the main line in which the knight stands awkwardly a little on b6. But this move also has its drawbacks.

7. exd6 exd6 8. 0-0 ♙e7 9. ♘c3 0-0
10. h3 ♙f5

10. — ♙h5 11. ♖b3! ♖c8 12. d5!
c5

12. — ♘ba6!?

13. ♙f4± h6 14. ♚fe1 g5?



15. ♘xg5!! ♙xe2 16. ♘ge4 Rod-
riguez,Am — Cramling,D Biel
1988 16. — ♙d3 17. ♘xc5 dxc5
18. ♚xe7→

11. ♙f4 ♚e8 12. ♚e1

12. ♖b3!±

12. — ♘d7 13. ♙d3 ♙g6 14. ♙xg6
hxg6 15. ♖d3 ♘f6 16. ♙h2 a6 17.
♚e3±

17. ♚ac1 b5 18. a3 ♖d7 19. ♘d2
♚ad8 20. b4 ♖f5 21. ♖xf5 gxf5
22. ♘b3 ♘e6 23. ♚ed1 bxc4 24.
♘a5 d5= Emms — Rogers
Lloyds Bank 1991

B) 6. — ♙xf3?! 7. ♙xf3 ♘c7

7. — ♘b6 8. e6 fxe6 9. ♖e2 ♘a6
10. ♖xe6± Zakic — Werner
Budapest 1991

8. ♖b3 ♖c8 9. exd6 exd6 10. 0-0
♙e7 11. ♚e1± Kudrin — Karayan-
nis Hania 1995

7. exd6

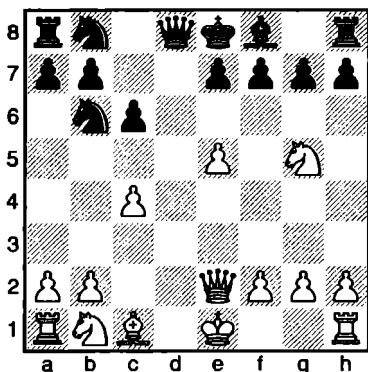
7. ♘g5!?

It is a move deserving attention.
Black has not really got an adequate
answer to equalize the game.

7. — ♙xe2

7. — ♙f5? 8. e6! fxe6 9. g4±
Comparing it to the variation 6.
♘g5 the substantial difference is
that the dark knight cannot move
on f6 yet, where it would have an
important role in the defence.

8. ♖xe2 dxe5 9. dxe5



9. — h6

9. — e6 10. 0-0 ♗e7 11. ♘f3
 ♘d8d7 12. b3 a5 13. ♗a3!? 0-0
 14. ♗xe7 ♖xe7 15. ♘c3 a4 16.
 ♘e4 ♖b4 17. ♖e3 ♗a5 18. ♗ab1
 a3

18. — axb3 19. ♗xb3 ♖xc4 20.
 ♗xb6 ♘xb6 21. ♖xb6±

19. ♖f4 ♖e7 20. ♗bd1 ♗aa8 21.
 ♗d3 h6 22. ♗fd1 ♘c5 23. ♗d6±
 Landenbergue — Zelcic Geneva
 1993

10. ♘f3 e6 11. 0-0 ♘d8d7 12. ♘c3

12. b3

12. — ♖c7 13. ♗f4 ♘c5 14. ♗ad1
 a5 15. ♗d2 ♗e7 16. ♗fd1 0-0 17. b3
 ♗fd8 18. ♘d4 ♘bd7 19. ♗g3 ♘f8
 20. h4 ♗d7 21. f4 ♗ad8 22. f5↑

Ernst — Kovacevic Thessaloniki

1984

7. — exd6

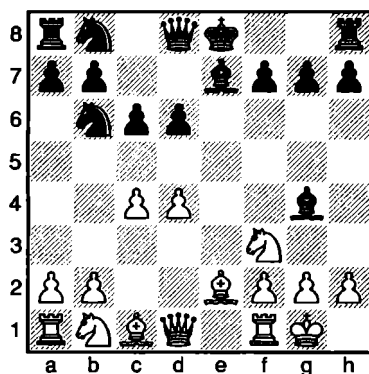
7. — ♗xf3?! 8. ♗xf3 ♘xc4 9. dxe7
 ♖xe7↑

9. — ♗xe7 10. 0-0 0-0 11. ♘c3
 ♗f6 12. d5!± C♖

10. ♗f1 ♘d6 11. ♘c3 ♖f6 12. h4 h6
 13. ♖a4 ♘d7 14. d5 ♘b6 15. ♖g4
 c5 16. ♗f4 ♘bc4 17. ♗e2 ♗e7 18.
 ♗xc4 ♘xc4 19. ♗e1 0-0 20. ♗xh6
 ♖xh6 21. ♖xc4±

Kruppa — Sergeev Platonov 1995

8. 0-0 ♗e7



9. b3

For the line 9. ♘c3 0-0 10. b3 see
 the current main variation (9. b3).

A) 9. ♖c2 0-0 10. ♗e3 d5=

a) 10. — ♗e8!? Yudasin,L;

b) 10. — ♟8d7?! 11. a4 a5 12. ♟bd2± ♟e8 13. ♟fe1 ♟f8 14. ♟b3! ♟b8?! 15. d5!± Yudasin — Fernandez Dos Hermanas 1993;

B) 9. ♟bd2 0-0 10. ♟e1 ♟f6!

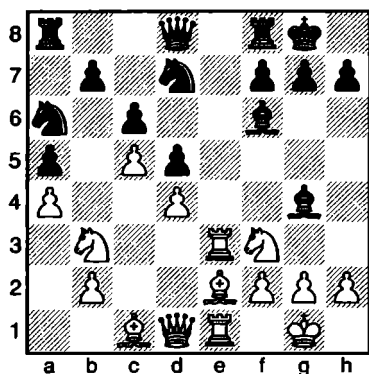
10. — ♟8d7 11. a4 a5 12. ♟a3! White brings its rook into play in an elegant way. 12. — ♟e8 13. ♟e3 ♟f8 14. ♟b3! ♟e6 15. ♟d3 ♟b8 16. ♟c2! d5 17. c5 ♟bd7 18. ♟b3!± Yudasin — Timoshenko, G Podolsk 1989

11. a4

11. ♟e4? ♟xf3

11. — a5 12. ♟a3 d5 13. c5 ♟6d7

14. ♟e3 ♟a6 15. ♟b3



15. — b6 16. ♟d2

16. cxb6

16. — bxc5 17. ♟xa5 ♟b8 18. ♟e5?!

18. ♟c3 ♟xf3 19. ♟xf3 c4 20. ♟a5∞

18. — ♟xe5 19. dxe5 ♟xe2

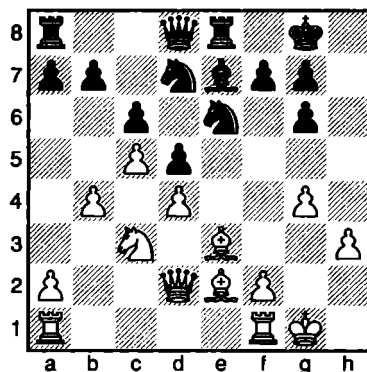
Nielsen — Burgess Denmark 1992

9. — 0-0 10. ♟c3

10. ♟f4!? ♟e8 11. ♟c3 d5 12. c5 ♟6d7 13. h3!? ♟h5

13. — ♟f5 14. b4 ♟f6 15. ♟b3 b6 16. ♟e5∞

14. ♟d2 ♟f8 15. g4!? ♟g6 16. ♟e5 ♟bd7 17. ♟xg6 hxg6 18. ♟e3 ♟e6 19. b4



19. — ♟f6

19. — b6?! 20. b5!

20. ♟ad1 bxc5= 21. bxc5 ♟f6 22. ♟f3 ♟g5 23. ♟g2 ♟xe3 24.

fxe3 *Qf6* 25. *e4= Dolmatov —*
Minasian Krasnodar 1997

20. — *bxc5* 21. *bxc6* *Qb8* 22. *c7*
Qxc7 23. *dxcc5* *Qc6* 24. *Qf3±*

20. *Qfel=*

20. *b5?! This is the right play but*
it must be prepared first. 20. —
Qdxc5! 21. bxc6 bxc6 22. dxc5
d4

10. — *Q8d7*

10. — *Qe8* 11. *h3* *Qh5* 12. *Qf4 a5*
13. *Qel* *Qa6±*

Mortensen — Agdestein Reykjavik
1995

11. *Qf4 d5*

Black has to make this move sooner
or later. If White can do the same at
the right time, it will get a very
pleasant position.

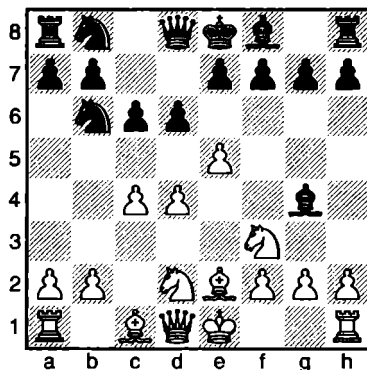
12. *c5* *Qc8* 13. *b4 a6* 14. *h3* *Qh5*
15. *a4* *Qf6* 16. *Qd2* *Qe8* 17. *Qfel*
Qf8 18. *g4* *Qg6* 19. *Qe5* *Qe6* 20.
Qg3 *Qh4* 21. *Qg2* *Qxg3* 22. *fxg3*
Qe7 23. *Qf3* *f6* 24. *Qxg6* *Qxg6* 25.
h4 *Qd7* 26. *b5±*

Moroz — Fokin Czechia 1996

7.3.2.2 — 4. *Qf3* *Qg4* 5. *Qe2* *c6* 6.
c4 *Qb6* 7. *Qbd2*

1. *e4* *Qf6* 2. *e5* *Qd5* 3. *d4* *d6* 4. *Qf3*

Qg4 5. *Qe2* *c6* 6. *c4* *Qb6* 7. *Qbd2*



7. — *Q8d7*

A) 7. — *Qa6?! 8. 0-0* *Qd7* 9. *exd6*
exd6 10. *d5* *cxdd5* 11. *Qel!* *Qe7* 12.
Qd4±

Nunn;

B) 7. — *dxex5* 8. *Qxe5* *Qf5*

a) 8. — *Qe6* It is extravagant. 9.
Qe4 *f6* 10. *Qc5* *Qg8* 11. *Qf3*
Qxc4

11. — *Qc7* 12. *b3* *e5* 13. *Qe4±*
Vogt — Bagirov Riga 1981

12. *Qxb7* *Qb6* 13. *Qc2±* It is a
strong intermediate move.

13. *Qc5* *e5* 14. *0-0*

14. *Qxc4?* *Qxc4*

14. — *Qxc5* 15. *dxcc5* *Qxc5* 16.
b3;

b) 8. — *Qxe2* 9. *Qxe2* *Q8d7*

9. — ♖xd4?! Black is too greedy. 10. 0-0

♙e7 13. ♜d1 d7 14. ♙f4 ♖c7 15. d4 0-0 16. ♖g4?!

10. dxd7 ♖xd7 11. d3 e6±

9. ddf3

9. dfl d8d7 10. ♙f4±

9. — d8d7

a) 9. — f6 10. c5 fxex5 11. cxb6±;

b) 9. — e6?! 10. dg5 ♙b4† 11. dfl 0-0 12. g4± Kovalev — Dreev USSR 1986

10. 0-0 dxe5 11. dxe5 e6 12. ♙g4 ♙xg4 13. ♖xg4 d7 14. ♜d1±

It is problematical for Black to develop its pieces.

8. exd6!?

The position is similar to that which comes into being after 7. exd6. It is true that dbd7 is not the more accurate answer there.

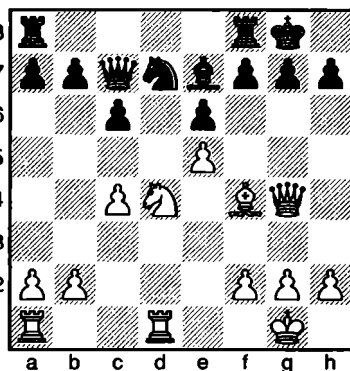
A) 8. dg5 ♙xe2

8. — ♙f5?! 9. g4 ♙g6 10. e6±

9. e6 f6 10. ♖xe2 fxg5 11. de4 df6 12. dxg5 dxc4 13. 0-0 ♖a5 14. ♖xc4 h6∞

It is a position difficult to judge. Vogt — Rogulj Balatonberény 1986;

B) 8. 0-0 dxe5 9. dxe5 dxe5 10. dxe5 ♙xe2 11. ♖xe2 e6 12. d3



16. — dxe5

16. — ♜ad8? 17. dxe6 fxe6 18. ♖xe6† d8 19. ♖xe7 ♜xf4 20. e6+- Fiorito — Szmetan Villa Martelli 1997

17. ♖g3

17. dxe6 dxg4 18. dxc7 ♜ad8=

17. — ♙d6 18. db5

18. dxc6 df3†

18. — cxb5 19. ♜xd6 dg6±

8. — exd6 9. 0-0 ♙e7 10. a4 a5 11. ♜e1 0-0 12. ♜a3 c5?!

12. — d5 13. c5±

13. d5 df6 14. ♜e3 ♖d7 15. ♖b3!± ♙d8

There is a big trouble if you have to

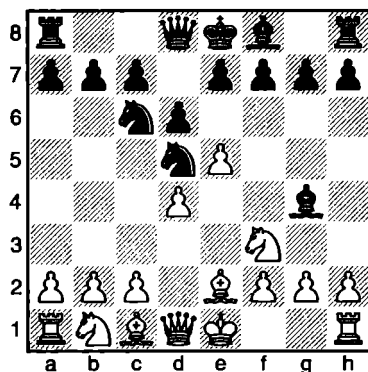
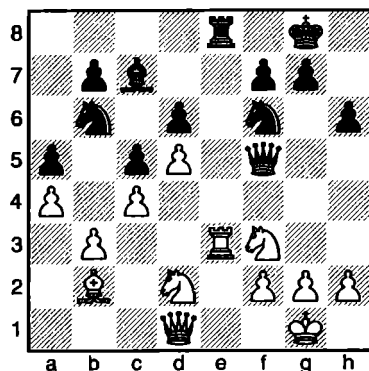
make moves like this.

♟g4 5. ♙e2 ♜c6

16. ♙d1 h6 17. ♙c2 ♙f5 18. ♙xf5
♜xf5 19. ♜d1

White make the half of Black's
forces passive and now it sets about
annihilating the rest of them on the
other side.

19. — ♙c7 20. b3± ♜ae8 21. ♙b2
♜xe3 22. ♜xe3 ♜e8



It is a rare move.

6. c4

6. 0-0!?

It is more practical than 6. c4, for
the only right answer is 6. — e6
which leads to the line 5. — e6 6.
0-0 ♜c6 by changing the moves.

6. — dxe5

6. — ♜b6 7. h3 ♙xf3

7. — ♙h5 8. e6!?!↑

8. ♙xf3 e6 9. ♜c3 d5 10. ♜e2
♙e7

10. — f6 11. ♜f4±

11. ♜f4 0-0 12. g3 ♜b8 13. b3!
a5 14. c4 c6 15. ♜b1! ♜a6 16.

23. ♜h4 ♜h7 24. ♙xf6+—

Topalov — Fernandez Mesa 1992

7.4.1 — 4. ♜f3 ♙g4 5. ♙e2 ♜c6 6.
c4 ♜b6 7. exd6 exd6 8. 0-0 ♙e7
9. d5

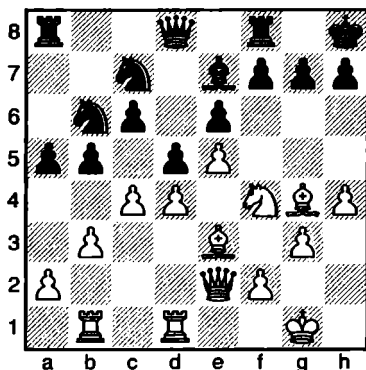
1. e4 ♜f6 2. e5 ♜d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♜f3

W e2 c7

16. — dxc4? 17. bxc4 Wxd4?

18. e3+

17. d1 d7 18. h4 g8 19. g4
b5 20. e3 b6



21. cxb5!?± Aseev — Sorokin
Russia 1995 Aseev

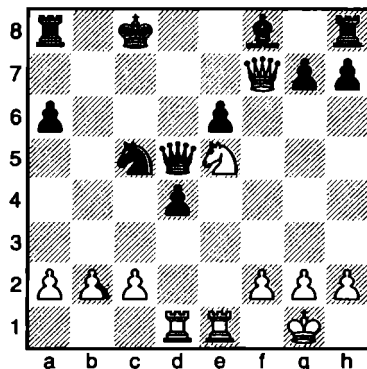
21. c5±

7. dxe5 dxe5

7. — e2?! 8. Wxe2 dxd4?
Who will develop? 9. Wc4 c5 10.
e3± a6 11. c3 e6 12. exd4
b6

12. — cxd4 13. Wa4! e7 14.
Wxd4+ The black king is in
trouble on the e7 square.

13. Wb3 cxd4 14. a4 xa4 15.
Wxb7 Wd5 16. Wxf7† d8 17.
fe1 c5 18. d1 c8



19. c3 d3 20. b4+ Thorsteins —
Hansen, Cu Reykjavik 1985

8. dxe5 e5

8. — e2 9. Wxe2 Wd7

9. — Wc8 10. c4 b4 11. We4
e6 12. d3 d6 13. d1 g6 14.
g5 g7 15. W4 b6 16. d1
Wb7 17. d4 Wa6 18. f6 f8
19. xg7† xg7 20. Wf6† g8
21. g5 f8 22. dxe6+ Palac
— Gazik Zillertal 1993

10. c4 b4 11. d1 Wf5 12. d3
d6 13. e3 g6 14. b5±
Kindermann — Siegel Munich
1993

9. ♖g4 ♗xg4 10. ♜xg4±

6. — ♖b6 7. exd6

7. ♖bd2!? e6 8. exd6

7. — exd6

7. — cxd6 8. d5! ♗xf3 9. ♗xf3 ♖e5
10. ♗e2 g6 11. ♗e3 ♗g7 12. ♗d4
0-0 13. ♖c3 ♖c8 14. b3 e6?! 15. f4
exd5 16. fxe5 dxc4 17. 0-0 dxe5 18.
♗xb6±

There is some material compensa-
tion in return for the piece, but it is
White that is more active. Sokolov
— Vaganian Minsk 1986.

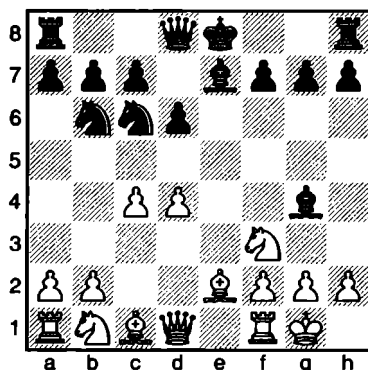
8. 0-0

8. d5 ♗xf3 9. ♗xf3 ♖e5 10. ♗e2
♗e7

10. — ♜h4?! 11. 0-0 h5 12. ♖d2
g6 13. f4 ♖g4 14. ♖f3 ♜f6 15.
♞e1 0-0-0 16. a4 a5 17. ♜d2±
Karpov — Alburat Malta 1980

11. f4 ♖ed7 12. ♖c3 ♗h4† 13. g3
♗f6 14. ♜c2 0-0 15. ♗d2 ♞e8= 16.
0-0-0 c6 17. dxc6 bxc6 18. ♖e4 d5
19. ♖xf6† ♖xf6 20. ♗b4 ♞b8 21.
a3 c5 22. ♗xc5 ♞c8 23. ♗xb6 ♜xb6
24. ♖b1 ♗c7 25. ♞c1 ♞ec8 26. ♜a4
h6 27. ♗d3 ♜e3 28. ♞hd1 dxc4 29.
♗f5± Moroz — Sergeev Czechia
1996

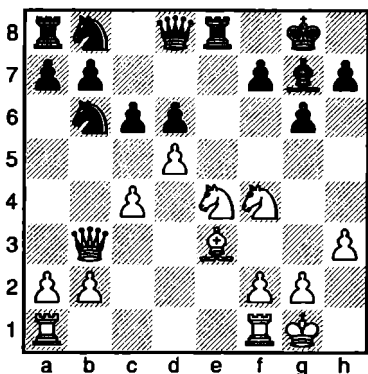
8. — ♗e7



This position often comes into being
by the following move order: 3. d4
d6 4. c4 ♖b6 5. ed6 ed6 6. ♖f3 ♖c6
7. ♗e2 ♗e7 8. 0-0 ♗g4.

9. d5

9. ♖bd2 0-0 10. d5 ♖b8 11. h3 ♗h5
12. ♖d4 ♗xe2 13. ♖xe2 c6 14. ♖f4
g6 15. ♜b3 ♗f6 16. ♖e4 ♗g7 17.
♗e3 ♞e8



18. ♘xd6

It is spectacular but good for a draw only.

18. — ♖xd6 19. c5 ♖f6 20. cxb6 axb6 21. ♖xb6 ♖xb2=

Lanka — Panchenko Cannes 1992

9. — ♖xf3 10. ♖xf3 ♘e5 11. ♖e2 0-0 12. f4 ♘ed7 13. ♘c3 ♖e8=

13. — f5?!

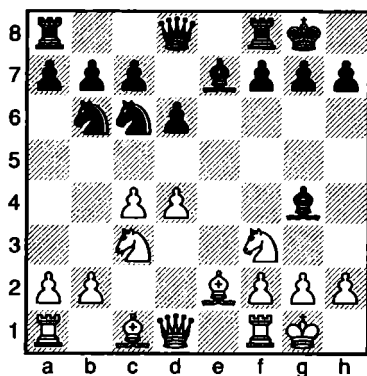
It is an unnecessary weakening.

14. b3 ♖f6 15. ♖b2 ♖e8 16. ♘h1 ♘c5 17. ♖c2 a6 18. ♖ae1±

Spangenberg — Bulcourf Villa Martelli 1995

7.4.2 — 4. ♘f3 ♖g4 5. ♖e2 ♘c6 6. c4 ♘b6 7. exd6 exd6 8. 0-0 ♖e7 9. ♘c3

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♘f3 ♖g4 5. ♖e2 ♘c6 6. c4 ♘b6 7. exd6 exd6 8. 0-0 ♖e7 9. ♘c3 0-0



White is now threatened by the moves ♖f3 and ♘xc4.

10. b3 ♖f6

10. — d5?!

It is premature.

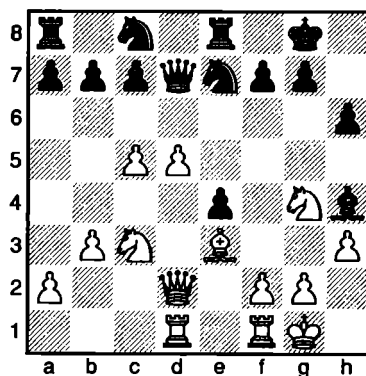
11. c5 ♘c8 12. h3 ♖xf3

12. — ♖e6 13. ♖b5 For the line 13. ♖e3 ♖f6 see the current main variation (10. — ♖f6.) 13. — ♖f6 14. ♖xc6 bxc6 15. ♖f4± Matulovic — Minic Kraljevo 1967

13. ♖xf3 ♖f6 14. ♘xd5 ♖xd4 15. ♖f4! ♖e5 16. ♖d2 ♖xa1 17. ♖xa1 ♘8e7 18. ♖xc7 ♖c8 19. ♖d6± Dvoiris — Panchenko Groningen 1992

11. ♖e3 d5

11. — ♖e8 12. h3 ♖f5 13. ♖d2 ♖d7 14. ♖ad1 h6 15. ♘h2 d5 16. ♘g4 ♖h4 17. c5 ♘c8 18. ♖f3± ♖e4? 19. ♖xe4 dxe4 20. d5 ♘6e7

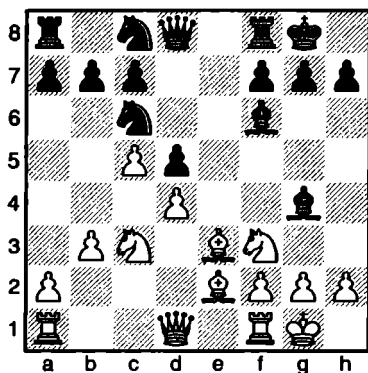


Black just makes moves without any plan.

21. ♖xh6!+ ♜g6 22. ♖xg7 e3 23. fxexg7 24. ♖d4† ♜f8 25. ♜h6 ♖g5 26. ♖g4 1-0

Solozhenkin — Löffler, M Paris 1996

12. c5 ♜c8



White's space advantage is equalized by the attack against the d4 pawn. The c8 knight is striving to get on f5.

13. h3 ♖e6

13. — ♖xf3 14. ♖xf3 ♜8e7 15. g4± Kurajica — Vukic Yugoslavia 1969

14. b4

14. ♖d2 h6 15. ♖d3 ♜8e7 16. g4 ♖d7=

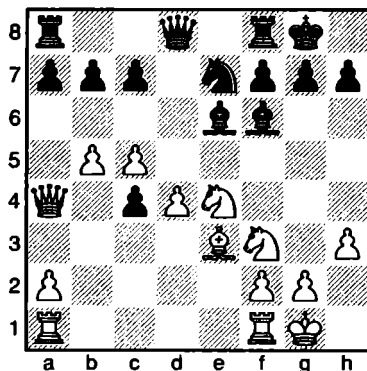
16. — g5? 17. ♜e2 ♖g7 18. ♜h2± Armas — Graf FRG 1989.

14. — a6

14. — ♜8e7!? 15. b5

15. g4±

15. — ♜a5 16. ♖a4 ♜c4 17. ♖xc4?! dxc4 18. ♜e4



18. ♖ad1 ♜d5

18. — ♜f5! 19. ♖ad1 ♖d5 20. ♖c2 a6!±

Kudriashov — Abrashkin Russia 1994

15. ♖b1

15. b5 axb5 16. dxb5 d8a7 17. a4
b6 18. c1 dxb5 19. axb5 a5 20.
cxb6 cxb6 21. e5 d6

21. — xe5 22. dxe5 c4

22. d3 xe5

22. — f8?± Sznepik — Han-
sen, Cu Copenhagen 1982

23. dxe5 ex5 24. xb6 c4 25.
d4 f4=

15. — d8e7 16. g4

White has to hinder the move f5.

16. — h6

16. — dg6 17. de1 e8 18. dc2 h5
19. g2 hxg4 20. hxg4 dh4†

20. — h4?! 21. f4 f5 22. g5
xg5 23. fxg5 f4 24. xf4 h3†
25. xh3 xe3† 26. dx3 dx4†
27. h4 dg6† 28. g4+ The

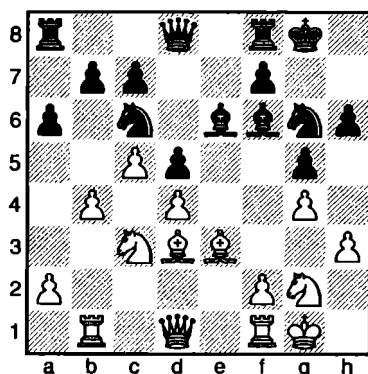
fireworks is over, Black has no
more pieces to sacrifice. Kalegin
— Vinokurov Kazan 1995

21. g3 de7=

17. de1

17. d3 g5 18. a4 g7=

17. — g5 18. dg2 dg6 19. d3



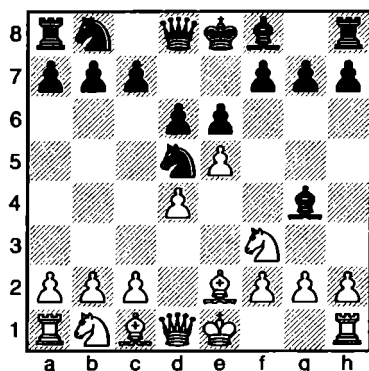
19. — df4 20. dxf4 gxf4 21. xf4
xd4 22. de2 eg7 23. c2 f5=

Chapter 8

1. e4 Nf6 2. e5 Nd5 3. d4 d6 4. Nf3 Bg4 5. Be2 e6

8.1 — 4. Nf3 Bg4 5. Be2 e6 6.
0-0 Nc6

1. e4 Nf6 2. e5 Nd5 3. d4 d6 4. Nf3
 Bg4 5. Be2 e6



6. 0-0

A) 6. Ng5 Bf5 ;

B) 6. h3 Bh5 7. c4 Nb6 8. exd6

8. Nc3 Be7 9. d5?! exd5 10. cxd5
dxe5 11. g4 Bg6 12. Nxe5 Nd8d7
13. Nxd7 Wxd7

13. — $\text{Nxd7}!$? 14. Bf4 0-0
Black's position is better developed.

14. Bb5 c6 15. dxc6 bxc6 16.
 Wxd7 Wxd7 = Polgar, J — Yu-
supov Dortmund 1977

8. — cxd6 9. Nc3 Be7 10. d5

The idea behind the move to put off
the castling.

10. — exd5!?

Of course the above mentioned plan
is successful in the case of a closed
centre only.

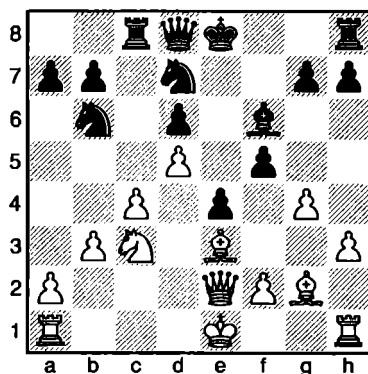
10. — e5 11. Be3 $\text{Bxf3}!$?

11. — Nd8d7 12. g4±

12. Bxf3 Nd8d7 13. We2 Kc8 14.
b3 f5

14. — 0-0 15. g4±

15. g4! e4 16. Bg2 Bf6



17. $\text{Nb5}!$ Bxa1 18. Nd6 Wf8
19. 0-0 Be5

19. — Bf6 20. g5

20. ♘xf5! h5? 21. f4+— exf3 22.
 ♙xf3 ♘g8 23. d6 ♘f6 24. g5
 Bologan — Tischbierek Vienna
 1996 Bologan

11. cxd5 ♘8d7 12. ♙e3 ♙c8 13. 0-0
 ♙xf3 14. ♙xf3 0-0 15. ♙g4 ♘c4
 16. ♙c1 a6 17. ♙b1 b5 18. ♘e2
 ♘ce5 19. ♘d4 ♙f6=

Alavkin — Bratchenko Novgorod
 1997

6. — ♘c6

6. — a6

White cannot exploit this eccentric
 move. Most times it is only a
 changing of moves in comparison
 with the move 6. — ♙e7.

7. c4 ♘b6 8. exd6

8. ♙b3 ♙e7 9. ♙d1 ♘8d7 10.
 ♙f4 0-0 11. ♘bd2 dxe5 12. dxe5
 ♙e8 13. h3 ♙h5 14. ♙c2 ♘c5 15.
 b4 ♙g6 16. ♙c3 ♘ca4 17. ♙b3
 c5 18. a3 cxb4 19. axb4 a5 20. b5

It was proved again that the
 knights are excellent at blocking
 pieces. 20. — ♘c5 21. ♙e3 a4
 22. ♙a2 ♙c8= de Firmian — Ba-
 burin Denmark 1996

8. — cxd6 9. b3

For the line 9. ♘c3! ♙e7 see the
 main variation 6. — ♙e7 later on.

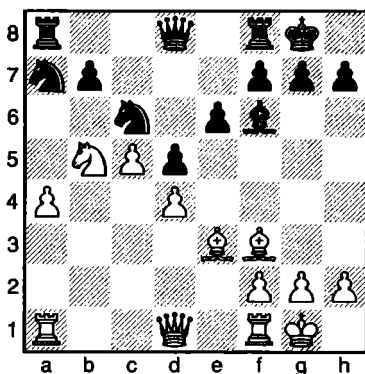
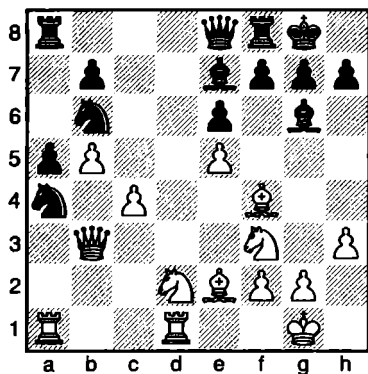
9. ♘bd2 ♘c6 10. b3 d5 11. ♙b2
 11. c5 ♘d7 12. b4 ♙e7 13. a3
 ♙f6 14. ♘b3 0-0 15. h3 ♙f5 16.
 ♙b2 b6= Matulovic — Kova-
 cecic Vinkovci 1982

11. — ♙e7 12. a3 0-0

12.— dxc4 13. bxc4 0-0 14. ♙c1
 ♙c7 15. ♙b3 ♙fd8 16. ♙e3!
 ♙d7 17. ♙fd1± de Firmian —
 Albur USA 1983

13. ♙c1 ♙f6=

9. — ♙e7 10. ♘c3 d5 11. c5 ♙xf3
 12. ♙xf3 ♘c8 13. b4 ♘c6 14. ♙b1=
 14. b5?! axb5 15. ♘xb5 0-0 16.
 ♙f4 ♙f6 17. a4 ♘8a7 18. ♙e3



18. — b6 19. ♖b1 bxc5 20. dxc5
 ♜e5 21. ♙e2 ♜ac6 22. ♜d4
 ♜a5+ Black's centre pawns are
 much more valuable than White's
 blocked pawns on the queen side.
 Arakhamia — Baburin Isle of
 Man 1995

7. c4 ♜b6

7. — ♜de7?! 8. exd6! ♜xd6
 8. — cxd6 9. d5

9. ♜c3 ♙xf3 10. ♙xf3 ♜xd4 11.
 ♙xb7 ♜d8 12. ♙d5 ♜ef5 13. ♙e4
 ♙e7 14. ♜a4+ c6 15. ♜d1 0-0 16.
 ♙xf5 exf5 17. ♙e3 ♙f6 18. ♜xa7±
 Oll — Shamkovich New York 1994

8. exd6 cxd6 9. d5

For the line 9. b3 ♙e7 see the main
 variation 6. — ♙e7 later on.

9. — exd5 10. cxd5 ♙xf3 11. gxf3!

You need not be worried about the
 double pawns, for Black will have
 not time to exploit them.

11. ♙xf3 ♜e5 12. ♜c3 ♙e7 13. ♙e2
 ♜c8 14. ♙e3 0-0 15. ♙d4 ♜ed7 16.
 a4 a5 17. ♙e1 ♙f6=
 Moiseev — Baburin Budapest 1990

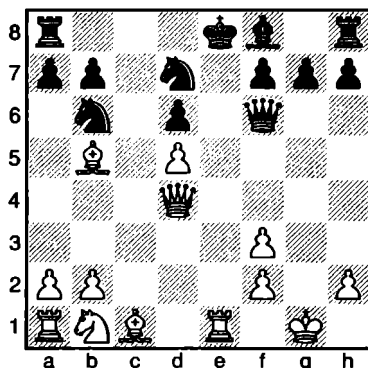
11. — ♜e5 12. ♙b5+ ♜ed7

12. — ♜bd7 13. f4 ♜g6 14. f5
 ♜ge5

14. — ♜e7 15. ♙e1±

15. ♜e2± a6 16. ♙xd7+ 1-0
 Wahls — Ostl BL 1990

13. ♜d4 ♜f6 14. ♙e1+



14. — ♜d8

14. — ♙e7 15. ♜xf6±

15. ♜d1! g5 16. ♜c3 ♙e7 17. ♙e3
 ♜g8 18. ♙d4 ♜h6 19. ♜e4 g4 20.
 ♜g3 gxf3 21. ♜xf3 ♙f6 22. ♙e3 ♜
 g7

22. — ♜e5?? 23. ♜f5+ Fiorito —
 Bulcourf Villa Martelli 1996

23. ♜e4±

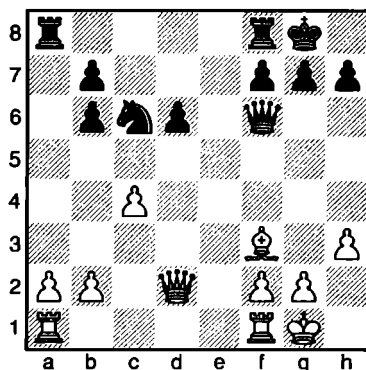
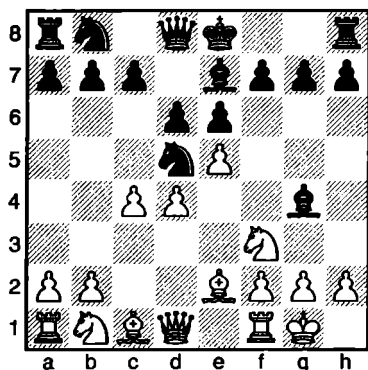
White has a lasting advantage
 because of the black king's uncer-
 tain position.

8.2.1 — 4. ♜f3 ♙g4 5. ♙e2 e6 6.
 0-0 ♙e7 7. c4 ♜b6 8. ♜c3 0-0 9.
 ♙e3 a5

1. e4 ♜f6 2. e5 ♜d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♜f3

♙g4 5. ♙e2 e6 6. 0-0 ♙e7 7. c4

♘xf6† ♖xf6 17. ♖d2±



7. h3 ♙h5 8. c4 ♘b6 9. ♘c3 0-0 10. ♙e3 ♘c6?!

It is worse after the moves h3 ♙h5 than without them.

11. exd6 cxd6 12. d5! exd5

12. — ♙xf3 13. ♙xf3 ♘e5 14. dxe6 fxe6 15. ♙g4 ♘bxc4 16. ♙xe6† ♖h8 17. ♙d4 ♘xb2 18. ♖d2 ♘bc4 19. ♖e2 ♘a5 20. ♙ad1 ♘ac6 21. ♙e3 ♙f6 22. ♙b3 ♖d7 23. f4 ♘g6 24. ♘e4 Cam — Garcia, G Bogota 1980

13. ♘xd5 ♙xf3

13. — ♘xd5 14. ♖xd5 and there is a substantial difference here: the h5 bishop is hanging now. 14. — ♙g6 15. ♘d4 ♙f6 16. ♙ad1 ♘xd4 17. ♙xd4 ♙xd4 18. ♖xd4± Garcia, G — Levin Philadelphia 1991

14. ♙xb6 axb6 15. ♙xf3 ♙f6 16.

17. — ♙a5?!

17. — ♙fe8! 18. ♙fe1 ♙e5 19. ♙e4 ♙ae8 20. ♙ae1±

18. ♙d5± ♙fa8 19. ♙fe1 h6?! 20. a4!+—

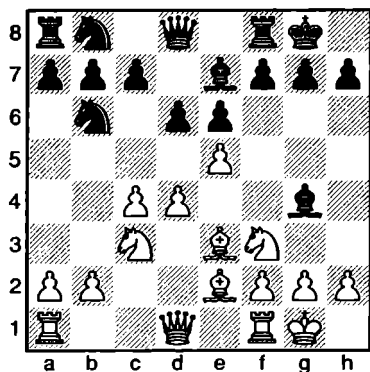
The pawn cannot be captured. Nunn — Kuijff Lugano 1987 Nunn

7. — ♘b6

From here White can continue the play in four different ways. The line 8. ♙e3 is of the slightest importance, since after the right answer, 8. — 0-0, it turns to the one of the other three lines. The move 8. exd6 will be analyzed subsequently, while the main line, 8. ♘c3, will be shown here. The pair of moves h3 ♙h5 can occur here too, but it can practically be made from the sixth move anytime. This book deals with it after the move 8. ♘c3 and does

not refer to this opportunity repeatedly. The move h3 gives sometimes White, sometimes Black extra possibilities.

8. dxc3 0-0 9. e3



9. — $\text{a5!?$

A move deserving attention in this position. For the line 9. — d5 10. c5 see the variation 8.4.4.2.3 in the Chapter 8.

9. — d8d7 10. exd6

10. b3 dxe5=

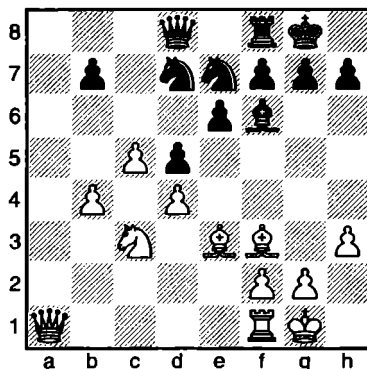
10. — cxd6 11. b3 d5 12. c5 dxc8
13. b4 e6 14. h3 exf3

14. — e6 15. h2!

15. exf3 a5 16. a3 axb4

16. — d7e7 17. d5 d7f5 18.
 e4

17. axb4 axa1 18. axa1 d7e7



19. $\text{a7!?$ b6 20. d5 bxc5!

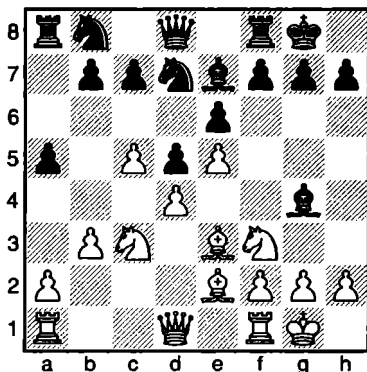
20. — d6? 21. b7! c8 22.
 xc8 xc8 23. d6! \pm Anand —
Schmidt Thessaloniki 1988
Anand

21. bxc5 ;

10. exd6

10. b3 d7a6

10. — d5 11. c5 d6d7



12. e1! The fight will develop around the points c5 and e5, so the knight is more valuable than the e2 bishop.

12. h3 xxf3 13. xxf3 b6 14. cxb6 bxb6 15. c1 c6 16. e2 d8d7 17. f4± *Liberzon — Al-burt Hastings 1980*

12. — xe2 13. xe2 b6 14. cxb6 bxb6

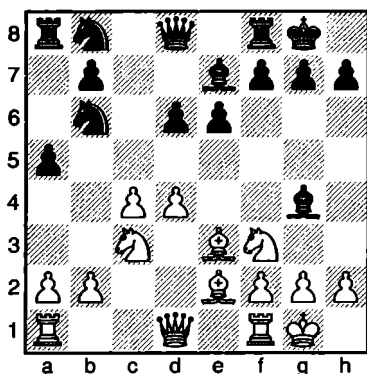
14. — c5? 15. a4! cxd4 16. xd4 c6 17. f3 b8 18. a1 c8 19. b5 b7 20. c5!± *Illescas — Fernandez Garcia Las Palmas 1987*

15. f4 g6 16. d3 d6±

11. c1 dxe5 12. dxe5 xe2 13. xe2 d7 14. e4±

Leko — Christiansen Nettetal 1994

10. — cxd6



11. b3

A) 11. c5!? dxc5 12. dxc5 d6d7 13. e4 a6 14. c1 f5!?

Nijboer — Hug Pula 1997

15. d6! dxc5 16. xc5 xd6 17. b5!±

The problems of the black pawn structure give White an adequate compensation for the pawn. ;

B) 11. b3 d8d7 12. a1 c8 13. a4 xa4 14. xa4 c7 15. h3 f5 16. fe1 h6 17. d2 c6 18. xa5 a8 19. b4 xa2 20. d5 b6 21. xb6 bxb6 22. dxe6 xe6 23. b3 d7 24. f4 c5=

The opponents are attacking other's weak points on the queen side. Rytshagov — Kaunas Riga 1995;

C) 11. d5 xf3 12. xf3 xc4 13. dxe6 fxe6 14. b3 d5 15. a1 ad1 16. gxf3 c8 17. a4 h8 18. f4 c6 19. b5 a6 20. fe1 f6±

Smirin — Yermolinsky Sverdlovsk 1987

11. — d5 12. c5

12. e5 xe2 13. xe2 c6=

12. — c8 13. e5 xe2 14. xe2 c6 15. f4 a7 16. a4

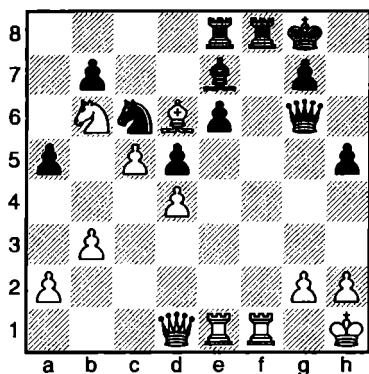
16. a1 dxe5 17. fxe5 f6 18. exf6

♖xf6 19. ♖xf6 ♙xf6 20. ♔g4±

Fedorowicz — Yermolinsky USA
1993

16. — ♗xe5 17. fxe5 f6 18. ♖b6
♖b8 19. exf6 ♙xf6 20. ♔g4 ♗e7
21. ♖ae1 ♖be8 22. ♖h1 ♗b5±

22. — ♗f7 23. ♙f2 h5 24. ♗d1
♗g6 25. ♙g3 ♗c6 26. ♙d6 ♙e7



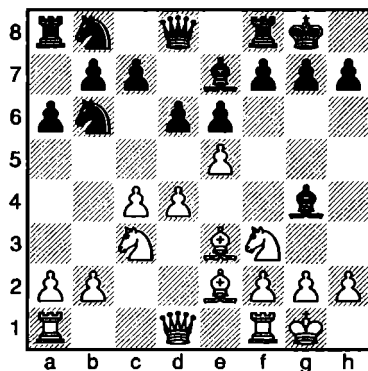
27. ♗d7 ♖xf1† 28. ♖xf1 ♙xd6 29.
cxd6 ♗g4 30. ♗e1 ♗xd4 31. ♗e5±

The d6 pawn cannot be stopped any
longer. Anka — Onoprienko Buda-
pest 1995.

8.2.2 — 4. ♗f3 ♙g4 5. ♙e2 e6 6.
0-0 ♙e7 7. c4 ♗b6 8. ♗c3 0-0 9.
♙e3 a6

1. e4 ♗f6 2. e5 ♗d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♗f3

♙g4 5. ♙e2 e6 6. 0-0 ♙e7 7. c4
♗b6 8. ♗c3 0-0 9. ♙e3 a6



Perhaps it is the most popular move
nowadays. It is less committing than
the moves 9. — d5 or 9. — ♗c6.

10. exd6

A) 10. b3 d5

It cannot be postponed any more.

10. — ♗d7 11. exd6

11. h3 ♙f5 12. exd6 cxd6 13.
♖e1 h6 14. ♙d3 ♙xd3 15. ♗xd3
♖c8 16. ♖ad1 ♖e8 17. ♙f4 ♙f8
18. ♖e3 ♗f6 19. ♙h2 ♗c7±
Chandler — Hort Surakarta
1982

11. — cxd6 12. d5! e5 13. ♗e1
♙xe2 14. ♗xe2 ♙g5 15. ♗d3
♙xe3 16. ♗xe3 ♗f6 17. f4 ♗bd7
18. fxe5 ♗g4 19. ♗g3 ♗gxe5 20.
♗xe5 ♗xe5

20. — dxe5± is better.

21. g1 c8 22. e4 f6 Black was threatened by the move c5. 23. a4 h8 24. a5 h6 25. h3 c7 26. g3 cf7 27. f5 e8 28. g3 d7 29. h3 g6 30. d4± White succeeded in weakening the whole king side. Oll — Zilberman Kazan 1997

11. c5 d8

11. — d6d7 12. d2

12. e1!? f5 13. d3± Videki

12. — f5! 13. f4 f6

13. — dxc5? 14. g4! e4 15. dxc4 xe4 16. d4 dxe4 17. c2±

14. d3

14. g4 g6 15. f5 f7 16. dxd5? fxe5!± The white centre grown too large collapses.

14. — fxe5 15. fxe5 d6 16. d3 b6!= 17. cxb6 dxb6 18. e2 xd3 19. dxd3 db4 20. d2 a5 21. d4 d7 22. d3 dxd3 23. dxd3 a4= Spasov — Ehlvest Biel 1993 Spasov

12. e1 xe2 13. dxe2 d6 14. f4 f5 15. b4±

15. d3 b6 16. cxb6 cxb6 17. ac1 d8a7 18. db1 d7 19. c2 ac8 20. f2 c7± Pedzich

— Baburin Cappelle la Grande 1996

B) 10. b3 d8d7

10. — dxe5 11. c5

11. dxe5 is better.

11. — exd4 12. cxb6 c5 13. fd1 e8 14. dxd4 cxd4 15. xd4 xe2 16. dxe2 d6 17. e3 c8 18. d3 db4= Rabiega — Jansa Austria 1996

11. fd1 dxe5 12. dxe5 xe2 13. dxe2 c8 14. d4 dxe5 15. dxe5 d7 16. c3 d8 17. d2 d8 18. ad1 xd2 19. xd2 e8 20. b3 c6 21. d3 b6 22. f3 h6=

Maybe it is Black that has the better position. Raaste — Bagirov Jyväskylä 1994

10. — cxd6 11. b3

This is the ideal place for the queen. It puts an unpleasant pressure along the b-file and controls the d5 square at the same time.

A) 11. d5 xf3

11. — e5?! 12. b3 d8d7 13. dxe5! xe2 14. dxd7 dxc4 15. dxf8 xf1 16. xf1 dxe3 17. d6 fxe6 18. fxe3± Becerra — Castany Andorra 1995

12. xf3 e5

12. — ♖xc4?! This move opens the position for the white bishops only. 13. dxe6 fxe6 14. ♖b3!

14. ♕g4 ♖d7 15. ♖e2=

14. — d5 15. ♖xb7 ♖xe3 16. fxe3 ♖d7 17. ♖xd5! ♕c5 18. b4! ♖e5! 19. bxc5 ♖xf3† 20. ♖xf3 ♖xd5 21. ♖xf8† ♖xf8 22. ♖xd5 exd5 23. ♖d1 The end of the close-range fighting is a rook endgame with an extra pawn. 23. — ♖b8 24. h3!!± Vilela,J

24. ♖xd5? Becerra — Nogueiras Villa Clara 1994

13. ♕e2 ♖d8d7 14. ♖c1 ♖c8 15. ♖a4 ♖xa4 16. ♖xa4 ♖c5 17. ♖c2 f5=

Sieiro — Nogueiras Villa Clara 1994;

B) 11. b3 d5 12. c5 ♖c8 13. b4 ♖c6 14. ♖b1 ♕xf3

14. — ♕f6 15. h3 ♕xf3 16. ♕xf3 ♖8e7

16. — b6?! 17. g4 bxc5 18. bxc5 ♕g5 19. ♕g2±

17. ♖d2 ♖f5=

15. ♕xf3 ♕f6 16. a4 b6 17. ♖d2 ♖8e7 18. ♖e2 bxc5 19. bxc5±

19. dxc5? ♖e5= Santo Roman — Bricard Montpellier 1988

11. — ♖d8d7

11. — ♖c7?! 12. d5±

12. a4

12. ♖ac1 ♖c8 13. ♖e4?! f5 14. ♖xd6 ♕xd6 15. c5 f4 16. ♕d2 ♕xc5 17. dxc5 ♖xc5=

Müller — Tischbierek BL 1995

12. — ♕xf3

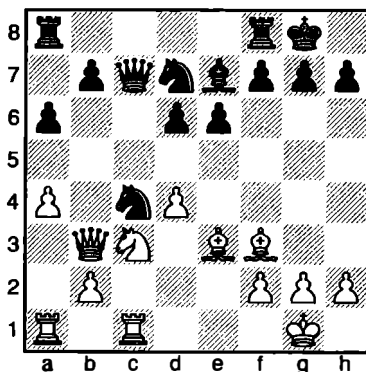
12. — ♖c7 13. a5 ♖c8 14. ♖fc1±

13. ♕xf3 ♖c7 14. c5!

14. ♖fc1 ♖ac8

A) 14. — ♖xc4 15. ♖a3! ♖c7 16. ♖d5 ♖d8 17. ♖xe7† ♖xe7 18. ♕xb7±;

B) 14. — ♖xc4



15. ♖d5! exd5 16. ♕xd5 ♖db6 The only move. 17. ♕xc4 ♖xc4 18. ♖xc4± Blatny — Bischoff Brno 1994

15. c5! dxc5 16. a5 cxd4 17. ♙xd4
♘c4 18. ♖xb7 ♖d6∞

14. — dxc5 15. a5 ♘c8

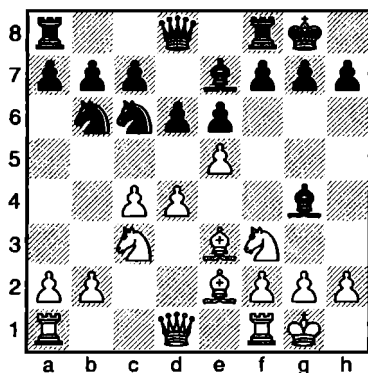
15. — cxd4 16. axb6 ♖e5 17. ♖a4±
Kruppa

16. ♖xb7 ♖xb7 17. ♙xb7 ♙a7 18.
♙f3 cxd4 19. ♙xd4 ♙c5 20. ♙xc5
♘xc5 21. b4 ♘b3 22. ♙ad1±

It stands a better chance of White to win having the extra pawn on the queen side being supported by a bishop. Kruppa — Semenov Alus-
ta 1994

8.2.3.1 — 4. ♘f3 ♙g4 5. ♙e2 e6 6.
0-0 ♙e7 7. c4 ♘b6 8. ♘c3 0-0 9.
♙e3 ♘c6 10. exd6 cxd6 11. d5

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♘f3
♙g4 5. ♙e2 e6 6. 0-0 ♙e7 7. c4
♘b6 8. ♘c3 0-0 9. ♙e3 ♘c6



This variation is less and less frequent in the tournament practice. White has a slight but lasting advantage, while Black has to fight for a draw only.

10. exd6 cxd6 11. d5! exd5

11. — ♙xf3 12. ♙xf3 ♘e5 13. dxe6
fxe6

Black cannot be proud of its centre pawns. One is weaker than the other.

14. ♙g4 ♙f6

14. — ♘exc4 15. ♙xe6† ♘h8 16.
♙xb6 ♘xb6 17. ♖b3 ♙f6 18.
♙ad1 ♙xc3 19. ♖xc3 ♙f6 20.
♙fe1 ♘a4 21. ♖d4 ♘c5 22.
♙d5± Timman — Bagirov Tbilisi 1971

15. b3 ♘bd7

15. — ♘xg4 16. ♖xg4 ♙g6

16. — ♘d7 17. ♙ad1 ♖a5? 18.
♘d5±

17. ♖h3 ♙f6 18. ♙ac1 ♙xc3 19.
♙xc3 ♖c7 20. ♙d3 ♙f8 21. ♖h5
♖c6 22. g3 ♘d7 23. ♖b5±
Gufeld — Ryc Kislovodsk 1968

16. ♙e2 ♘c5 17. b4 ♘a6 18. a3 ♙c8
19. ♙c1 ♙g6 20. ♘b5±

Kharlamov — Onoprienko Czestochowa 1992

12. ♖xd5 ♖xd5

12. — ♙xf3?! 13. ♙xb6 axb6 14. ♙xf3±

13. ♖xd5

13. cxd5

Why did not the queen capture it?
So the d6 pawn did not become weak.

13. — ♙xf3

13. — ♖e5? 14. ♖xe5 ♙xe2 15. ♖xf7!±

14. ♙xf3 ♖e5 15. ♙e2 f5! 16. ♖d2

16. f4?! ♖d7 17. ♖d2 ♙f6=

16. — ♙f6 17. ♖ac1 ♖e7 18. ♖fe1 ♖f7 19. ♖b4! ♖g4

The only move.

20. ♙xg4 fxg4 21. ♖cd1 ♙e5 22. ♖xg4 ♙xb2 23. ♖e6 ♙a3!=

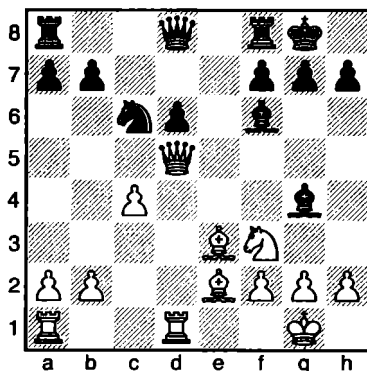
Leko — Yusupov Dortmund 1994
Leko

13. — ♙f6

13. — ♖c8 14. ♖ac1 a5 15. ♖d2 a4 16. h3 ♙h5 17. ♖fe1 ♙f6 18. ♖d4 ♙xe2 19. ♖xe2 ♖e5 20. ♖f4±

Gallagher — Lukasiewicz Bern 1993

14. ♖fd1



Black has no compensation in return for the weakness on d6.

14. ♖d2 ♖e8 15. ♖fd1 ♖e7 16. h3 ♙h5 17. ♖ac1 ♖ad8 18. ♖e1 ♖c7 19. b3±

Svensson — Gausel Gothenburg 1998

14. — ♖e8

A) 14. — ♖c8 15. ♖d2 ♖e5

15. — ♖d8 16. ♖ad1 ♖e7 17. ♖e4 ♙f5 18. ♖f4± Lein — Smyslov USSR 1966

16. ♖c1 b6 17. b3 ♖d8 18. ♖cd1 ♙e6 19. ♖e4 ♙f5 20. ♖f4±

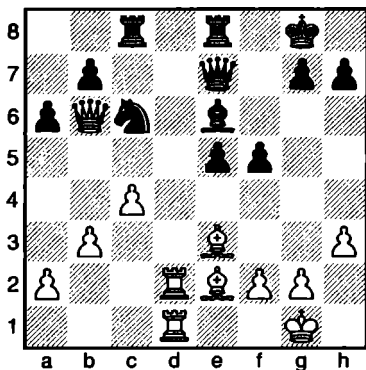
Georgadze — Grigorian USSR 1971;

B) 14. — ♙e6 15. ♖d2 ♖a5 16. ♖d4 ♖xd2 17. ♖xd2 ♙xd4 18.

♙xd4 ♙fd8 19. ♙ad1 ♙d7 20. ♙c3 exd6 cxd6 11. b3
 ♙ad8 21. f4±

Liberzon — Vaganian Riga 1970

15. ♙d2 ♙e7 16. ♙ad1 ♙ac8 17. h3
 ♙e6 18. ♙b5 a6 19. ♙b6 ♙e5 20.
 ♘xe5 dxe5 21. b3 f5

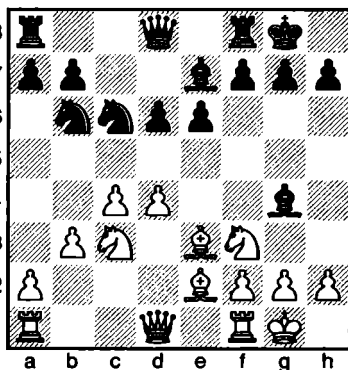


22. f4 exf4 23. ♙xf4 g5 24. ♙d6
 ♙f7 25. ♙a3 h6 26. ♙b2 ♙e7 27.
 ♙f3±

Black's prospects are rather blue.
 Grünfeld — Zilberman Rishon le
 Zion 1994

8.2.3.2 — 4. ♘f3 ♙g4 5. ♙e2 e6 6.
 0-0 ♙e7 7. c4 ♘b6 8. ♘c3 0-0 9.
 ♙e3 ♘c6 10. exd6 cxd6 11. b3

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♘f3
 ♙g4 5. ♙e2 e6 6. 0-0 ♙e7 7. c4
 ♘b6 8. ♘c3 0-0 9. ♙e3 ♘c6 10.



It is an important position. It can
 come into being through the most
 different move orders. For example
 after the early ♘c6 or 8. exd6.

11. — d5

11. — ♙f6

This is the other way to hinder the
 threatening d5.

12. ♘e4 ♙e7 13. d5 exd5 14. cxd5
 ♘b4 15. ♙xb6 ♙xb6 16. a3 ♘a6 17.
 ♘fd2 ♙f5 18. ♘c4 ♙d8 19. ♘g3
 ♙d7 20. b4 ♙e8 21. ♙c1 ♙b5=

Tal — Bagirov USSR 1979

12. c5 ♘c8

White trusts in its extra pawn on the
 queen side, while Black's primary
 task is to attack the d4 point and to
 organize the blockade on the queen

side.

12. — ♖d7 13. b4

13. a3 f5!? It is an original idea.

14. ♖d2 ♙xe2 15. ♖xe2 g5 16. f4

♙f6 17. ♗h1 ♖e4= Hedlund —
Gausel Gausdal 1997

13. — ♖xb4

13. — f5 14. b5 ♖a5=

14. ♖b1

14. ♖b3 ♖a5 15. a3 ♖c6 16.

♖xb7 ♖ac8! =

14. — ♖c6 15. ♖xb7 ♖b8 16. ♖xb8

♖dxb8 17. h3 ♙xf3 18. ♙xf3 ♖a5

19. ♖d3 ♙f6 20. ♖b1 ♖a6 21. ♖b5

♖ab4 22. ♖d2 ♖a3 23. ♙d1 e5 24.

dxe5 ♙xe5 25. ♖xd5 ♖xd5 26.

♖xd5 ♖d8 27. ♖b3 ♖a5?

27. — ♖xa2±

28. ♖c2 ♖c4 29. ♙g5 ♖c3 30.

♗f1±

Tal — Vasiukov USSR 1967

13. b4

13. ♖e1 ♙xe2 14. ♖xe2 ♙f6 15. f4

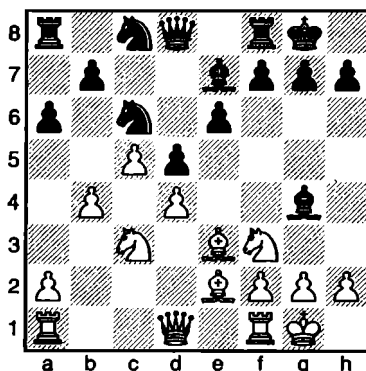
♖8e7 16. ♖f3 ♖f5 17. ♙f2 h5 18.

♖d2 ♖a5 19. ♖xa5 ♖xa5 20. ♖ac1

b5 21. g3 ♖c6 22. h3 g6=

Rubinetti — Diaz Buenos Aires
1991

13. — a6



13. — ♙f6 14. ♖b1

14. b5 ♖a5=

14. — ♙xf3? *This intermediate move does not help now.* 15. bxc6 ♙xe2 16. cxb7 ♙xd1 17. bxa8 ♖± Tolnai — Hauchard Debrecen 1992

14. — ♖8e7 15. b5 ♖a5 16. ♖d2

♙xe2 17. ♖xe2 ♖f5 18. ♖d3 ♙e8

19. f4 ♖xe3 20. ♖xe3 g6 21. ♖fc1

♙g7 22. ♖d1 a6 23. a4 axb5 24.

axb5 ♖f6=

Polgar, S — Milos Sao Paulo 1996

14. ♖b1

It does not seem to be advantageous either, but still this is the most logical move among the several opportunities.

A) 14. ♖e5 ♙xe2

14. — fxe5 15. dxe5 f5= 16. f4 g6 17. d2 a7 18. f5?! fxf5 19. dxd5 dxd5 20. dxd5 exd5 21. fxf5 c6 22. f3 g6 23. f4 g5 Robatsch — Hort Venice 1969

15. fxe2 fxe5 16. dxe5 a7 17. d2 a5 18. a3 d7 19. d4 c6 20. f4 f5 21. f3 a7

Apicella — Spiridonov France 1996;

B) 14. b3 f6 15. fdl e8e7 16. d2 f5 17. ad1 fxf3 18. fxf3 g5 19. xg5 d5=

Dolmatov — Morozovich Moscow 1995;

C) 14. h3 fxf3 15. fxf3 f6 16. b1 e8e7 17. g4 g5 18. g2 g6 19. e2 f4 20. dxf4 gxf4 21. fxf4 exd4 22. a4 f6 23. d2 a5 24. b5 d4=

Barua — Ramesh India 1996;

D) 14. a4 fxf3 15. fxf3 a7 16. ad1 f6 17. b3 e8e7=

14. — f6

14. — fxf3 15. fxf3 f6 16. a4 e8e7 17. b5 axb5 18. axb5 a5 19. e2 f5=

Fogarasi — Horvath, J Budapest 1994

fxf3

17. — a5 18. d2 fxe2 19. fxe2 f5 20. c2 e7 21. al d7 22. fbl e5=

Korneev — Van Duyvenbode Italy 1992

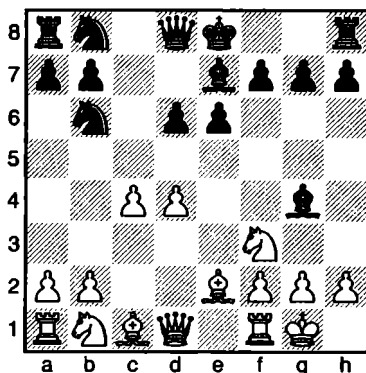
18. fxf3

18. bxc6? fxe2 19. dxe2 bxc6 Hoellrigl — Baburin Oberwart 1991

18. — a5=

8.3.1 — 4. f3 g4 5. e2 e6 6. 0-0 e7 7. c4 b6 8. exd6 cxd6 9. b3

1. e4 f6 2. e5 d5 3. d4 d6 4. f3 g4 5. e2 e6 6. 0-0 e7 7. c4 b6 8. exd6 cxd6



15. a4 e8e7 16. b5 axb5 17. axb5 9. b3

A) 9. d5 0-0

9. — exd5=

10. h3 ♖xf3 11. ♖xf3 e5

11. — exd5 12. ♖xd5 ♜xd5 13. ♜xd5±

12. c5 ♜c8 13. ♞e1 dxc5=;

B) 9. ♖e3 ♜c6 10. d5 exd5 11. cxd5 ♖xf3 12. ♖xf3 ♜e5 13. ♖e2 0-0 14. ♜b3 ♜ed7 15. a4 ♖g5 16. a5 ♖xe3 17. ♜xe3 ♞e8 18. ♜d2 ♜c5!

This is the third intermediate move.

19. ♖d1 ♜c4 20. ♜c3 ♜e5 21. b4 ♜e4 22. ♜d4 ♜f6 23. ♜d2 ♜xd2 24. ♜xd2 ♜c4 25. ♜e1 ♜d2±

Polgar,S — Oll Hoogoven 1997

9. — 0-0 10. ♖b2 ♜c6 11. ♜bd2

For the line 11. ♜c3! see the main variation (8. ♜c3).

11. — ♖f5

11. — d5 12. c5

12. ♜e5 ♖xe2 13. ♜xe2 ♜xe5 14. dxe5 dxc4=

12. — ♜d7 13. a3 a6 14. b4 ♜c7 15. ♖b1 b6 16. ♜b3 bxc5=

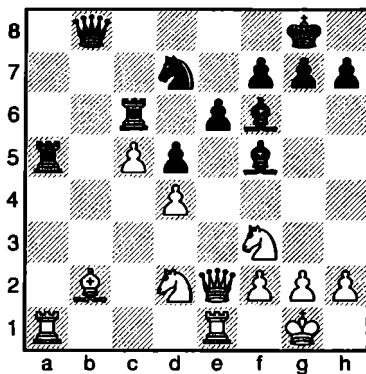
12. a3 a5 13. ♞e1 ♖f6 14. ♞c1

14. ♖f1 d5 15. c5 ♜d7 16. ♞c1 ♜b8

17. ♖b5 ♞c8 18. b4 axb4 19. axb4 b6

Black's task is to block the white pawn chain and, if it is possible, to annihilate it.

20. ♜e2 bxc5 21. bxc5 ♞a5 22. ♖xc6 ♞xc6 23. ♞a1



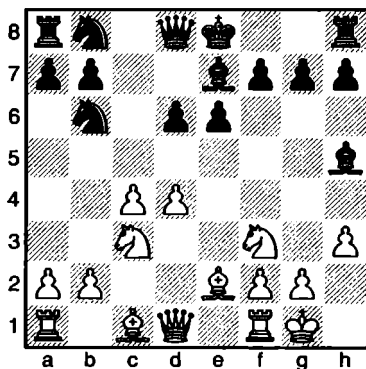
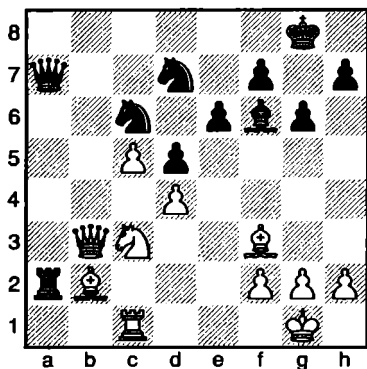
23. — ♞axc5!± 24. dxc5 ♖xb2 25. ♞a6 ♞xa6 26. ♜xa6 ♜xc5 27. ♜a5 ♜d3 28. ♞d1 h6 29. ♜f1 ♜f4 30. ♜e3 ♖e4 31. ♜d2 ♖c3 32. ♜a2 ♖xg2+

Benjamin — Alburt South Bend 1981

14. — d5 15. c5 ♜d7 16. ♜f1 ♖e4 17. ♜g3 ♖xf3 18. ♖xf3 b6 19. ♖c3 ♞b8 20. b4 axb4 21. axb4 bxc5 22. bxc5 g6 23. ♞e2 ♜c7 24. ♞a2 ♞a8 25. ♞xa8 ♞xa8 26. ♜e2 ♞a3 27. ♖b2 ♞a2 28. ♜b3 ♜a7 29. ♞b1±

29. ♘c3?

♘c3



29. — ♖xb2

10. ♘bd2

Grandmaster Alburk plays this type of position brilliantly. Saying more exactly the whole Alekhine Defence. Of course the two pawns and the active play of the pieces are plentiful compensations for the sacrificed exchange.

White does not aspire to a quick triumph.

30. ♖xb2 ♘xd4

10. — ♘c6

Fedorowicz — Alburk New York 1980

10. — 0-0 11. b4!?

8.3.2 — 4. ♘f3 ♗g4 5. ♗e2 e6 6. 0-0 ♗e7 7. c4 ♘b6 8. exd6 cxd6 9. h3

11. b3 0-0 12. ♗b2 ♗g6

12. — ♖b8!? The manoeuvring play gives you the opportunity to make even such moves. 13. ♗c3 a5 14. a3 ♖c8 15. ♖c1 ♗g6 16. ♗e1 ♗f6

13. a3 a5 14. ♗e1

14. ♗c3 ♗f6 15. ♗e1 e5 16. ♘f1

16. dxe5 dxe5 17. ♗f1 ♘d7 18. b4?! e4! 19. ♗xf6 ♘xf6 20. b5 exf3 21. bxc6 fxg2 22. ♗xg2 bxc6 23. ♗xc6 ♖a6 24. ♗g2 ♗d6

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♘d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♘f3 ♗g4 5. ♗e2 e6 6. 0-0 ♗e7 7. c4 ♘b6 8. exd6 cxd6 9. h3 ♗h5 10.

♗d6

lavia 1978

16. — e4 17. ♖3h2 d5 18. ♖g4
♙g5= Tal — Bagirov Leningrad
1977

14. — ♙f6 15. ♖c1

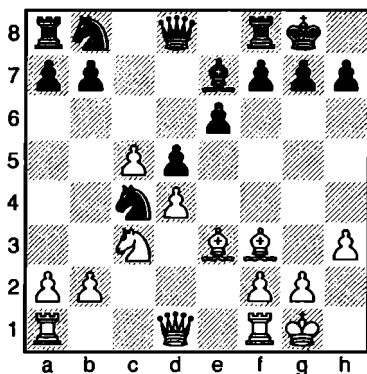
15. ♖f1 ♖c8 16. ♖e3 ♙h5 17.
♖g4 ♙xg4 18. hxg4 g6 19. ♖d2
♙g7= Tseshkovsky — Albur
Leningrad 1974

15. — d5 16. c5 ♖d7 17. ♙c3 b6 18.
b4 axb4 19. axb4 bxc5 20. bxc5
♙a3!?

20. — ♖c7= Kudrin — Bagirov
Belgrade 1988

21. ♖f1 ♖a8! 22. ♖e3 ♙b8 23. ♖g4
♙d8= 24. ♙d3? ♙xd3 25. ♖xd3
♖b4! Bagirov

10. — 0-0 11. ♙e3 d5 12. c5 ♙xf3
13. ♙xf3 ♖c4



14. ♙c1

A) 14. b3 ♖xe3 15. fxe3 ♖c6 16.
♙b1

16. a3 b6 17. b4 bxc5 18. dxc5?
♙f6 19. ♖c2 ♙e5 20. ♙ad1
♖g5= The white pawns have not
time to advance on the queen
side. Hedke — Shabalov Biel
1992

16. — b6 17. b4 bxc5 18. bxc5
♖a5=

Charles — Solozhenkin Bethune
1992;

B) 14. ♙f4 ♖c6 15. b3 ♖4a5 16.
♙c1 b6 17. cxb6

17. ♖a4 ♙f6 18. ♙e3 b5 19. ♖c3
b4=

17. — ♖xb6 18. ♙e3 ♙ac8 19. ♖a4
♖b8 20. ♖c5 ♙xc5 21. ♙xc5 ♖b7
22. ♙c3 ♖e7 23. ♙xc8 ♙xc8 24.
♖d3 ♖d6=

Short — Bagirov Baku 1983

14. — ♖c6 15. b3 ♖4a5 16. ♙e3

16. ♙b2

This move gives 14. ♙c1 a consid-
erable importance. In the case of 16.
♙e3 it has continuations in common
with the move 14. ♙f4.

16. — ♙f6 17. ♖a4 ♖e7!?

17. — g6 18. ♙e2 ♙g7 19. ♖d2
♖c7 20. ♙ac1 ♙ad8 21. ♙c3!? e5

22. dxe5 \mathbb{e} xe5 23. f4! \mathbb{e} xc3 24. ∇ xc3 \pm White has a minimal advantage. Savon — Sergeev, VI USSR 1990

18. g4?! ∇ g6 $\bar{=}$

White's bishop is missing from the diagonal c1–h6.

16. — \mathbb{e} f6 17. \mathbb{f} c1 ∇ e7 18. g4 g6 19. \mathbb{w} d2 ∇ ac6 20. \mathbb{e} g2 \mathbb{e} g7 21. f4 b6 22. ∇ a4 b5 23. ∇ c3 b4 24. ∇ e2 a5

Black gets a counterplay on the queen side.

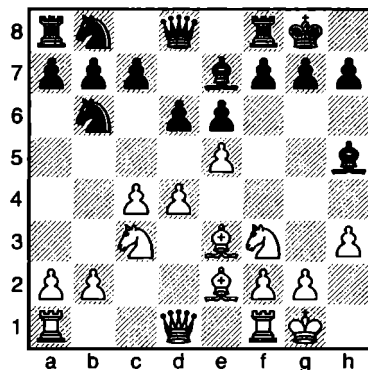
25. \mathbb{g} h1 f5 26. ∇ g1 a4 27. ∇ f3 axb3 28. axb3 \mathbb{f} a3 29. \mathbb{f} b1 \mathbb{w} d7 30. \mathbb{f} fe1 \mathbb{f} fa8 31. \mathbb{e} g1 \mathbb{f} a2 32. \mathbb{w} e3 fxg4 33. hxg4 e5!= 34. ∇ xe5 $\frac{1}{2}$ – $\frac{1}{2}$

Krakops — Baburin Berlin 1994

8.4.1 — 4. ∇ f3 \mathbb{e} g4 5. \mathbb{e} e2 e6 6. 0–0 \mathbb{e} e7 7. h3 \mathbb{e} h5 8. c4 ∇ b6 9. ∇ c3 0–0 10. \mathbb{e} e3 a5

1. e4 ∇ f6 2. e5 ∇ d5 3. d4 d6 4. ∇ f3 \mathbb{e} g4 5. \mathbb{e} e2 e6 6. 0–0 \mathbb{e} e7 7. h3

\mathbb{e} h5 8. c4 ∇ b6 9. ∇ c3 0–0 10. \mathbb{e} e3



10. — a5

For the line 10. — ∇ c6?! see the variation 9. \mathbb{e} e3 ∇ c6 (8.2.3.1 and 8.2.3.2).

10. — ∇ 8d7?! 11. exd6

11. b3 a6 12. exd6 cxd6 13. ∇ d2 \mathbb{e} xe2 14. \mathbb{w} xe2 \mathbb{e} e8 15. f4 \mathbb{e} f8 16. a4 ∇ f6 17. \mathbb{w} f3 \mathbb{w} c7 18. \mathbb{f} ac1 ∇ bd7 19. g4 \pm Acs — Appel Budapest 1996

11. — cxd6 12. b3! d5 13. c5 ∇ c8 14. b4 a6 15. ∇ d2!?

15. a4 \mathbb{e} xf3 16. \mathbb{e} xf3 \mathbb{e} f6 17. \mathbb{w} d3

17. \mathbb{f} c1 ∇ e7 18. g4! ∇ c6 19. b5 ∇ a5 20. \mathbb{e} e2 g6 21. f4 \mathbb{e} g7 22. ∇ b1= Nijboer — Hug Pula 1997

17. — ∇ e7 18. g4! \pm

15. — ♖xe2 16. ♗xe2 ♙f6 17. ♜b3
 ♜e7 18. ♚fd1± ♜c6 19. a3 b6 20.
 ♜a4 bxc5?

20. — b5 is better.

21. ♜axc5 ♜xc5 22. ♜xc5 ♚a7?

22. — a5 23. b5 ♜e7 24. ♚ab1
 ♜c8 with further ♜b6 and ♜c4±

23. ♜xa6 ♗a8 24. b5 ♜b8 25. ♜c5!
 ♚xa3 26. ♗b2+—

The game is brought to an issue by
 the b-pawn. Almasi,Z — Varga
 Budapest 1995

11. b3

11. exd6 cxd6 12. ♗b3

12. d5 e5

12. — ♙xf3 13. ♙xf3 e5 14. ♙e2
 ♜a6 15. ♜b5 ♜d7 16. a3 ♜c7
 17. ♜xc7 ♗xc7 18. b4 f5 19.
 ♗c2 g6 20. ♚ac1 b6 21. ♚fd1±
*Van der Wiel — Kovacevic Wijk
 aan Zee 1980*

13. ♗b3

13. ♜d2 ♙xe2 14. ♗xe2 ♜a6
 15. b3 ♜d7 16. ♚ab1 f5 17. f3?!
 ♜f6 18. f4 g6 19. fxe5 dxe5 20.
 ♜a4 ♜h5 21. ♙b6 ♗d6 22. ♜f3
 e4 23. ♜d4 ♜g3 24. ♗d2 f4→
*The white monarch is left alone.
 Werner — Shabalov St. Martin
 1993*

13. — ♜8d7 14. ♜xe5 ♙xe2 15.
 ♜xd7 ♙xc4 16. ♙xb6 ♙xb3 17.
 ♙xd8 ♚fxd8 18. axb3 ♚xd7 19.
 b4 ♙d8= Sherzer — Shabalov
 New York 1993

12. — ♜8d7

12. — a4 13. ♗b5 ♙g6 14. c5±

13. ♗b5 ♙g6

13. — ♙xf3 14. ♙xf3 ♗c7 15. b3
 d5 16. ♚ac1 dxc4 17. ♜e2 e5 18.
 dxe5 ♙c5 19. ♙xc5 ♜xc5 20.
 ♜f4 ♚fd8 21. bxc4 ♜bd7 22.
 ♜d5 ♗xe5 23. ♚fel ♗g5 24.
 ♚cd1± The white pieces are in
 charge of the board. Wedberg —
 Bagirov Gausdal 1991

14. c5 ♜c8 15. ♚fd1! ♗c7

15. — d5 16. ♗xb7!± Because of
 the c5 passed pawn.

16. ♙f4 b6 17. cxd6 ♜xd6

17. — ♙xd6 18. ♙e3!? a4

18. — ♜a7 19. ♗b3! b5 20.
 ♚dc1! with further 20. — a4 21.
 ♜xa4!

19. ♚ac1 ♚a5 20. ♗c4 ♗xc4 21.
 ♙xc4 ♜a7 22. ♙e2 f5?!

22. — a3 23. b3±

23. ♜e5!+ Glek — Shabalov
 Belgorod 1989

18. ♗a4 ♚fd8 19. ♚ac1 ♗b7±

11. — d5

11. — ♘a6

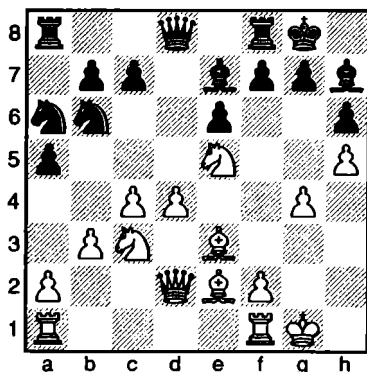
Black does not want to close the centre.

12. g4 ♙g6 13. h4 h6!

A) 13. — h5 14. g5 ♙f5 15. exd6 cxd6 16. d5 e5 17. ♘d2 g6 18. ♘de4 with further f4±;

B) 13.— dxe5? 14. h5 ♙b4 15. hxg6 ♙xc3 16. gxf7 ♖xf7 17. ♘xe5 ♙xa1 18. ♘xf7 ♘xf7 19. ♙xa1± Black's forces are in ruins. Dorfman — Bagirov Moscow 1989.

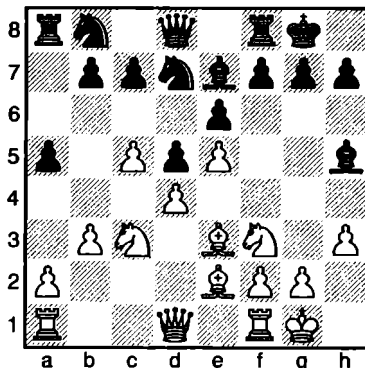
14. h5 ♙h7 15. ♙d2 dxe5 16. ♘xe5



16. — c5! 17. d5 exd5 18. cxd5 ♘b4 19. ♙ad1 a4 20. d6 ♙f6 21. f4 axb3 22. axb3 ♙xe5! 23. fxe5 ♘d7∞

It is an exciting position. Grechkhin — Abrashkin Russia 1994. Yakovich

12. c5 ♘d7



12. — ♘c8 13. ♘e1 ♙xe2 14. ♙xe2 b6 15. cxb6 ♘xb6 16. ♘d3 ♘a6 17. f4 f5 18. exf6 ♙xf6 19. ♙f2 ♙e8 20. ♘e5 ♙xe5 21. dxe5 ♙f8 22. ♙xb6 cxb6 23. ♘b5 ♙h4

23. — ♘c5 24. ♘d6 ♙d7 25. ♙e3±

24. ♙e3 ♘c5 25. ♘d6 ♙ad8 26. ♙ad1 ♙e7 27. f5 ♘d7 28. ♘b5 ♙xf5 29. ♙xf5 exf5 30. ♙xd5±

Tiviakov — Yermolinsky New York 1994

13. a3

A) 13. ♙c1 ♙xf3

13. — ♖c6 14. ♗e1 ♙xe2 15. ♗xe2 f6 16. exf6 ♙xf6 17. ♖g4 ♙e8 18. ♖f3 ♖f8 19. ♙cd1 ♖g6 20. ♙g5 ♙xg5 21. ♖xg5 ♖f6 22. ♙fe1 ♖f4 23. ♖e2 ♖xe2† 24. ♙xe2± Illescas — Tagnon France 1989.

14. ♙xf3 c6 15. ♙e2 b6 16. cxb6 ♖xb6 17. f4 g6 18. g4 f5 19. exf6 ♙xf6 20. ♖b1

The knight sets off.

20. — ♖e7 21. ♖d2 a4 22. ♖f3 axb3 23. axb3 ♖6d7 24. ♖e1 ♙c8 25. ♖d3±

The wandering of the knight has finished. It needs exactly five moves. Khalifman — Shabalov USSR 1986;

B) 13. ♖d2 c6

13. — b6 14. cxb6 ♖xb6 15. ♖e1 ♙xe2 16. ♖xe2 ♖a6 17. ♖d3 ♖d7 18. ♙g5 a4 19. ♙xe7 ♖xe7 20. ♖c3 ♙fc8 21. ♙fc1 c6 22. bxa4 c5 23. a5= Sax — Kovacevic Vinkovci 1976

14. g4 ♙g6 15. ♖e1 f6 16. exf6 ♖xf6 17. ♖d3 ♖bd7 18. ♖f4 ♙f7 19. g5 ♖e8 20. ♙g4 e5 21. ♖e6 ♙xe6 22. ♙xe6† ♖h8 23. dxe5 ♖c7 24. ♙xd7 ♖xd7 25. ♖g2 ♖f5 26. f4 ♖e6 27. ♖e2 ♖e4† 28. ♖h2 d4† Bertola — Bagirov Stockholm

1990;

C) 13. g4 ♙g6 14. ♖e1 b6 14. — f6!?

15. cxb6 ♖xb6 16. ♖d3 ♖8d7 17. f4 ♙xd3 18. ♙xd3 c5 19. ♖c2 g6 20. ♖f2±

Reinderman — Bosch The Netherlands 1996.

13. — ♖c6

13. — c6 14. ♖e1±

14. b4 axb4 15. axb4 ♙xa1 16. ♖xa1 f6 17. b5 ♙xf3 18. ♙xf3

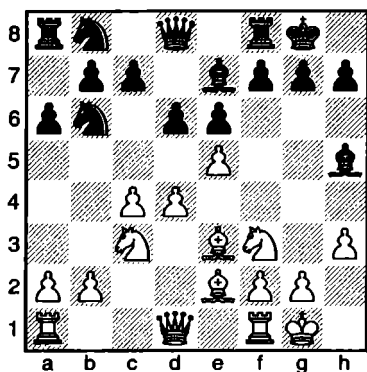
18. bxc6 ♙xe2 19. ♖xe2 bxc6† Ivanov — Shabalov Philadelphia 1993

18. — ♖xd4!? 19. ♙xd4 fxe5 20. ♙e3 d4 21. c6=

8.4.2 — 4. ♖f3 ♙g4 5. ♙e2 e6 6. 0-0 ♙e7 7. c4 ♖b6 8. h3 ♙h5 9. ♖c3 0-0 10. ♙e3 a6

1. e4 ♖f6 2. e5 ♖d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♖f3 ♙g4 5. ♙e2 e6 6. 0-0 ♙e7 7. c4 ♖b6 8. h3 ♙h5 9. ♖c3 0-0 10. ♙e3

a6



11. b3

11. d5?!

Moves like this must be prepared better.

A) 11. — ♙xf3 12. ♙xf3 ♘xc4 13. dxe6 fxe6 14. ♙xb7 ♘xe3 15. fxe3 ♙xf1† 16. ♙xf1 ♙a7 17. ♙f3 ♘d7 18. exd6= ½–½

Zaitsev — Bagirov St. Petersburg 1995;

B) 11. ♙b3 dxe5 12. ♘xe5

12. dxe5?! c5=

12. — ♙xe2 13. ♘xe2 ♘d8d7 14. ♙fd1 ♙c8 15. ♘f3

15. ♘d3 ♙e8 16. ♙ac1 ♘f8 17. ♘ef4 ♘bd7 18. d5 exd5 19. cxd5 ♙d6 20. ♙d4 ♙e4 21. ♙e3 ♘f6 22. ♘e2 ♘8d7 23. ♙e1= Frolov

— Lein Berlin 1993

15. — ♙d8 16. ♘f4 c5= 17. d5 exd5 18. cxd5 ♙d6=;

C) 11. exd6 cxd6 12. ♙b3

a) 12. c5!? In the positions with an isolated pawn, which come into being, White gets a dangerous activity. 12. — ♘c8

12. — ♘d7 13. cxd6 ♙xd6 14. d5 e5 15. ♘e4 ♘f6 16. ♙g5± Ferrec — Zelcic Pula 1994

13. ♙b3 b6

13. — ♙c7 14. cxd6 ♙xd6 15. ♙ac1 ♘c6 16. d5± exd5 17. ♘xd5 ♙b8 18. ♙fd1 ♘6e7 19. ♙c5 ♙xc5 20. ♙xc5 ♙xf3 21. ♙xf3 ♘c6 22. ♘e3 ♙a7 23. ♙c3 ♘8e7 24. ♙d7 ♙fc8 25. ♙xc6 ♙xc6 26. ♙xc6 ♘xc6 27. ♘f5 1–0 Mestel — Kovacevic Plovdiv 1983

14. cxd6 ♙xd6 15. g4 ♙g6 16. ♘e5 ♙xe5 17. dxe5 ♘c6 18. ♙f3 ♘8e7 19. ♙xb6 ♙d3 20. ♙g2 ♙ab8 Schmitt diel — Horvath, Cs Gausdal 1994 21. ♙ad1 ♙c2 22. ♙xc2 ♙xc2 23. ♙d2 ♙xb6 24. ♙xc2 ♘xe5 25. ♙d1±;

b) 12. b3 d5 13. ♘e5

13. c5 ♙xf3 14. ♙xf3 ♘c8 15. b4 ♘c6 16. ♙b1 ♙f6 17. a4

18. b5 axb5 19. axb5 ♖a5
20. ♕e2 ♘f5 21. ♖d2= Vidars-
son — Shabalov Reykjavik 1994

13. — ♕xe2 14. ♖xe2 ♘c6 15.
♜fd1 ♕f6 16. cxd5 ♘xd5 17.
♘xd5 ♖xd5 18. ♘xc6 ♖xc6 19.
♜ac1 ♖e4 20. ♖g4 ♖xg4 21.
hxg4 ♜fc8 22. g5 ♕e7 23. d5
exd5 24. ♜xc8† ♜xc8 25. ♜xd5
♜d8 26. ♜xd8† ♕xd8= The dis-
armament is perfect. Anand —
Yusupov Wijk aan Zee 1994

12. — ♘d7 13. ♜ac1

13. ♜fc1 ♜c8 14. a4 ♕xf3 15.
gx f3 ♖c7 16. ♘e4 ♜ce8 17. a5
♘c8 18. c5 dxc5 19. dxc5 ♘a7
20. ♘d6 ♜b8 21. f4 ♘c6 22. f5
e5= Prie — Agnos Paris 1994

13. — ♜c8

White is threatened by the move
♕xf3.

14. ♘d2 ♕xe2 15. ♘e2 ♕g5 16.
♕xg5 ♖xg5 17. ♘e4 ♖e7 18. c5
dxc5 19. dxc5 ♘d5 20. ♖xb7 f5 21.
♘g5 h6 22. ♘f3 ♘xc5 23. ♖xe7
♘e7 24. ♜fd1 ♘d5 25. ♘ed4 ♘f4
26. ♘f1 ♘fd3 27. ♜c2 e5=

Anand — Morozevich Moscow
(rapid) 1995

11. — d5

11. — ♘d7 12. exd6 cxd6 13. ♖d2
♘f6 14. d5 e5 15. b4

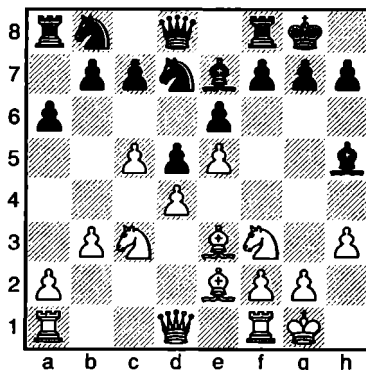
15. ♘h4±

15. — b6 16. ♜fd1 a5 17. a3 ♘bd7
18. ♜ac1 ♘e8 19. ♘b5 ♕xf3 20.
♕xf3 f5 21. ♖c2 ♕g5 22. ♖b3 ♘h8
23. ♕xg5 ♖xg5 24. ♕e2 ♜f6 25.
♕f1 ♜g6=

Hjartarson — Torre Moscow 1994

12. c5 ♘c8

12. — ♘d7



13. ♘e1!

A) 13. ♘h2 ♕g6 14. ♖d2 ♘c6
15. f4± Gavrikov — Fioramonti
Lugano 1989;

B) 13. ♖d2 ♘c6 14. ♜ab1 ♕g6
15. ♜b2 f6 16. exf6 ♕xf6 17. b4
♕f7 18. ♕d1 e5=;

C) 13. b4 ♘c6 14. ♖b3 ♘h8

14. — f6 15. ♘d5!?=

15. ♜ad1 f6= with approximately
equal chances.

15. — b6 16. ♖a4 dcb8?! 17. ♜c1 bxc5 18. bxc5 f6 19. d5 g5 f7 20. dxf7 ♜xf7 21. dxd5 exd5 22. e6± Grosar — Zelcic Makarska 1994

13. — g6 14. d3 c6

14. — xd3

15. xg6 hxg6 16. g4 e8

16. — b6±

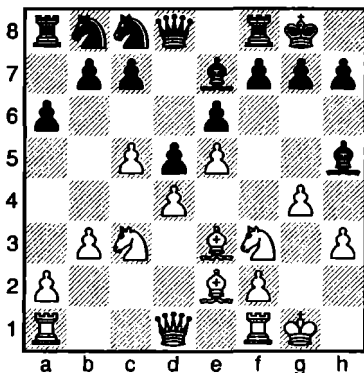
17. d3 f5?!

It weakens the king side totally.

18. g3 h7 19. g5 h8 20. e2±

Rublevsky — Bogdanovski Budva 1996

13. g4



A) 13. d2 g6 14. f4 c6 15. c1

15. a3 xc5!=

15. — xc5!?

15. — f6 This is the usual move.

16. dxc5 d4 17. f2 dxc3 18. xc3 d8e7 19. d3 d5 20. c4 a5 21. d4 c6 22. d2 e7 23. xd5!? exd5 24. xd5 ad8 25. c4 e6 26. xe6 fxe6

White has the compensation for the exchange but nothing else. Stripunsky — Ajupbergenov Volgograd 1994;

B) 13. d2 c6 14. b4 g6 15. a3 f6 16. f4 d8a7 17. ad1 fe5 18. dxe5 dxe5 19. xe5 c6 20. g4 f5=

Balzar — Bagirov Giessen 1994;

C) 13. b4 c6 14. a3

a) 14. b1 f6!;

b) 14. b3 xf3 15. xf3 g5 This is also a frequent plan. Having space disadvantage every exchange comes in very handy, and the c8 knight also join in the play this way through the e7 square. 16. ad1 xe3 17. fe3 g5 18. e2 d8e7 19. f4 d5= 20. g4 ce7 21. h2 h5 22. xf5 dxf5 23. f3 h4 24. d3 c6 25. g1 ae8 26. a4 a5 27. b5 cxb5 28. axb5 d3 29. e2 e4 30. d3?? g3! It is true that the queen cannot be

captured in three different ways,
but the sacrifice still is beautiful.
0-1 Unzicker — Dankert Munich
1979

14. — f6! 15. exf6 ♖xf6 16. g4 ♖g6
16. — ♖f7!? Psakhis

17. ♖b3 h6 18. ♖ad1

18. a4 is better.

18. — ♖f7!

With the plan of the further move
e5.

19. ♖g2 ♖8e7 20. h4 e5!! 21.
g5 ♖f5 22. gxf6 ♖xf6! 23. ♖xd5
♖e6 24. dxe5 ♖xe5 25. ♖xe5

The only move.

25. — ♖xe5 26. ♖gl

The only move. It needs being calm.

26. — ♖ad8 27. ♖c4

There is nothing else.

27. — ♖e4! 28. f3 ♖xh4 29. ♖f2!
♖g5† 30. ♖h2 ♖h5† 31. ♖g2 ♖g5†

It is a just draw. Psakhis — Ehlvest
Novosibirsk 1993 Ehlvest

13. — ♖g6 14. ♖e1

With further f4 and space advan-
tage.

14. — f6 15. exf6

15. f4? fxe5 16. fxe5 ♖xf1†
With further ♖g5=

15. — ♖xf6 16. f4± ♖c6

With the plan of the further move
b6

17. ♖c1

17. a3 ♖a5!∞

17. — b6 18. ♖a4

18. cxb6 cxb6! 19. f5 exf5! 20.
♖xd5 ♖8e7∞

18. — b5 19. ♖b2

With further ♖f3 and ♖d3.

19. — ♖e4!?

With further g6, ♖d7 and ♖g7.

20. ♖d2! g6 21. ♖d1 ♖d7 22. ♖f2
♖8e7 23. ♖d1 ♖ad8 24. ♖f3

24. a4 ♖b8!∞

24. — ♖xf3 25. ♖xf3 ♖h8

25. — g5?! 26. fxg5 ♖xd4 27. ♖xd4
♖xd4 28. ♖xd4 ♖xf3 29. ♖e4!±

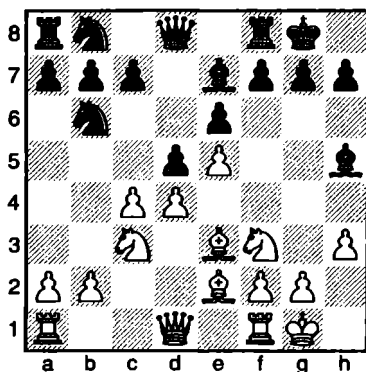
Nunn — Agnos Isle of Man 1994

26. a4±

White's advantage is minimal.
Nunn.

8.4.3 — 4. ♗f3 ♕g4 5. ♖e2 e6 6.
0-0 ♖e7 7. c4 ♗b6 8. ♖e3 0-0 9.
h3 ♖h5 10. ♗c3 d5

1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♗d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♗f3
♕g4 5. ♖e2 e6 6. 0-0 ♖e7 7. c4
♗b6 8. ♖e3 0-0 9. h3 ♖h5 10. ♗c3
d5



This is the main and straightest line. Black prevents White from making the move d5 definitively. White's best answer is 11. c5 that results in closed positions in which both sides has to prepare for a long manoeuvring fight.

11. cxd5

11. b3!? dxc4

For the line 11. — ♗c6 12. c5 ♗c8

13. b4 a6∞ see the variation 10. — a6.

12. bxc4 ♗c6 13. g4 ♕g6 14. ♖b3±
Ornstein — Schmidt Sweden 1975.

11. — exd5!

It seems to be paradoxical, but it is not; this is the right move instead of occupying the d5 square by a piece.

11. — ♗xd5 12. ♖b3!

Of course to exchange the knight on d5 would be favourable for Black.

12. — ♗b6

12. — ♗xe3 13. fxe3 ♖c8 14. d5
♖c5 15. ♗e4 ♖b6 16. ♖c4±
Savon — Alburtt USSR 1977

13. d5!

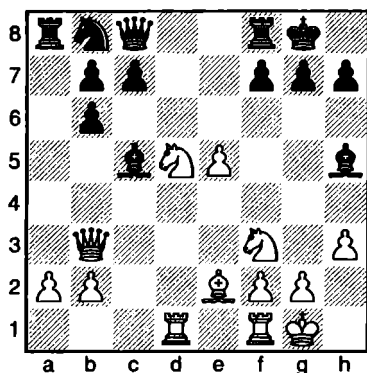
13. ♖fd1 c6 14. a4 a5 15. d5
♗xd5 16. ♖xb7 ♗d7 17. g4 ♕g6
18. ♖xc6 ♖c8 19. ♖b5 ♖b8=
Matanovic — Vukic Banjaluka
1979

13. — exd5

13. — ♗xd5 14. ♖fd1 c6 15.
♖xb7 ♗d7 16. g4 ♕g6 17. ♖xc6
♖c8 18. ♖a4±

14. ♖xb6 axb6 15. ♗xd5 ♖c5 16.

♖ad1 ♜c8



17. ♖f4

A) 17. a3!? ♖c6 18. ♜c3 ♜e8 19. ♜fe1±;

B) 17. ♜fe1 ♖c6 18. ♜c3?! ♜xa2!?

Videki

18. — ♖e7?? Black realized his mistake quickly, and not waiting for the answer he resigned. 1-0 Rublevsky — Jorgensen Denmark 1993 19. ♜xc5 +

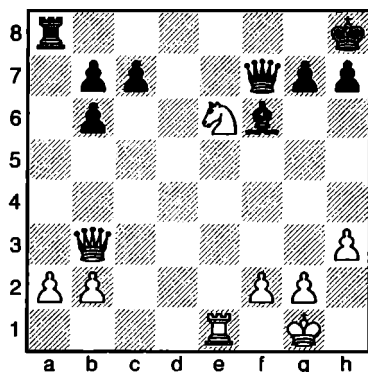
19. ♜c4

19. b4 ♜xf3 20. gxf3 ♖xb4 21. ♖xb4 ♜a4! 22. ♖d5 ♜xh3+

19. — ♜a4 20. e6 ♜xc4! 21. ♜xc4 fxe6

17. — ♜xf3 18. ♜xf3 ♖c6 19. e6!

♖d4 20. ♜xd4 ♜xd4 21. exf7+ ♜xf7 22. ♜g4 ♜d8 23. ♜e6 ♜f6 24. ♜xf7+ ♜xf7 25. ♖e6 ♜f6 26. ♜e1 ♖h8?



26. — h6±

27. ♖d8!

27. ♜e3? Kremenietzky — Kolev Russia 1987

27. — ♜f8 28. ♜e8! ♜xe8 29. ♖f7+ ♖g8 30. ♖d6+±

12. g4

A) 12. ♜d3 ♖c6 13. g4 ♜g6 14. ♜f5 ♜e8 15. ♖e2 f6=;

B) 12. ♖e1 ♜xe2 13. ♜xe2 ♖c6 14. ♖d3 ♜d7 15. ♜ad1 ♖d8 16. ♖c5 ♜c8 17. f4 f5 18. g4 c6 19. ♖h2 ♖d7=

It manages to block the white squares successfully, what is a key

question in this position. Plachetka — Bagirov Kirovakan 1978

12. — ♙g6 13. ♘e1 ♘c6

A) 13. — f5 14. ♘d3 c6 15. ♘f4±
Ornstein — Alburt Reykjavik 1984;

B) 13. — ♙b4 14. ♙c1 ♘c6 15. ♘g2 f6 16. e6 ♙e7 17. ♘f4 ♙xc3 18. ♙xc3 ♘d8 19. ♙b3∞

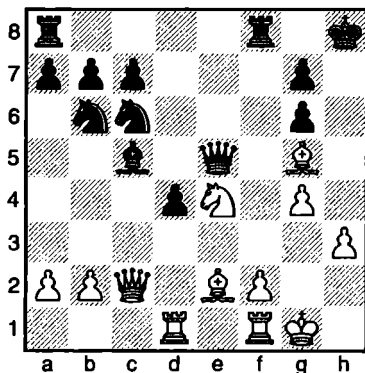
Hebden — Bricard Clermont Ferrand 1989

14. f4

14. ♘g2 f6! 15. ♘f4?!

15. f4=

15. — fxe5 16. dxe5 d4! 17. ♘xg6 hxg6 18. ♙b3† ♘h8 19. ♙ad1 ♙c5 20. ♘e4 ♙e7 21. ♙c2 ♙xe5 22. ♙g5



22. — d3! 23. ♙xd3 ♘d4 24. b4

♘xe2† 25. ♙xe2 ♙xb4† 26. f4 ♙e6 27. f5 gxf5 28. gxf5 ♙xf5 29. ♙h5† ♘g8 30. ♘f6† ♙xf6

That's neat, isn't it?

31. ♙xf5 ♙xf5 0-1

Emms — Baburin Isle of Man 1996

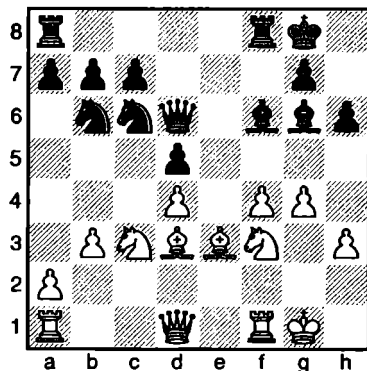
14. — f5 15. exf6

15. b3 ♙d7 16. ♘d3 ♙ae8∞

15. — ♙xf6=

The advanced pawns are not harmless at all, but the weakened king position and the open e-file give Black excellent opportunities to defend.

16. ♘f3 h6 17. b3 ♙d6 18. ♙d3



18. — ♙ae8! 19. ♙d2?

19. ♘e5 ♘xe5 20. dxe5 ♙xe5 21. fxe5 ♙xe5 22. ♙xf8† ♙xf8 23. ♙f2

♟f4!?

Videki

23. — ♖xf2=

24. ♖f5 ♖xf5 25. gxf5 ♖xf5 26. ♟e2 ♜e5 27. ♟d3 ♜g5† 28. ♜f1 ♜f5 29. ♟e2 d4

19. — ♖xd3 20. ♟xd3 ♜b4 21. ♟d2 ♜c2!

This jumping in was overlooked by White at making the move 19. ♟d2.

22. ♟xc2 ♜xe3 23. ♜e5

23. ♜e2?! ♜fe8! 24. ♜e5! ♜xh3 25. ♜g2 ♜h4 26. ♟f5 c5 27. ♜g3 ♖xe5 28. dxe5 ♟c6 29. ♜ae1 ♜f8 30. e6! d4†!

30. — ♜c8? Svidler — Solo-zhenkin Elista 1995

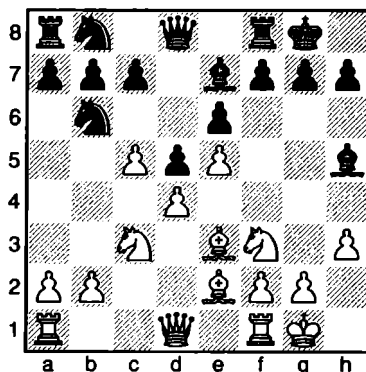
31. ♟e4 ♜d5 32. ♜f5 ♜xg4† 33. ♜h3 ♟e8! 34. ♜g3 ♜f6 35. ♟e5 ♟g6 36. ♜f3 ♜h4†! F Nikitin

23. — ♜xh3

8.4.4.1 — 4. ♜f3 ♖g4 5. ♖e2 e6 6. 0-0 ♖e7 7. h3 ♖h5 8. c4 ♜b6 9.

♜c3 0-0 10. ♖e3 d5 11. c5 ♖xf3 12. ♖xf3

1. e4 ♜f6 2. e5 ♜d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♜f3 ♖g4 5. ♖e2 e6 6. 0-0 ♖e7 7. h3 ♖h5 8. c4 ♜b6 9. ♜c3 0-0 10. ♖e3 d5 11. c5



11. — ♖xf3

It makes White choose. Either it allow Black to move ♜c4 or it undertakes the double pawns. The latter one is the better and more popular continuation.

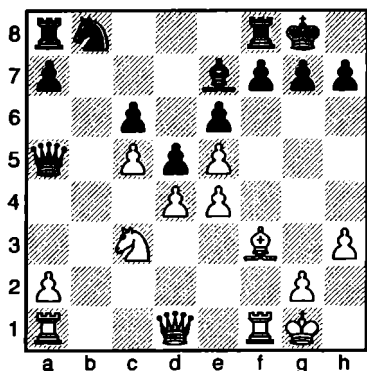
12. ♖xf3 ♜c4 13. ♖f4

A) 13. b3 ♜xe3 14. fxe3 ♜c6

This move discourages White from making the move e4 for a while.

14. — b6 15. e4 c6 16. b4 bxc5

17. bxc5 ♖a5



18. dxd5↑ White's benefit is not obvious, but it is unnecessary to take such complications with Black. Spassky — Fischer Reykjavik 1972

15. ♖b1

15. ♖c1 ♗d7 16. ♗d3 g8h8 17. g4 g5 18. d2e2 f5 19. exf6 gxf6 20. d4f4 f5 21. f3 ♖ae8 22. g8h1 ♗g7 Westerninen — Bagirov FRG 1979

15. — a5 16. a3 b6=

Olafsson, F — Andersson Nice 1974;

B) 13. gcl b6

13. — g5?! Does Black want to exchange the bishop just then when it has returned to its initial position? 14. b3 gxc1 15. ♖xc1

d2a5 16. g4± Djurhuus — Shabalov Gausdal 1991

14. b3 d2a5 15. b4 d2c4 16. e2 a5 17. b5

17. gxc4 axb4 18. dxd5 exd5 19. ♗f3 bxc5 20. ♗xd5 ♗xd5 21. gxd5 c6 There is no adequate compensation for the material.

17. — bxc5 18. gxc4 dxc4 19. d5 d2d7 20. ♗e2 d2b6 21. d1 d7 22. ♗g4 ♖fd8

Karavaev — Vinokurov Kazan 1995;

C) 13. b4 b6 14. ♖c1 c6 15. e2 a5 16. gxc4 axb4 17. d2a4 dxc4 18. d2xb6 ♖xa2=

Bagirov

13. — d2c6

13. — b6!?

If you are keen on taking risks, you can try this move too.

14. b3 d2a5 15. ♖c1 bxc5 16. dxc5 d2ac6 17. ♖e1 g5 18. dxd5!? exd5 19. g5g5 ♗xg5 20. gxd5 g8h8!

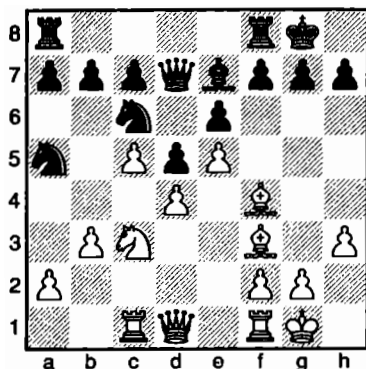
Black has an extra piece in vain, because it is almost impossible to bring the a8 rook into play. Kavalek — Schmidt Nice 1974

14. b3 d2a5 15. ♖c1

15. ♖d2 b6 16. ♖ac1 bxc5 17. dxc5
♜b8∞

Geller — Timman Wijk ann Zee
1975

15. — ♖d7!



Black's task is to explode the white pawn centre moving f6 and/or b6. They are being prepared by the queen's move.

A) 15. — ♖g5 16. ♜e2±;

B) 15. — b6 16. ♜a4!

16. ♖g4

A) 16. ♖e1 f6 17. exf6 ♜xf6 18. ♜e2 ♜e7 19. ♖d2 ♜ac6 20. ♖g4 ♜f5 21. ♜xf5 exf5 22. b4 a6 23. a4 ♜fe8=

Beliavsky — Alburts Kiev 1978;

B) 16. ♖e3 f6 17. exf6 ♜xf6 18. ♖d2 b6 19. ♜a4 ♜e7 20. ♖e2 ♜f5 21. c6 ♖e7 22. ♜b2 ♜xe3 23. ♖xe3 ♖d6 24. ♖c3 e5=

Black is beginning to take the initiative over. Geller — Bagirov Tbilisi 1978

16. — b6 17. ♜a4 ♜b7 18. ♖e2

18. ♖d2 bxc5 19. dxc5 ♜fb8 20. ♜fe1 ♜bd8 21. ♜b2 ♜b4 22. a3 ♜bc6 23. b4 a5 24. ♜d3 ♜d4 25. ♖b2 ♜f5 26. ♖d1 axb4 27. axb4 ♖b5 28. ♖c2 ♜c6+

Nicevski — Sofrevski Yugoslavia 1975

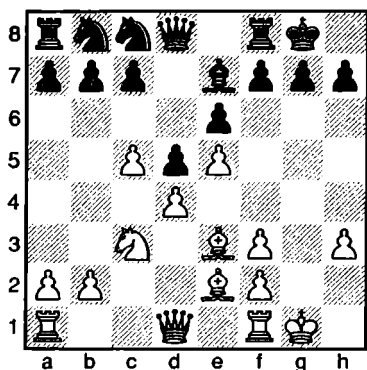
18. — bxc5 19. ♖a6 ♜cd8 20. dxc5 c6∞

Sofrevski

8.4.4.2.1 — 4. ♜f3 ♖g4 5. ♖e2 e6 6. 0-0 ♖e7 7. c4 ♜b6 8. h3 ♖h5 9. ♜c3 0-0 10. ♖e3 d5 11. c5 ♜xf3 12. gxf3 ♜c8 13. f4 ♖h4

1. e4 ♜f6 2. e5 ♜d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♜f3 ♖g4 5. ♖e2 e6 6. 0-0 ♖e7 7. c4 ♜b6 8. h3 ♖h5 9. ♜c3 0-0 10. ♖e3

d5 11. c5 xf3 12. gx3 c8



White having a considerable space advantage can make a decision that on which side it wants to start the attack. But Black's situation is not hopeless either! Possessing a position without weaknesses it gets the chances to organize the defence by blocking the advanced pawns.

12. — c4? 13. xc4 dxc4 14. a4±

13. f4

A) 13. b4

Perhaps it is less dangerous.

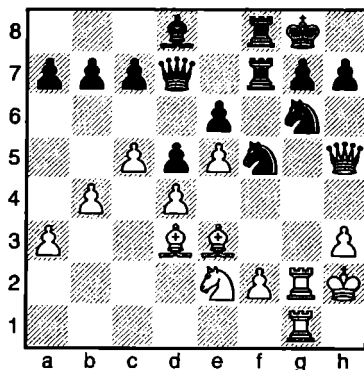
13. — c6

13. — h4 14. h2 f6 15. f4 fxe5 16. fxe5 e7 17. d3 f5 18. g4 c6 19. a3 ce7 20. e2 d7 21. g1 g6 22. g2

f7

22. — ae8!? 23. h5 d8=

23. h5 af8 24. ag1 d8



25. xg6! hxg6 26. xg6 e8 27. f4 e7 28. xd5+ Stripsky — Baburin Copenhagen 1994

14. b1

a) 14. b5 a5 15. a4 b6 16. c6 h4 17. c2 h8 18. h1 e7 19. d3 g6 20. e2 a6 21. a4 g8= Minev — Palatnik Albena 1975;

b) 14. f4 f5 15. h1 h4 16. b1 e7 17. g1 h8 18. d2 e8 19. g2 f7 20. b5± Hulak — Popov Skara 1980

14. — h4 15. f4 e7

15. — h8 16. d3 g6 17. g4

♙g8

17. — h5 18. ♖f3 ♜8e7 19. b5
♜a5 20. ♜h2± Diesen — Va-
ganian Hastings 1974

18. ♜h2 h5 19. ♖f3 ♜8e7 20. a3
♙g7 21. ♙gl b6 22. ♙c2 ♙b8 23.
♙gd1 ♙h7 24. ♙bc1 ♜g8 25.
cxb6 axb6 26. ♜b5 ♖d7 27.
♜xc7 ♖xc7 28. b5 ♜d8 29.
♙xg6 fxg6 30. ♙xc7 ♙xc7 31. f5
gxf5 32. ♖xh5† ♙h7 33. ♖e8
♙e7 34. ♖h5† ♙h7 35. ♖e8 ♙e7
Neither of the opponents can
avoid the draw. ½-½ Wolff —
Alburt Estes Park 1985

16. ♙d3 g6 17. ♖g4 ♜f5 18. ♙xf5
exf5 19. ♖f3 ♜e7 20. b5 ♖d7 21.
♙fc1 ♖e6

With further f6

22. ♙d2 ♙fd8 23. a4 a6 24. ♙a1
♜g7 25. ♜d1 axb5

25. — c6?! Schandorff — Bagi-
rov Copenhagen 1993

26. axb5 c6 27. ♜e3

With further ♜g2

27. — ♜g8=;

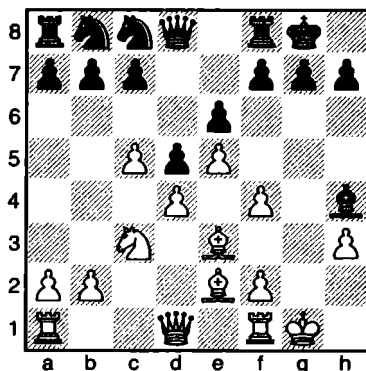
B) 13. ♜h2 f6=

13. — ♜c6 14. ♙gl ♜h8 15. f4
♙xc5?

15. — ♙h4

16. f5! Black was not in earnest
about this opportunity. 16. —
♙e7 17. f6 ♙xf6 18. exf6± Kor-
neev,S — Bagirov Moscow 1990

13. — ♙h4



It clears the e7 square for the knight.

A) 13. — f5

It saves the opponent's main threat,
but Black takes the f5 square from
its own knights as well.

14. ♜h1

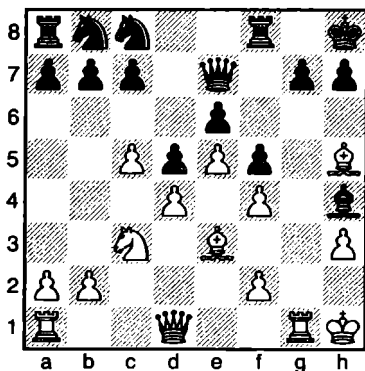
14. b4 a6 15. ♜h1 ♙f7 16. ♙gl
♙f8 17. ♖b3 ♜c6 18. ♙g3 ♙d7
19. ♙ag1 ♜8e7 20. ♙h5 ♖b8 21.
a3 b6 22. ♖c2 ♖b7 23. ♙b1
♙dd8 24. ♜h2 ♙db8 25. ♙gg1
♖c8 26. ♜a4 ♖d7 27. ♙gcl b5
28. ♜c3 a5 29. ♙e2 axb4 30.
axb4 ♜a7 31. ♙a1 c6= It is a

peculiar position. The opponents will exchange the major pieces on the a-file and shake hands. German — Milos Villa Martelli 1997.

14. — ♙f7

a) 14. — ♘c6 15. ♙g1 ♘h8 16. b4 ♙h4 17. b5 ♘6e7 18. ♙d2 ♘g8 19. a4 ♘ce7 20. a5 ♘h6 21. ♘a4 b6 22. ♙ac1 ♘f7 23. ♘b2 ♙g8 24. ♘d3 h6 25. ♙a1± Ivanov — Nikitin Moscow 1994;

b) 14. — ♘h8 15. ♙g1 ♙h4?! 16. ♙h5! ♙e7?!



17. ♙g6!! Black is punished for the stereotyped moves! 17. — hxg6 18. ♙xg6 ♙f7 19. ♙h5† ♘g8 20. ♙h6! ♘e7 21. ♙g2 g5 22. ♙ag1!+ It is a nice game. Kharitonov — Dautov Kalinin-

grad 1986

15. ♙g1 g6 16. b4 ♘c6 17. b5 ♘a5 18. ♙a4 b6 19. ♙ac1 ♙h4 20. ♘b1 ♙e8 21. ♙b4 ♙g7 22. ♘d2 ♙d8 23. ♘f3±

Hjartarson — Milos Szirak 1987;

B) 13. — g6?! 14. ♙d3 ♙h4 15. ♙g4→;

C) 13. — c6? 14. ♙d3 g6 15. b4 ♙e8 16. ♘h2 ♙f8 17. f5 exf5 18. ♙xf5± Gurgenedze — Suba Varna 1975

18. — gxf5? 19. ♙g1† ♘h8 20. ♙h5 ♙g7 21. ♙xg7+—

14. ♙d3

14. f5?! ♘e7 15. ♙d3 ♘xf5 16. ♙xf5 exf5 17. ♙f3 c6 18. ♙xf5 ♘a6 19. ♘e2 ♘c7=

Folk — Smejkal Czechia 1995

14. — g6

14. — f5? 15. exf6! g6

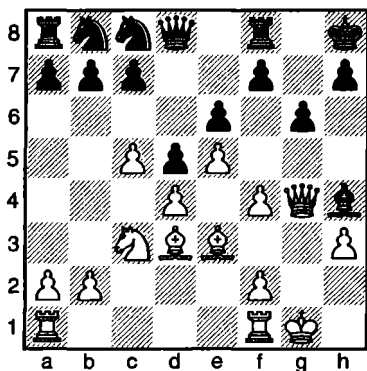
15. — ♙xf6 16. ♙b3±

16. f7†± ♙xf7

16. — ♘xf7 17. f5

17. ♙g4

15. ♖g4 ♘h8



15. — f5 16. ♖d1 ♘c6 17. ♘h2 ♘h8
18. ♘e2 ♘8e7 19. ♘g1 ♘g8 20.
♘f3 ♘h6 21. a3 ♘f7 22. b4 a6 23.
♙g1 ♙g8 24. ♙g2 h6±

Vasiukov — Alburt Vilnius 1975

16. ♘b1

It is a typical manoeuvre. The knight is trying to get to f3.

16. b4 ♘c6 17. a3 f5 18. ♖d1 a6 19.
♘h1 ♘8e7 20. ♘e2 ♘g8 21. ♘g1
♘h6 22. ♘f3 ♘f7 23. ♘d2 ♘e7 24.
a4 ♘b8 25. b5 axb5 26. axb5 ♘d7
27. ♖c2±

Psakhis — Agzamov Moscow 1983

16. — ♘c6 17. ♘d2 h5 18. ♖e2
♘8e7 19. ♘f3 ♘f5 20. a3

20. ♙ab1 a5 21. a3 ♙e7 22. ♙fc1
♖d7 23. ♙c3 ♙a7 24. b4 axb4 25.

axb4 ♙a4 26. ♙b5 ♙a7 27. ♖d1
♙fa8±

Kosashvili — Zilberman Rishon le
Zion 1993

20. — a6 21. ♘h1 ♙e7 22. ♙g1
♖d7 23. ♙g2 ♙g8 24. b4 ♙a7 25.
♙b1 ♙aa8

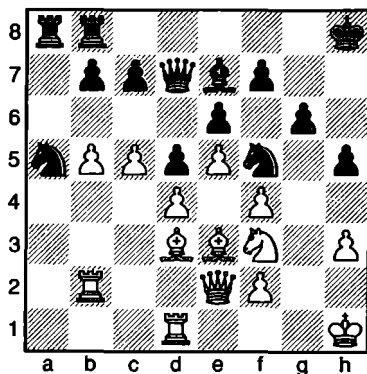
There is no counterplay.

26. ♙gg1 ♙a7 27. ♙b2 ♙aa8 28. a4
♙gb8 29. ♙gb1±

29. b5?!

29. ♙cl±

29. — axb5 30. axb5 ♘a5 31. ♙d1



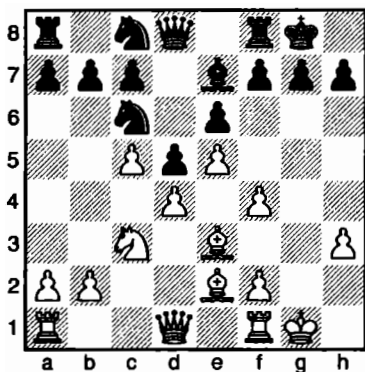
31. — ♘c4!? 32. ♙xc4 dxc4 33.
♖xc4 ♙a3± 34. c6 bxc6 35. bxc6
♖d8 36. ♙db1 ♙xb2 37. ♙xb2
♘xe3 38. fxe3 ♙xe3 39. ♙b3 ♙e4±

This game is rather peculiar to this

variation. Black is defending and waiting, then, after a thoughtless white move, they change their roles, Black hits back and wins. Emms — Zilberman Great Britain 1994

8.4.4.2.2 — 4. ♟f3 ♟g4 5. ♟e2 e6
6. 0-0 ♟e7 7. h3 ♟h5 8. c4 ♟b6 9.
♟c3 0-0 10. ♟e3 d5 11. c5 ♟xf3
12. gxf3 ♟c8 13. f4 ♟c6 14. ♟d3

1. e4 ♟f6 2. e5 ♟d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♟f3
♟g4 5. ♟e2 e6 6. 0-0 ♟e7 7. h3
♟h5 8. c4 ♟b6 9. ♟c3 0-0 10. ♟e3
d5 11. c5 ♟xf3 12. gxf3 ♟c8 13. f4
♟c6



This is the most important position of the line 10. — d5.

14. ♟d3

A) 14. ♟f3 ♟h4 15. f5?! ♟8e7 16. fxe6 fxe6 17. ♟g4 ♟f5±;

B) 14. ♟b1

It is mysterious a little, but it proves to be good in this game.

14. — ♟h4 15. ♟d3 g6 16. b4 ♟8e7

16. — a6

17. b5 ♟a5 18. ♟d1 ♟h8 19. ♟h2
♟g8 20. ♟g1 h5?!

The pawns in front of the king can only be moved in such cases when they have got to be moved. 20. — c6 or 20. — ♟f5 are better.

21. ♟f3 ♟g7?! 22. f5!

This is the crucial question of the variation 12. gxf3. Can White break through by the move f5 or not?

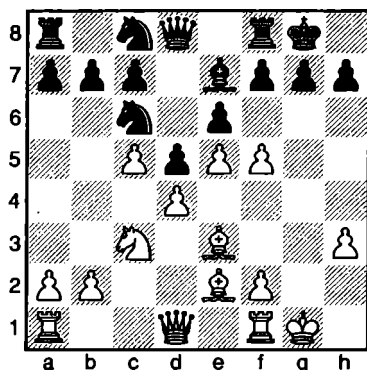
22. — exf5 23. ♟e2 ♟c4 24. ♟g5
♟xg5 25. ♟xg5 ♟g8 26. ♟ag1 ♟h6
27. ♟f4±

As a compensation for the positional sacrifice the white pieces go on the rampage freely on the wholly acquired dark squares. Minasian, Ara — Nogueiras Ubeda 1998.

C) 14. ♟b1 ♟h4∞

14. — ♟xc5?! 15. dxc5 d4 16.
♟e4±

D) 14. f5



It was the most favourite move at the end of the eighties. By now remedy has been found.

14. — exf5 15. ♖f3

15. ♜b3 ♗h4 16. f4 ♜8e7=

15. — ♗g5!

15. — f4 16. ♗xf4 ♗g5 17. ♗h2±

16. ♜xd5 f4! 17. ♗xf4

a) 17. ♜xf4 ♗xf4 18. ♗xf4 ♜xd4
19. ♜xd4

19. ♗g3 ♜xc5 20. ♜c1 ♜a5 21.
♗xc6 bxc6 22. ♜xc6 ♜e7 23.
♜c4 ♜f5 24. ♜a4 ♜b6±

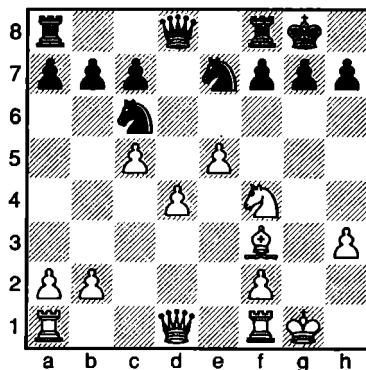
19. — ♜xd4 20. ♗g4 ♜e7 21.
♜ad1 ♜ec6 22. ♗e3 ♜ad8 23.
♜d2 ♜e6 24. ♜xd8 ♜xd8 25. f4
g6= Hendriks — Bosch Enschede
1995;

b) 17. ♗c1?! ♜8e7

17. — ♜d7!? 18. b4 ♜8e7 19.
♜xe7† ♗e7 20. ♗b2±

18. ♜xe7† ♜xe7 19. ♗xc6 bxc6
20. ♜g4 ♜ab8±

17. — ♗xf4 18. ♜xf4 ♜8e7!



The advance is more important.
Black can regain the material later
too.

18. — ♜xd4 19. ♗xb7 ♜b8 20.
♗g2!±

19. d5 ½-½

Gallagher — Bagirov Eupen 1993

a) 19. b3 ♜b8 20. ♗e4 ♜xd4
21. ♜xd4 ♜xd4 22. ♜fd1 ♜fd8
23. ♜d5

23. ♜d3? ♜dc6 24. e6?

24. ♗xc6 ♜xd3 25. ♜xd3
♜xc6±

24. — f5! Aseev — Bagirov
Berlin 1990

23. — e2! 24. f1 d5 25.
xd5 xd5 26. xd5 f4! 27.
g2 f8 28. d1 e7+ with a
more advantageous endgame for
Black. Bagirov

b) 19. d2 d7=

19. — xe5 20. g2 d7g6=

20. — f5=

14. — g6

14. — b6?! 15. a4 dxd4 16. xd4
bxc5 17. xc5

17. e3 d4 18. ad1

17. — xc5 18. c6+

Sutovski — Wells Budapest 1993

15. h2

A) 15. a3 e8?

15. — h8

16. h2 f8 17. f5! exf5 18. xf5
gxf5?

18. — d6e7 19. c2+

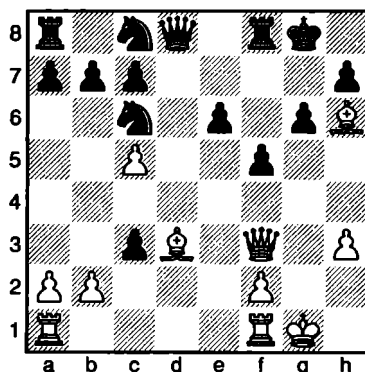
19. gl+ h8 20. h5 f4 21. xf4
g7 22. xg7+;

B) 15. f5?! exf5 16. f3 xc5! 17.

dx5 d4 18. h6 dxc3 19. e6

19. xf8?! xf8 20. e6 xc5 21.
exf7+ xf7 22. ac1 d6 23.
xc3 e5 24. c4+ f6 25. e3
d4! 26. g2 f4 27. d5 c6
28. d1 e8+ Chiburidanidze —
Bagirov Minsk 1983

19. — fxe6=



It is rather favourable for Black.

a) 19. — cxb2 20. ad1 fxe6;

b) 19. — d4?! 20. exf7+ xf7
21. xxb7+ Sokolov, A — Vein-
gold USSR 1981

20. ad1 e8 21. xf8

15. — h8 16. g4 b4 17. b1
b6 18. a3 d6 19. b4+

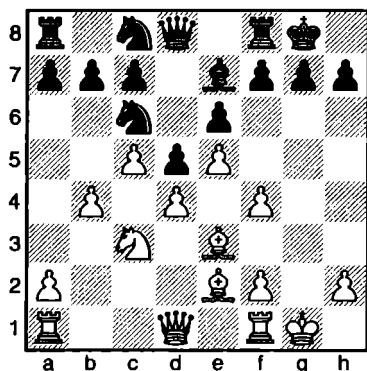
Glek — Majer Bad Zwosten 1997

8.4.4.2.3 — 4. f3 g4 5. e2 e6
6. $0-0$ e7 7. h3 h5 8. c4 b6 9.
 e3 $0-0$ 10. c3 d5 11. c5 xf3
12. gxf3 c8 13. f4 c6 14. b4

1. e4 f6 2. e5 d5 3. d4 d6 4. f3
 g4 5. e2 e6 6. $0-0$ e7 7. h3

We have two examples of sparing the move h3. It is usually favourable for White in this variation.

7. c4 b6 8. c3 $0-0$ 9. e3 d5 10.
 c5 xf3 11. gxf3 c8 12. f4 c6
13. b4



13. — h4

13. — a6 14. b1 f6 15. d3
 e8 16. g4 f5 17. h3! a5?!
18. b5 b4 19. e2 c2 20. g1
 f7 22. f3 f8 23. b2
 a3 24. c1 a7 25. e2
 d7 26. d1 d8 27. f1 h6

28. b3 ± Short — Albur Fox-
boro 1985

14. b5 a5?! 15. d3 g6

15. — e7 16. h5 g6 17. f5! ±

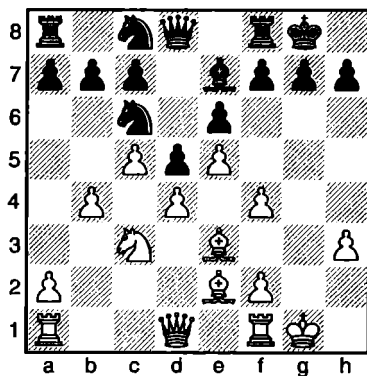
16. f5! exf5 17. f3 c6 18. h6 e8
19. f4! ± e7 20. g1 f8 21.
 g1 xb6 22. xb6 g8 23. e2!
 e7 24. f4 g8 25. g3 f8 26.
 h4 e8 27. ag1

With further d5

27. — h6 28. e6! g7 29. exf7!
 xf7 30. h3 1-0

Well this win would not have been so simple in the case of the move h3. Ulibin — Morovic Las Palmas 1992 Ulibin.

7. — h5 8. c4 b6 9. e3 $0-0$ 10.
 c3 d5 11. c5 xf3 12. gxf3 c8
13. f4 c6 14. b4



14. — h4

14. — a6 15. a3

15. f5?! exf5 16. f4 ♘b8! 17. ♙d3
♙d7 18. ♙f3 ♙d8±

15. — ♙h4 16. ♙d3 g6 17. ♙g4 f5
18. ♙d1 ♘h8 19. ♘h2 ♘8e7 20.
♘e2 ♘g8 21. ♘g1 ♘h6 22. ♘f3
♘f7 23. ♙d2 ♙g8 24. a4 ♙e7 25. b5
axb5 26. axb5 ♙xa1 27. ♙xa1 ♘cd8
28. ♙a5 c6 29. ♙b6±

Solozhenkin — Bagirov Sevastopol
1986

15. ♙b1

15. b5 ♘6e7

15. — ♘a5 16. ♙d3 g6 17. ♘h2±

17. f5!? exf5 18. ♙f3±

16. ♙d3 ♘f5 17. ♙xf5 exf5 18. ♙f3
c6 19. a4±

15. — ♘8e7 16. ♙d3 g6

16. — ♘g6 17. ♙g4 ♘ce7 18. ♘e2
♙c8 19. ♘h2 f6 20. ♙g1 fxe5 21.
dxe5 ♘f5 22. ♙xf5 ♙xf5 23. ♙g2!
♙d7 24. ♘d4±

Groszpeter — Wells Harkany 1993

17. ♙f3 ♘f5 18. ♙xf5 gxf5 19.
♙h5 ♘h8±

White has a slight advantage. Tiv-
iakov — Velicka Cheliabinsk 1990

Contents

Foreword	5
Notations	7
Chapter 1 — 1. e4 ♟f6	8
1.1 — 2. e5 ♟g8	8
1.2 — 2. ♙c4	10
1.3 — 2. d3	11
1.4 — 2. ♟c3	14
1.5.1 — 2. ♟c3 d5 3. d3	16
1.5.2 — 2. ♟c3 d5 3. exd5 g6	17
1.5.3 — 2. ♟c3 d5 3. exd5 ♟xd5 4. ♟xd5	18
1.5.4 — 2. ♟c3 d5 3. exd5 ♟xd5 4. ♙c4 e6	21
1.5.5 — 2. ♟c3 d5 3. exd5 ♟xd5 4. ♙c4 ♟b6	24
1.6.1 — 2. ♟c3 d5 3. e5 d4	27
1.6.2.1 — 2. ♟c3 d5 3. e5 ♟fd7 4. f4	31
1.6.2.2 — 2. ♟c3 d5 3. e5 ♟fd7 4. e6	36
1.6.3.1 — 2. ♟c3 d5 3. e5 ♟e4 4. ♖f3	40
1.6.3.2 — 2. ♟c3 d5 3. e5 ♟e4 4. ♟ce2	44
Chapter 2 — 1. e4 ♟f6 2. e5 ♟d5	48
2.1 — 2. e5 ♟d5 3. g3	48
2.2.1 — 2. e5 ♟d5 3. ♟c3 ♟b6	51

2.2.2 — 2. e5 ♖d5 3. ♖c3 ♖xc3 4. dxc3	54
2.2.3 — 2. e5 ♖d5 3. ♖c3 ♖xc3 4. bxc3	57
2.3.1 — 2. e5 ♖d5 3. c4 ♖b6 4. b3	61
2.3.2 — 2. e5 ♖d5 3. c4 ♖b6 4. c5 ♖d5 5. ♖c3	64
2.3.3 — 2. e5 ♖d5 3. c4 ♖b6 4. c5 ♖d5 5. ♙c4	67
Chapter 3 — 1. e4 ♖f6 2. e5 ♖d5 3. d4 d6	71
3.1 — 2. e5 ♖d5 3. d4 d6 4. f4	71
3.2 — 2. e5 ♖d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♙c4	76
3.3.1 — 2. e5 ♖d5 3. d4 d6 4. c4 ♖b6 5. exd6 exd6	81
3.3.2 — 2. e5 ♖d5 3. d4 d6 4. c4 ♖b6 5. exd6 cxd6	86
3.3.3 — 2. e5 ♖d5 3. d4 d6 4. c4 ♖b6 5. f4 g6	91
3.3.4.1 — 2. e5 ♖d5 3. d4 d6 4. c4 ♖b6 5. f4 dxe5 6. fxe5 c5	95
3.3.4.2 — 2. e5 ♖d5 3. d4 d6 4. c4 ♖b6 5. f4 dxe5 6. fxe5 ♙f5	104
3.3.4.3 — 2. e5 ♖d5 3. d4 d6 4. c4 ♖b6 5. f4 dxe5 6. fxe5 ♖c6	108
Chapter 4 — 1. e4 ♖f6 2. e5 ♖d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♖f3	122
4.1 — 4. ♖f3 c6 5. ♙e2	122
4.2 — 4. ♖f3 c6 5. c4	125
4.3.1 — 4. ♖f3 ♖c6 5. c4 ♖b6 6. ♙e2	126
4.3.2 — 4. ♖f3 ♖c6 5. c4 ♖b6 6. e6 fxe6 7. ♖g5	129
4.3.3 — 4. ♖f3 ♖c6 5. c4 ♖b6 6. e6 fxe6 7. ♖c3	132
4.4 — 4. ♖f3 ♖b6	134
Chapter 5 — 1. e4 ♖f6 2. e5 ♖d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♖f3 dxe5	140
5.1.1 — 4. ♖f3 dxe5 5. ♖xe5 ♖d7 6. ♙c4	140
5.1.2 — 4. ♖f3 dxe5 5. ♖xe5 ♖d7 6. ♖f3	141

5.1.3 — 4. ♖f3 dxe5 5. ♜xe5 ♜d7 6. ♜xf7	143
5.2.1 — 4. ♖f3 dxe5 5. ♜xe5 g6 6. ♜f3	148
5.2.2 — 4. ♖f3 dxe5 5. ♜xe5 g6 6. c4	151
5.2.3 — 4. ♖f3 dxe5 5. ♜xe5 g6 6. ♙c4	152
5.2.4.1 — 4. ♖f3 dxe5 5. ♜xe5 g6 6. ♙c4 c6 7. ♜f3	155
5.2.4.2.1 — 4. ♖f3 dxe5 5. ♜xe5 g6 6. ♙c4 c6 7. 0-0 ♙g7 8. ♜e2	157
5.2.4.2.2 — 4. ♖f3 dxe5 5. ♜xe5 g6 6. ♙c4 c6 7. 0-0 ♙g7 8. ♜d2	160
5.2.4.2.3 — 4. ♖f3 dxe5 5. ♜xe5 g6 6. ♙c4 c6 7. 0-0 ♙g7 8. ♚e1 0-0 9. c3	165
5.2.4.2.4 — 4. ♖f3 dxe5 5. ♜xe5 g6 6. ♙c4 c6 7. 0-0 ♙g7 8. ♚e1 0-0 9. ♙b3 ♜d7	167
5.2.4.2.5 — 4. ♖f3 dxe5 5. ♜xe5 g6 6. ♙c4 c6 7. 0-0 ♙g7 8. ♚e1 0-0 9. ♙b3 ♙e6	169
Chapter 6 — 1. e4 ♜f6 2. e5 ♜d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♜f3 g6	174
6.1 — 4. ♜f3 g6 5. ♜g5	174
6.2.1 — 4. ♜f3 g6 5. c4 ♜b6 6. exd6 cxd6 7. ♙e2 ♙g7 8. 0-0 0-0 9. h3	177
6.2.2 — 4. ♜f3 g6 5. c4 ♜b6 6. exd6 cxd6 7. ♙e2 ♙g7 8. 0-0 0-0 9. ♜c3	180
6.3.1 — 4. ♜f3 g6 5. ♙c4 c6	184
6.3.2.1 — 4. ♜f3 g6 5. ♙c4 ♜b6 6. ♙b3 ♙g7 7. ♜e2	190
6.3.2.2 — 4. ♜f3 g6 5. ♙c4 ♜b6 6. ♙b3 ♙g7 7. a4	195
6.3.2.3 — 4. ♜f3 g6 5. ♙c4 ♜b6 6. ♙b3 ♙g7 7. ♜g5	200

Chapter 7 — 1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♗d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♗f3 ♕g4	209
7.1 — 4. ♗f3 ♕g4 5. c4	209
7.2.1 — 4. ♗f3 ♕g4 5. ♕e2 c6 6. ♗g5 ♕f5 7. ♕d3	211
7.2.2 — 4. ♗f3 ♕g4 5. ♕e2 c6 6. ♗g5 ♕f5 7. e6	215
7.3.1 — 4. ♗f3 ♕g4 5. ♕e2 c6 6. 0–0	217
7.3.2.1 — 4. ♗f3 ♕g4 5. ♕e2 c6 6. c4 ♗b6 7. exd6	222
7.3.2.2 — 4. ♗f3 ♕g4 5. ♕e2 c6 6. c4 ♗b6 7. ♗bd2	226
7.4.1 — 4. ♗f3 ♕g4 5. ♕e2 ♗c6 6. c4 ♗b6 7. exd6 exd6 8. 0–0 ♕e7 9. d5	228
7.4.2 — 4. ♗f3 ♕g4 5. ♕e2 ♗c6 6. c4 ♗b6 7. exd6 exd6 8. 0–0 ♕e7 9. ♗c3	231
 Chapter 8 — 1. e4 ♘f6 2. e5 ♗d5 3. d4 d6 4. ♗f3 ♕g4 5. ♕e2 e6	 234
8.1 — 4. ♗f3 ♕g4 5. ♕e2 e6 6. 0–0 ♗c6	234
8.2.1 — 4. ♗f3 ♕g4 5. ♕e2 e6 6. 0–0 ♕e7 7. c4 ♗b6 8. ♗c3 0–0 9. ♕e3 a5	236
8.2.2 — 4. ♗f3 ♕g4 5. ♕e2 e6 6. 0–0 ♕e7 7. c4 ♗b6 8. ♗c3 0–0 9. ♕e3 a6	240
8.2.3.1 — 4. ♗f3 ♕g4 5. ♕e2 e6 6. 0–0 ♕e7 7. c4 ♗b6 8. ♗c3 0–0 9. ♕e3 ♗c6 10. exd6 cxd6 11. d5	243
8.2.3.2 — 4. ♗f3 ♕g4 5. ♕e2 e6 6. 0–0 ♕e7 7. c4 ♗b6 8. ♗c3 0–0 9. ♕e3 ♗c6 10. exd6 cxd6 11. b3	245
8.3.1 — 4. ♗f3 ♕g4 5. ♕e2 e6 6. 0–0 ♕e7 7. c4 ♗b6 8. exd6 cxd6 9. b3	247
8.3.2 — 4. ♗f3 ♕g4 5. ♕e2 e6 6. 0–0 ♕e7 7. c4 ♗b6 8. exd6 cxd6 9. h3	249

8.4.1 — 4. ♖f3 ♗g4 5. ♕e2 e6 6. 0–0 ♕e7 7. h3 ♗h5 8. c4 ♜b6 9. ♜c3 0–0 10. ♗e3 a6	251
8.4.2 — 4. ♖f3 ♗g4 5. ♕e2 e6 6. 0–0 ♕e7 7. c4 ♜b6 8. h3 ♗h5 9. ♜c3 0–0 10. ♗e3 a6	254
8.4.3 — 4. ♖f3 ♗g4 5. ♕e2 e6 6. 0–0 ♕e7 7. c4 ♜b6 8. ♗e3 0–0 9. h3 ♗h5 10. ♜c3 d5	259
8.4.4.1 — 4. ♖f3 ♗g4 5. ♕e2 e6 6. 0–0 ♕e7 7. h3 ♗h5 8. c4 ♜b6 9. ♜c3 0–0 10. ♗e3 d5 11. c5 ♗xf3 12. ♗xf3	262
8.4.4.2.1 — 4. ♖f3 ♗g4 5. ♕e2 e6 6. 0–0 ♕e7 7. c4 ♜b6 8. h3 ♗h5 9. ♜c3 0–0 10. ♗e3 d5 11. c5 ♗xf3 12. gxf3 ♜c8 13. f4 ♗h4	264
8.4.4.2.2 — 4. ♖f3 ♗g4 5. ♕e2 e6 6. 0–0 ♕e7 7. h3 ♗h5 8. c4 ♜b6 9. ♜c3 0–0 10. ♗e3 d5 11. c5 ♗xf3 12. gxf3 ♜c8 13. f4 ♜c6 14. ♗d3	269
8.4.4.2.3 — 4. ♖f3 ♗g4 5. ♕e2 e6 6. 0–0 ♕e7 7. h3 ♗h5 8. c4 ♜b6 9. ♗e3 0–0 10. ♜c3 d5 11. c5 ♗xf3 12. gxf3 ♜c8 13. f4 ♜c6 14. b4	272

Contents	274
-----------------	-----

Publications of Caissa Kft., Kecskemét

German publications

Prizes in English Pound

	E. Eliskases Stellungsspiele	10
	Pálkövi: Italienisch bis Evans Gambit	9
New!	Panchenko: Endspieltheorie und Praktik	14
New!	E. Végh-Y. Zimmermann: Königsindische Verteidigung Vierbauern Angriff	12

English publications

	Pálkövi: Hedgehog System Against English Opening	8
	Pongó: Tactical Targets in Chess Vol. I. Getting a decisive material advantage	14
	Pongó: Tactical Targets in Chess Vol.II. Mate Combinations	13
	Korányi: Selected Chess Studies and Problems	8
	A. Schneider: The Closed Sicilian	8
	A. Schneider-T. Erdélyi: Queen's Pawn Opening, Pseudo – Benoni	9
	A. Schneider: Chess Cafe, Open from 2 to 10 Moves	10
New!	A. Schneider: Sicilian Dragon Yugoslav 9.Bc4	16
New!	J. Pálkövi: Two Knights' Defence and Traxler-Counter gambit	14
New!	Lilienthal: Lilienthal's Hundred Best Games	15
	Pálkövi: Morra Gambit (reprinted)	14
	Krizsány-Vidéki: Alekhine Defence (it will reprint 01. 2002.)	13
	Schneider: Dragon Classical and Levenfish Variant (reprint in 02. 2002.)	14
New!	Coming out in January 2002: Vidéki: The Pirc Defence (264 pages)	15
New!	Coming out in February 2002: A. Schneider: Treasury of Open Games (220 pages)	14

Other products

Chess CD – Rom: István Pongó – Tactical Targets	10
High quality colour chess postcards with brilliant games (120 different kinds, about 70 on the stock)	0,5
Chess T – Shirts (4 different motives, 4 different sizes)	8
Chess posters: CCP002 Pawn Promotion, CCP001 Capablanca, CCP003 Morphy against Duke of Brunswick and Count Isouard	6

Caissa Kft., Kecskemét, Gyenes tér 18. H-6000

dr. Erdélyi Tamás director

Tel./Fax: 0036-76/481-685, 76/506-653

Website: www.ezaz.hu/caissa • E-mail: caissa@axelero.hu



CAISSA CHESS BOOKS

